





John C. Meagher.

22<sup>nd</sup> February, 1832

---





*J. Meagher Febry 22<sup>nd</sup> 1832.*

GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
FRENCH LANGUAGE,  
WITH  
PRACTICAL EXERCISES,

BY  
N. WANOSTROCHT, LL. D.

448 pp  
THE SEVENTEENTH EDITION,

REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY  
A. L. JOSSE,

Author of a *Grammaire Espagnole raisonnée*; of the *Tesoro Español*,  
&c. &c.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR BOOSEY AND SONS; J. NUNN; J. RICHARDSON; LONGMAN,  
REES, ORME, BROWN, AND GREEN; T. CADELL; HARVEY AND DARTON;  
BALDWIN, CRADOCK, AND JOY; HARDING AND LEPARD; J. BOOKER;  
HAMILTON, ADAMS, AND CO.; JAMES DUNCAN; G. COWIE AND CO.;  
R. HUNTER; G. B. WHITTAKER; DULAU AND CO.; SIMPKIN AND MAR-  
SHALL; AND BAKER AND FLETCHER.

1827.

1827

C. Baldwin, Printer,  
New Bridge-street, London.

# CONTENTS.

An Alphabetical List of the Irregular Verbs.....	Page xi
--	---------

## INTRODUCTION.

Grammar .....	1
The French Alphabet .....	<i>ib.</i>
Syllables, long or short.....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Accents .....	2
The Diæresis .....	3
The Cedilla .....	<i>ib.</i>
The different Kinds of Words.....	<i>ib.</i>
General Explanations .....	4

## CHAP. I.

Substantives .....	5
Gender and Number.....	<i>ib.</i>
Substantives that are never used in the Plural .....	6
Substantives that are never used but in the Plural ...	<i>ib.</i>
General Rule for the Formation of the Plural .....	7
Exceptions.....	<i>ib.</i>
Formation of the Plural of Compound Words .....	8
No Cases.—Observation .....	9

## CHAP. II.

The Article .....	9
Elision and Contraction of the Article, &c. ....	<i>ib.</i>
Table of the Article in its Variations and Combinations with the Prepositions <i>de</i> and <i>à</i> .....	10, &c.
Rules for the proper Use of the Article, with Exer- cises .....	11, &c.
The Article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French.—Rule 5.....	15, &c.
The Article before Proper Names of Countries, King- doms, Provinces, Rivers, Winds, &c. ....	17

	Page
Exceptions.....	17, &c.
The Way to translate two or more Substantives that immediately follow each other, the last having the Sign of the Possessive Case.—Rule 8.....	19
Also, the Preposition <i>to</i> when used instead of the Sign of the Possessive Case.—Rule 9.....	20
The Article and Preposition, before Substantives preceded by the Adverb <i>bien</i> , signifying <i>much</i> , <i>many</i> , &c.—Rule 10. ....	21
The Article precedes all Nouns Substantive taken in a partitive Sense.—Rule 11.....	22
Exception.—Rule 12. ....	23
The Article omitted, and the Preposition <i>to</i> , rendered by <i>en</i> before Proper Names of Countries, Kingdoms, &c., that are preceded by one of these Verbs <i>to go</i> , <i>to return</i> , <i>to send</i> , <i>to come</i> , &c.—Rule 13. ....	24
Exception.—The Proper Names of distant Countries, and of some few Places in Europe that always take the Article .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Other Rules for omitting the Article, with Exercises, .....	25, &c.
Rules for rendering into French the English Article <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> , with Exercises .....	28, &c.

### CHAP. III.

The Adjective .....	32
Formation of the Feminine of the French Adjectives, .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Formation of the Plural of the French Adjectives....	35
Rules and Exercises .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
The Place to be given to the Adjective .....	37
The Adjectives that precede their Substantives.....	<i>ib.</i>
The Adjectives that come after their Substantives....	38
Rules and Exercises.....	39, &c.
Degrees of Signification in the Adjective .....	42
Rules and Exercises .....	43, &c.
Adjectives and Nouns of Number .....	49
Cardinal Numbers .....	50, &c.
Rules and Exercises.....	52, &c.
Ordinal Numbers .....	54, &c.
Substantives of Number .....	55
Rules and Exercises .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.

Compound English inverted Nouns .....	Page 58
Rules and Exercises .....	59, &c.
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the preceding Rules, 61, &c.	

## CHAP. IV.

Pronouns .....	68
Pronouns Personal .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Pronouns Reflected .....	69, &c.
Observations.—1, 2. Upon Pronouns Personal ..	70, &c.
—————3. Those that are always <i>Subjects</i> of the Verb, and those that may be either the <i>Sub-</i> <i>jects</i> or <i>Objects</i> of the Verb .....	71
—————4. The Pronouns <i>it</i> and <i>they</i> always take in French the Gender, &c., of the Noun they represent .....	<i>ib.</i>
Exercise on the Personal Pronouns Subjects of the Verb .....	72
Observations.—1, 2, 3. The Pronouns <i>we</i> and <i>they</i> , used in a general, vague, or indefinite Sense, ren- dered by the indefinite Pronoun <i>on</i> .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Rules and Exercises on <i>Personal Pronouns Subjects</i> of the Verb .....	74, &c.
On the Pronouns <i>je</i> and <i>moi</i> , I; <i>tu</i> and <i>toi</i> , thou; <i>il</i> and <i>lui</i> , he; <i>ils</i> and <i>eux</i> , they .....	77
Rules and Exercise .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Personal Pronouns Objects of the Verb .....	80
Their Place in a Sentence .....	81
Rules and Exercises .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Table of Pronouns, Objects of the Verb .....	83, &c.
The Order which the Pronouns, Objects of the Verbs, must keep with respect to each other .....	84
Rules and Exercises .....	<i>ib.</i>
The Pronouns <i>y</i> and <i>en</i> .....	85
Rules and Exercises .....	86, &c.
The Pronouns <i>le</i> , <i>la</i> , <i>les</i> .....	88
Rules and Exercises .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
The Pronouns, Objects of different Verbs, must be repeated before each Verb.—Rule 13. ....	90
The Pronouns Personal that can never be used after a Preposition.—Rule 14. ....	91
Recapitulatory Exercise on the Personal Pronouns, <i>ib.</i> &c.	
Possessive Pronouns .....	95

Rules and Exercises .....	96, &c.
Demonstrative Pronouns .....	103
Rules and Exercises .....	104, &c.
Relative Pronouns .....	110
Rules and Exercises .....	111, &c.
Interrogative Pronouns .....	117
Rules and Exercises .....	118, &c.
Indefinite Pronouns.....	120
Rules and Exercises.....	121, &c.
Recapitulatory Exercises upon all the Pronouns, 140, &c.	

## CHAP. V.

Verbs .....	146
The different Sorts of Verbs.....	147
Conjugation of Verbs.....	148
Moods .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Tenses .....	151
Tenses of the Indicative Mood.....	152
Compound Tenses .....	157
Tenses of the Subjunctive or Conjunctive Mood....	160
Numbers and Persons.....	162
The Number of Conjugations.....	163
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>avoir</i> , to have ..	164
Of <i>être</i> , to be .....	166
Observation.—1. <i>Some</i> or <i>any</i> translated by <i>du</i> , <i>de</i> <i>la</i> , &c. ....	169
—————2. The Place to be given to the Ne- gation <i>ne-pas</i> or <i>ne-point</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
—————3. <i>Avoir</i> , used negatively, requires the Preposition <i>de</i> or <i>d'</i> before the Substantive that follows it, &c. ....	<i>ib.</i>
—————4. Agreement of the Verb with its Subject.....	<i>ib.</i>
Exercises on the Auxiliary Verbs.....	170, &c.
<i>Avoir</i> , with an Interrogation affirmative, and an In- terrogation negative .....	173
Rules and Exercises.....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Observation.— <i>To be</i> , preceding any Noun signifying <i>Hunger</i> , <i>Thirst</i> , <i>Cold</i> , &c., must be rendered by <i>avoir</i> , &c.....	177
Observations.—1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. On the Peculiarities of certain Verbs ending in <i>ger</i> , <i>cer</i> , <i>eler</i> , <i>eter</i> , <i>enir</i> , <i>endre</i> , <i>yer</i> , <i>eoir</i> , &c.....	178, &c.

	Page
Observations.—7. On <i>do</i> and <i>did</i> .....	179
—————8. Some Verbs do not admit the Pronoun <i>je</i> after them .....	180
First Conjugation .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
<i>To take</i> and <i>to carry</i> , &c. The different Ways of rendering them .....	183
Observation.—The <i>auxiliary</i> Verbs <i>have</i> , <i>am</i> , <i>do</i> , &c., used to avoid the Repetition of a preceding Verb, &c. ....	184
Exercises on the First Conjugation .....	185, &c.
Second Conjugation .....	188, &c.
Exercises on this Conjugation .....	191, &c.
Third Conjugation .....	193, &c.
Exercises on this Conjugation .....	196, &c.
Observation.— <i>Should</i> expressing <i>duty</i> or <i>necessity</i> , or when it can be turned into <i>ought</i> , &c. ....	198
Fourth Conjugation .....	200
Exercises on this Conjugation .....	203
Recapitulatory Exercises on the regular Verbs of the Four Conjugations .....	205, &c.
Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound Tenses ..	208
Conjugation of Passive Verbs .....	209
Neuter Verbs.—How to distinguish a <i>neuter</i> Verb from an <i>active</i> one .....	210
The general Rule to know which <i>neuter</i> Verbs take <i>avoir</i> , and which take <i>être</i> for their Auxiliaries, 211, &c.	
Reflected Verbs .....	215
Reflected Passive Verb .....	216
Reciprocal Verbs .....	217
All the Reflected and Reciprocal Verbs take <i>être</i> for their <i>Auxiliary</i> .....	<i>ib.</i>
Conjugation of the Reflected Verbs .....	218, &c.
Observation 1.— <i>To take a ride</i> , <i>an airing</i> , &c. ....	221
Exercises upon the Reflected Verbs .....	222, &c.
Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs .....	225
First Conjugation .....	226
Second Conjugation .....	228
Exercises on Verbs of this Conjugation and their Compounds .....	234, &c.
Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation .....	253, &c.
<i>Can</i> , <i>may</i> , <i>could</i> , or <i>might</i> , expressing an <i>absolute</i> or <i>permissive</i> Power, &c. Rule 10.—1. ....	259
<i>May</i> expressing a <i>wish</i> .... —————2. ....	<i>ib.</i>

	Page
<i>Could</i> and <i>might</i> ..... Rule 10, 3.....	259
<i>Could</i> or <i>might</i> ..... ————4, joined to the Verb <i>to have</i> , immediately followed by a Participle past .....	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Cannot</i> , <i>I cannot</i> , <i>je ne saurois</i> .....	260
<i>Will</i> or <i>would</i> , signifying <i>will</i> , <i>choice</i> , <i>deliberation</i> , &c. Rule 11.—1, 2, 3 .....	264, &c.
Exercises on the foregoing Verbs and their Com- pounds.....	265, &c.
Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation ....	269, &c.
Exercises on the foregoing Verbs and their Com- pounds.....	279, &c.
Impersonal Verbs .....	313
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs.....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
<i>There is</i> , followed by <i>no</i> and a <i>Participle active</i> , ren- dered by <i>on ne peut pas</i> , <i>on ne sauroit</i> , &c.—Ob- servation .....	317
<i>It is</i> , <i>it was</i> , used to denote a Space of Time, <i>it is so</i> <i>long since</i> , &c. Rule 12.—1, &c. ....	318, &c.
<i>Ago</i> acting as a Substitute for <i>there is</i> , &c.—Rule 13, 319	
<i>This</i> or <i>these</i> placed before the Time specified, &c.— Rule 14, &c.....	320, &c.
<i>It is</i> , &c., followed by a <i>Noun</i> , <i>Pronoun personal</i> , <i>pos- sessive</i> , &c. rendered by <i>c'est</i> , &c.—Rule 19, &c....	323
<i>He</i> , <i>she</i> , &c., taken in a general Sense, followed by <i>who</i> , &c. rendered impersonally. Ex. <i>He is a fool</i> <i>who</i> , &c. <i>C'est être fou que</i> , &c.—Rule 20 .....	324
<i>It is</i> , &c., followed by a <i>Noun Adjective</i> , &c., ren- dered by <i>il est</i> . Ex. <i>It is surprising</i> , &c.; <i>il est</i> <i>étonnant</i> , &c. Rule 21.—1. ....	326
<i>It is</i> , &c., used to denote the <i>state of the weather</i> , rendered by <i>il fait</i> , &c. <i>It is fine weather</i> ; <i>il fait</i> <i>beau temps</i> . Rule 21.—3.....	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Must</i> , rendered by <i> falloir</i> , with Rules and Exercises, 327, &c.	
The Indefinite Pronoun <i>on</i> .....	332
Recapitulatory Exercise on the Impersonal Verbs, 333, &c.	
Participles .....	336
Participle Active and Verbal Adjective.....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
The first indeclinable.—Rule 26. ....	<i>ib.</i>
The other declinable.—Observation .....	<i>ib.</i>
The Participle Active, governed by <i>Prepositions</i> or the <i>Article the</i> , rendered in French by the present of the Infinitive, &c.—Rule 28.....	338



	Page
Rules for ascertaining when the <i>Participle Past</i> is declinable and when indeclinable .....	341, &c.
Recapitulatory Exercise on the Participles Past....	351

## CHAP. VI.

Adverbs .....	353
Tables of Adverbs, with Exercises.....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Observations.—1. <i>How</i> , &c., before an Admiration, rendered by <i>que</i> .....	357
—————2, 3, 4, 5. <i>How long</i> , &c., rendered by <i>combien y a-t-il que</i> , &c. ....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Tables of Adverbs, with Exercises .....	359, &c.
Observation on the Adverb <i>où</i> .....	367
Observations on the Adverbs <i>non</i> , <i>non pas</i> , <i>ne</i> , <i>ne-pas</i> , <i>ne-point</i> , <i>point</i> , <i>NO</i> , <i>NOT</i> .....	368, &c.
Exercise upon these Adverbs.....	372, &c.
Tables of Adverbs, with Exercises .....	375, &c.

## CHAP. VII.

Prepositions.....	384
Prepositions that are followed by <i>de</i> , with Exercise, <i>ib.</i> &c.	
Prepositions that are followed by <i>à</i> , with Exercise..	387
Simple Uncompound Prepositions, with Exercise, <i>ib.</i> &c.	
Observations on the Prepositions <i>above</i> , <i>at</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>for</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>on or upon</i> , <i>over</i> , <i>with</i> , <i>without</i> , with Exercise .....	391, &c.

## CHAP. VIII.

Conjunctions .....	406
Conjunctions which govern the Verb in the <i>Infinitive Mood</i> , with Exercise.....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Conjunctions which govern the Verb in the <i>Indicative Mood</i> , with Exercise .....	407, &c.
Observations.—1. The Conjunctions that have this Mark *, with Exercise .....	410, &c.
—————2. The Conjunction <i>than</i> , with Exercise .....	411, &c.
Conjunctions which govern the Verb in the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> , with Exercise .....	412, &c.
Observations.—1. <i>If</i> , instead of being repeated, &c.	416

	Page
Observations.—2. The Conjunction <i>que</i> , as well as the Pronoun, must be repeated in the second Part of a Sentence, &c. ....	416
Promiscuous Exercise on the Conjunctions. ....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
<i>Que</i> , following any Verb denoting <i>wish</i> , <i>will</i> , <i>command</i> , <i>doubt</i> , <i>fear</i> , &c., governs the Verb, &c.—Rule 1, with Exercise. ....	418, &c.
After <i>vouloir</i> , <i>to have</i> , governing another Verb, not expressed, &c. Rule 2.—1. ....	421
<i>Shall</i> , referring to the <i>will</i> , and meaning <i>choose</i> , &c. Rule 2.—2, with Exercise. ....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
<i>Qui</i> , <i>que</i> , or <i>dont</i> , preceded by a Superlative, require the following Verb in the Subjunctive, &c.—Rule 3, with Exercise. ....	423, &c.

## CHAP. IX.

Interjections .....	424
The different Sorts, with Exercise .....	<i>ib.</i> &c.
Rules on the Prepositions <i>de</i> , <i>à</i> , and <i>pour</i> , with respect to Verbs that command or reject them, with Exercise .....	426, &c.
Observations on the Prepositions <i>en</i> , <i>dans</i> , and <i>à</i> , IN or AT .....	433, &c.
Idiomatical Expressions on the Verb <i>avoir</i> , <i>to have</i> , &c., with Exercise .....	434, &c.
————— <i>être</i> , <i>to be</i> , with Exercise .....	437, &c.
————— <i>faire</i> , <i>to make</i> , or <i>do</i> , with Exercise .....	438, &c.
————— different Verbs, <i>to have rather</i> ; <i>to take a great deal upon one's self</i> ; <i>it is no wonder</i> ; <i>I long to</i> , &c, with Exercises ...	441, &c.
General and promiscuous Exercises on different Subjects .....	445, &c.

AN  
ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT  
OF  
IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH REFERENCES TO THE PLACES IN WHICH THEY, OR SIMILAR VERBS,  
ARE CONJUGATED IN THIS GRAMMAR ;

WITH REMARKS.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Acquire .....	Acquérir .....	.....	228
Avoid, <sup>1</sup> or Shun	Fuir <sup>2</sup> .....	.....	237
Abstain .....	S'Abstenir... }	Tenir .....	245
Attain to .....	Parvenir à. . . }		
Anticipate .....	Prévenir .....		
Assault .....	Assaillir .....	Tressaillir....	246
be Able .....	Pouvoir <sup>3</sup> .....	.....	258
Absolve .....	Absoudre .....	.....	269
Abate .....	Rabattre .....	Battre ....	271
Acknowledge, or know again.. }	Reconnoître.. }	Connoître....	277
Accrue .....	Accroître.... }		
Appear .....	Paroître.... }		
Appear, to give evidence .....	Comparoître. }	.....	.....
Ask too much..	Surfaire. ....	Faire .....	288
Admit .....	Admettre ...	Mettre .....	291
Anoint .....	Oindre <sup>4</sup> .....	Craindre....	282
Apprehend, or understand.. }	Comprendre.. }	Prendre .....	301
Abstract .....	Abstraire....	Traire .....	305
Assist <sup>5</sup> .....	Secourir....	Courir .....	231
Agree .....	Consentir....	Mentir .....	238
be Acquainted with .....	Connoître ... }	.....	277
be Afraid .....	Craindre ....	.....	282
fall Asleep .....	S'Endormir.. }	Dormir .....	233
fall Asleep again	Se Rendormir }		

<sup>1</sup> *Éviter*, to avoid, and *assister*, to assist, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

<sup>2</sup> See Remarks on Pret. p. 237, and Imperfect of Subjunct. p. 238.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 259.

<sup>4</sup> See Remark, p. 299.

<sup>5</sup> See Note 1 above.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Boil .....	Bouillir .....	Bouillir <sup>1</sup> .....	230
Boil again .....	Rebouillir .....		
Belie. ....	Démentir. ....	Mentir. ....	238
Belong .....	Appartenir. ....	Tenir .....	245
Become of ....	Devenir <sup>2</sup> .....		
Become fit, &c.	Convenir .....		
Befal .....	Survenir. ....	Battre .....	271
Beat. ....	Battre .....		
Beat again	Rebattre .....		
Beatdown(abate)	Rabattre .....		
Bray .....	Braire .....		273
Believe .....	Croire .....		233
Bake, or Boil, often English- ed to do. }	Cuire .....	Conduire ....	275
Boil again, do again. .... }	Recuire .....		
Bring to, or Re- duce to .... }	Réduire ....		
Build, <sup>3</sup> or Con- struct .....	Construire. ... }		
Banish <sup>4</sup> .....	Proscrire ....	Écrire .....	286
be Born .....	Naître .....	Naître .....	298
be Born again..	Renaître		
To Conquer .....	Conquérir ...	Acquérir ....	228
Concur .....	Concourir ...	Courir .....	231
Contradict, or Belie .....	Démentir. ....	Mentir. ....	238
Consent. ....	Consentir. ....		
Cover. ....	Couvrir .....	Offrir. ....	240
Cover again ..	Recouvrir ...		
Contain .....	Contenir ....	Tenir. ....	245
Come .....	Venir <sup>5</sup> .....		
Come back ....	Revenir .....		
Clothe. ....	Vêtir .....		
Come to, Befall	Survenir. ....		
Clear a table..	Desservir ....	Servir .....	244
Conclude .....	Conclure ....		274

<sup>1</sup> See p. 231.<sup>2</sup> See Observation, p. 248.<sup>3</sup> *Bâtir*, to build, and *Bannir*, to banish, are regular verbs of the second conjugation.<sup>4</sup> See Note 4 above.<sup>5</sup> See Remark, p. 248.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Conduct, Lead, } or Carry . . . . }	Conduire . . . . }	Conduire . . . .	275
Construct, Build, }	Construire . . . }		
Circumcise . . . . }	Circoncire <sup>1</sup> . . }	Confire . . . . .	276
Chance, or Fall } out . . . . . }	Échoir <sup>2</sup> . . . . . }	Déchoir . . . . .	256
Contradict . . . . }	Contredire <sup>3</sup> . . }		
Curse . . . . . }	Maudire . . . . . }	Dire . . . . .	284
Constrain . . . . }	Contraindre . . }		
Compel . . . . . }	Se Plaindre . . }	Craindre . . . .	282
Complain . . . . }			
Come to life, as } from an egg, }	Éclore <sup>4</sup> . . . . . }		286
Counterfeit . . . . }	Contrefaire . . . }	Faire . . . . .	288
Compromise . . . . }	Compromettre }		
Commit . . . . . }	Commettre . . . }	Mettre . . . . .	291
Chide . . . . . }	Reprendre . . . }	Prendre . . . . .	301
Conquer . . . . . }	Vaincre <sup>5</sup> . . . . }		
Convince . . . . . }	Convaincre . . }	Vaincre . . . . .	306
To Discourse . . . . }	Discourir . . . . }	Courir . . . . .	231
Die . . . . . }	Mourir . . . . . }		
be Dying . . . . . }	Se Mourir . . . }	Mourir . . . . .	239
Detain . . . . . }	Détenir . . . . . }		
Disagree . . . . . }	Disconvenir . . }	Tenir . . . . .	245
Discover . . . . . }	Découvrir . . . . }	Offrir . . . . .	240
Depart . . . . . }	Départir . . . . . }	Mentir . . . . .	238
Dissolve . . . . . }	Dissoudre <sup>6</sup> . . . }	Absoudre . . . .	269
Drink . . . . . }	Boire <sup>7</sup> . . . . . }		272
Debate . . . . . }	Débattre . . . . . }	Battre . . . . .	271
Decay . . . . . }	Déchoir . . . . . }		256
Do an ill office, }	Desservir . . . . }	Servir . . . . .	244
Deduct . . . . . }	Déduire . . . . . }		
Destroy . . . . . }	Détruire . . . . . }		
Do over, with } mortar, &c. . . }	Enduire . . . . . }	Conduire . . . .	275
Decrease . . . . . }	Décroître . . . . }		
Disappear . . . . }	Disparoître . . }	Connoître . . . .	277
Describe . . . . . }	Décrire . . . . . }	I'crire . . . . .	286

<sup>1</sup> See Participle Past, p. 274.<sup>2</sup> See Participle Active, p. 257.<sup>3</sup> See Note, p. 285.<sup>4</sup> See p. 286.<sup>5</sup> See Notes \*, †, p. 306.<sup>6</sup> See p. 270.<sup>7</sup> See Note, p. 273.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>	
To Do .....	Faire .....	Faire .....	288	
Do again.....	Refaire .....			
Defeat.....	Défaire .....			
Dissemble.....	Feindre .....	Craindre ....	282	
Dye.....	Teindre.....			
Draw, Design..	Peindre .....			
Defer, Put off, or Deliver up... }	Remettre ....	Mettre.....	291	
Displease .....	Déplaître.....	Plaître.....	300	
Distract.....	Distraire .....	Traire .....	305	
To Entertain.....	Entretenir...	Tenir .....	245	
Exclude.....	Exclure <sup>1</sup> ....	Conclure ....	274	
Exact .....	Surfaire .....	Faire .....	288	
Enjoin.....	Enjoindre....	Craindre ....	282	
Enclose.....	Enceindre ...			
Encompass .....				
Elect. ....	Élire.....	Lire.....	289	
Extract.....	Extraire.....	Traire .....	305	
To Fetch.....	Querir <sup>2</sup> ....	Acquérir ....	228	
Flee, or Fly....	Fuir <sup>3</sup> .....	.....	237	
Feel .....	Sentir .....	Mentir .....	238	
Foresee, or have a foresight of, }	Pressentir ..			
Foresee .....	Prévoir <sup>4</sup> ....	Voir.....	262	
Fit, <sup>5</sup> or fit well..	Seoir <sup>6</sup> .....	Asseoir.....	253	
Fight. ....	Combattre..	Battre. ....	271	
Fear, .....	Craindre ....	Craindre ....	282	
Force .....	Contraindre..			
Feign .....	Feindre .....	Dire <sup>7</sup> .....	284	
Forbid.....	Interdire .....			
Foretell.....	Prédire .....	Déchoir.....	256	
Fall out, or Hap- pen .....	Échoir <sup>8</sup> .....			
Fry .....	Frîre .....	.....	289	
Feed, or Graze..	Paître .....	Connoître....	277	
Follow.....	Suivre .....	Suivre .....	303	
Follow from ...	S'Ensuivre..			
Fine-draw.....	Rentraire....	Traire .....	305	

<sup>1</sup> See p. 288.<sup>2</sup> See p. 229.<sup>3</sup> See p. 237, 238.<sup>4</sup> See p. 263.<sup>5</sup> See the verb To Become, &c.<sup>6</sup> See p. 254.<sup>7</sup> See Note, p. 285.<sup>8</sup> See p. 257.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Go . . . . .	Aller . . . . .	} Aller . . . . .	226
Go away . . . . .	S'en Aller. . .		
Gather . . . . .	Cueillir . . . . .	} Cueillir . . . . .	232
Gather together	Recueillir. . . .		
Go out . . . . .	Sortir. . . . .	Mentir. . . . .	238
Grow. . . . .	Croître. . . . .	} Connoître . . .	277
Grow less . . . .	Décroître. . . .		
Grow again. . . .	Recroître. . . .		
Graze . . . . .	Paître. . . . .	} Conduire . . . .	275
Glitter. . . . .	Reluire <sup>1</sup> . . . .		
Glimpse, or to have a glimpse of }	Entrevoir. . . .	Voir. . . . .	262
Grind . . . . .	Moudre . . . . .	} Moudre . . . . .	292
Grind again . . .	Remoudre. . . .		
Give other clothes. . . . . }	Revêtir . . . . .	.....	248
Gird. . . . .	Ceindre . . . . .	Craindre. . . . .	282
To Hold . . . . .	Tenir. . . . .	} Tenir. . . . .	245
Happen unex- pectedly }	Survenir. . . . .		
Hear. . . . .	Oùir. . . . .	.....	241
Hatch . . . . .	Éclorre. . . . .	.....	286
Hurt . . . . .	Nuire <sup>2</sup> . . . . .	Conduire. . . . .	275
Humour . . . . .	Complaire . . . .	} Plaire. . . . .	300
Hold one's tongue . . . . . }	Se Taire. . . . .		
Hear of . . . . .	{ Apprendre des nouvelles de }	Prendre. . . . .	301
To Incur . . . . .	Encourir . . . . .	Courir . . . . .	231
Impart . . . . .	Départir . . . . .	Mentir . . . . .	238
Infringe . . . . .	Contrevenir à }	} Tenir. . . . .	245
Intervene. . . . .	Intervenir. . . .		
Invest . . . . .	Revêtir . . . . .	.....	248
Interdict . . . . .	Interdire <sup>3</sup> . . . .	Dire. . . . .	284
Inscribe. . . . .	Inscrire . . . . .	Écrire . . . . .	286
Induce. . . . .	Induire . . . . .	} Conduire . . . .	275
Instruct. . . . .	Instruire . . . . .		
Introduce . . . . .	Introduire. . . .	} Prendre. . . . .	301
Include . . . . .	Comprendre. . .		

<sup>1</sup> See p. 290.<sup>2</sup> See p. 299.<sup>3</sup> See Note, p. 285.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Jut, Jet out, a term in Archi- tecture only, }	Saillir <sup>1</sup> .....	Tressaillir....	246
Join.....	Joindre.....	Craindre.....	282
To Keep.....	Tenir.....	.....	245
Know somebody	Connoître...	} Connoître....	277
Know again ..	Reconnoître..		
Know something	Savoir <sup>2</sup> .....	.....	259
To Lie.....	Mentir.....	} Mentir.....	238
give one the Lie	Démentir....		
Lead.....	Conduire.....	} Conduire....	275
Lead again....	Reconduire..		
Learn.....	Apprendre ..	Prendre.....	301
Leap for.....	Tressaillir...	.....	246
Laugh.....	Rire.....	.....	302
Live.....	Vivre.....	.....	307
To Maintain.....	{ Maintenir... }	} Tenir.....	245
	{ Soutenir..... }		
Move.....	Mouvoir.....	} Mouvoir.....	257
Move, or Stir up,	Emouvoir.....		
Mistake, or be	Méconnoître	Connoître...	277
deceived ... }	or, Méprendre	Prendre.....	301
Make.....	Faire.....	} Faire.....	288
Make up again	Refaire.....		
Mimic.....	Contrefaire..		
Milk.....	Traire.....	.....	305
To make a great Noise.....	{ Bruire..... }	.....	273
To Overtake ....	Atteindre...	Craindre.....	282
Offer.....	Offrir.....	} Offrir.....	240
Open.....	Ouvrir.....		
Obtain.....	Obtenir.....	Tenir.....	245
do an ill Office,	Desservir....	Servir.....	244
Open as an oy- ster.....	{ Éclore..... }	.....	286
Outlaw.....	Proscrire....	Écrire.....	286
Omif.....	Omettre.....	Mettre.....	291
Outlive.....	Survivre.....	Vivre.....	307
Oblige.....	Astreindre <sup>3</sup> ..	Craindre.....	282

<sup>1</sup> See p. 247.<sup>2</sup> See Notes, p. 260.<sup>3</sup> Grows obsolete, p. 271.



<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Prevent .....	Prévenir .....	Tenir .....	245
Proceed .....	Provenir .....		
Prescribe .....	Précrire .....	Ecrire .....	286
Proscribe .....	Proscrire .....		
Prevail .....	Prévaloir <sup>1</sup> .....	Valoir .....	261
Provide .....	Pourvoir <sup>2</sup> ..	Voir .....	262
Pull down .....	Abattre .....	Battre .....	271
Preserve .....	Confire .....	.....	276
Put out .....	Éteindre .....	Craindre ....	282
Pretend .....	Feindre .....		
Paint .....	Peindre .....		
Pity .....	Plaindre .....		
Part with .....	Se Défaire ..	Faire .....	288
Put .....	Mettre <sup>3</sup> .....	Mettre .....	291
Permit .....	Permettre ..		
Promise .....	Promettre <sup>4</sup> ..		
Put back again } Put off .....	Remettre .....		
Prejudice .... } Prepossess .... }	Prévenir .....	Tenir .....	245
Produce .....	Produire .....	Conduire ....	275
Pursue .....	Poursuivre ..	Suivre .....	303
Please .....	Plaire .....	.....	300
To Require .....	Requérir .....	Acquérir ....	228
get rid of ....	Se Défaire ..	Faire .....	288
Run .....	Courir .....	Courir .....	231
Run to .....	Accourir ....		
Run over ....	Parcourir ....		
have recourse to,	Recourir ....		
Run away ....	Fuir <sup>5</sup> .....	.....	237
Retain .....	Retenir .....	Tenir .....	245
Return .....	Revenir .....		
Remember, or } Remind .....	Se Souvenir <sup>6</sup> }		
Recollect ....	Se Ressouvenir }		
Relieve .....	Subvenir ....	Mentir .....	238
Resent .....	Ressentir ....		
Reply .....	Repartir ....		
Repent .....	Se Repentir ..		

<sup>1</sup> See p. 262.<sup>2</sup> See p. 263.<sup>3</sup> See Note, p. 291.<sup>4</sup> See Note, p. 292.<sup>5</sup> See *q*. 237, 238.<sup>6</sup> See Obs. p. 248.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Roar .....	Bruire .....	.....	273
Resolve .....	Résoudre <sup>1</sup> ..	Absoudre....	269
Retract .....	Se Dédire <sup>2</sup> ..	Dire.....	284
Recant .....			
Read .....	Lire .....	Lire .....	289
Read again....	Relire .....		
Remove .....	Démètre....	Mettre.....	291
Resign .....	Se Démètre ..		
Rise { as }	Naître .....	Naître .....	298
Revive { flowers }	Renaître ....		
Rebuke .....	Reprendre ..	Prendre ....	301
Reduce .....	Réduire .....	Conduire ....	275
Restrain .....	Restreindre ..	Craindre ....	282
Reach .....	Atteindre <sup>3</sup> ..		
Revive .....	Revivre .....	Vivre .....	307
Recover .....			
To Succour .....	Secourir ....	Courir .....	231
Sleep .....	Dormir .....	Dormir.....	233
make Sleep ..	Endormir ...		
Shun .....	Fuir .....	.....	237
Suffer .....	Souffrir .....	Offrir .....	240
Serve .....	Servir .....	.....	244
Support .....	Soutenir ....	Tenir .....	245
Suit .....	Convenir ....		
Start, Startle ..	Tressaillir ...	.....	246
Stir up .....	Émouvoir....	Mouvoir ....	257
See .....	Voir .....	Voir .....	262
See again ....	Revoir .....		
Solve .....	Soudre <sup>4</sup> .....	Absoudre ..	269
Sew .....	Coudre.....	Coudre.....	278
Stitch .....			
Sew again ....	Recoudre ....	Moudre .....	292
Sharpen .....	Émoudre ....		
Set out .....	Partir .....	Mentir.....	238
Set out again ..	Repartir ....		
be Sensible of,	Ressentir ....		
Smell .....	Sentir .....	.....	271
Struggle .....	Se Débattre..	Battre .....	271
Sit down .....	Asseoir <sup>5</sup> ....	Asseoir .....	253
Sit down again,	Se Rasseoir ..		

<sup>1</sup> See p. 270.    <sup>2</sup> See Note\*, p. 285.    <sup>3</sup> Obsolete, p. 271.<sup>4</sup> See p. 270.<sup>5</sup> See p. 254.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>		
<b>To Supersede</b> .....	Surseoir.....	.....	255		
Say .....	Dire.....	} Dire.....	284		
Say again .....	Redire .....				
Slander .....	Médire <sup>1</sup> ....				
Speak ill of.....	} Clore .....	} Éclore.....	286		
Shut, or close..					
Shut, or .....	} Enclore <sup>2</sup> .....				
Surround with walls, &c. ..					
Subscribe .....	Souscrire.....	Écrire .....	286		
Satisfy.....	Satisfaire.....	Faire .....	288		
Shine .....	Luire <sup>3</sup> .....	Conduire.....	275		
Submit .....	Soumettre...	Mettre.....	291		
Surprise .....	Surprendre ..	Prendre.....	301		
Smile .....	Sourire.....	Rire .....	302		
Seduce .....	Séduire .....	Conduire ....	275		
Suffice, or be Suf- ficient .....	} Suffire <sup>4</sup> ....	Confire.....	276		
Seem .....					
Subtract .....	Paroître ....	Connoître ...	277		
	Soustraire.....	Traire .....	305		
<b>To Tell</b> .....	Dire.....	} Dire.....	284		
Tell again ....	Redire .....				
Transcribe.....	Transcrire ..	Ecrire .....	286		
Turn out.....	Démettre ...	} Mettre.....	291		
Transmit.....	Transmettre,				
Take .....	Prendre .....	} Prendre.....	301		
Take again....	Reprendre ..				
Translate ....	Traduire .....	Conduire.....	275		
Throw down ..	Abattre .....	Battre .....	271		
<b>To Unsew</b> .....	Découdre....	Coudre.....	278		
Use, or make use of .....	} Se Servir....	Servir .....	244		
Uncover .....					
Unsay.....	Découvrir ...	Offrir .....	240		
Undo .....	Se Dédire <sup>5</sup> ..	Dire.....	284		
Undo again....	Défaire.....	} Faire .....	288		
Understand....	Redéfaire....				
Understand....	Comprendre ..	} Prendre.....	301		
Unlearn .....	Désapprendre				
Undertake ....	Entreprendre.				
<b>To Vanquish</b> .....	Vaincre <sup>6</sup> ....	.....	306		

<sup>1</sup> See Note \*, p. 285.<sup>2</sup> See p. 286.<sup>3</sup> See p. 290.<sup>4</sup> See p. 303.<sup>5</sup> See Note \*, p. 285.<sup>6</sup> See Notes \*, †, p. 306.

To Welcome	.....	Accueillir <sup>1</sup> ..	Cueillir	.....	232
be Worth	.....	Valoir	.....	.....	261
Wish, or be will-	} ing	Vouloir <sup>2</sup> ..	.....	.....	263
Write					
Write again	..	Récrire	.....	} Écrire	286
Whet	.....	Émoudre	.....		
			Moudre	.....	292

# EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS MADE USE OF IN THIS GRAMMAR.

m.	Noun masculine.
f.	Noun feminine.
pl.	Plural.
sing.	Singular.
adj.	Adjective.
pro.	Pronoun.
v.	Verb.
p. act.	Participle active.
p. p.	Participle past.
p.	Preposition.
pret. def.	Preterite definite.
preter. plu.	Preterpluperfect.
fut.	Future.
fut. comp.	Future compound.
adv.	Adverb.
c.	Conjunction.
int.	Interjection.
∞	The English words that have this mark underneath are not to be translated.

The figures <sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>, <sup>3</sup>, &c., point out the order to be given to the words in their translation into French.

<sup>1</sup> Very little used.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 264, 265.

# A PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing a language with propriety ; or it is the art of rightly expressing *ideas* by words.

Grammar consists of two kinds, viz. *general* and *particular*. *General grammar* considers language in itself ; explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. *Particular grammar* applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established rules and decisions of the Academy. It has for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of *letters, syllables, words, sentences, &c.*

In the FRENCH ALPHABET there are twenty-five letters, viz. *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.* Six of these, namely, *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y,* are VOWELS, so called because each can be distinctly sounded without the assistance of any other letter. The rest are called CONSONANTS, because they cannot be perfectly sounded without being associated with some vowel, placed either before or after them.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one letter or more, requires, in the pronunciation, a single impulse of the voice ; ex. *ba, me, moi, &c.* Syllables may be either long or short, according to the time required in pronouncing them. For example, the first vowel

Is long in	It is short in
<i>Pâte</i> , paste.	<i>Patte</i> , pan.
<i>Bête</i> , beast.	<i>Bette</i> , beet.
<i>Gîte</i> , lodging.	<i>Rite</i> , rite.
<i>Tôt</i> , soon.	<i>Botte</i> , boot.
<i>Chûte</i> , a fall.	<i>Chut!</i> silence!

As the accents in the French language generally affect the sound of vowels, and often make syllables long, I shall endeavour to give here a clear notion of them.

#### OF ACCENTS.

There are in French three different accents.

1st, the *acute* (') from right to left.

2d, the *grave* (`) from left to right.

3rd, the *circumflex* (^), a union of the *acute* and the *grave*.

The vowel *e* sometimes takes one of them; sometimes it does not take any. Hence arise four different sounds belonging to the letter *e*.

#### E.

When marked with the *acute* accent, it is called *fermé*, close; as in *été*, been; *bonté*, goodness.

When marked with the *grave* accent, it is called *ouvert*, open; as in *père*, father; *mère*, mother; *succès*, success; *très*, very.

When marked with the *circumflex* accent, it is *open* and *long*; as in *être*, to be; *fête*, feast; *tête*, head.

When without any accent, it is called *muet*, that is to say, not sounded; as in *bonne*, good; *chûte*, a fall; *monde*, world; *ville*, town; *servante*, female servant.

#### A, I, O, U.

Whenever any of these vowels is marked with the *circumflex* accent, the syllable to which it belongs is long. Ex. *pâte*, paste; *bâtir*, to build: *bâton*, stick; *fâché*, angry;—*épître*, epistle; *île*, island; *gîte*, lodging;—*apôtre*, apostle; *dôme*, dome; *fantôme*, phantom; *le nôtre*,\* ours; *le vôtre*, yours; *trône*, throne;—*Août*, August; *goût*, taste; *flûte*, flute; *jeûne*, fast; *voûte*, vault.

\* *Notre* and *vetre* do not take the *circumflex* accent when they are followed by a substantive; they take it only when they are preceded by the article.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE GRAVE ACCENT.

There are several words in French on which the grave accent is placed merely to distinguish them from others that are formed of the same letters. In those words the accent does not in the least affect the pronunciation. They are *à*, to, preposition; *dès*, from, preposition; *là*, there, adverb; *où*, where, adverb; *dû*, owed, participle of the verb *devoir*, to owe; *crû*, grown, participle past of the verb *croître*; *tû*, participle past of the verb *taire*, to be silent. The accent distinguishes *à*, to, from *a*, has, third person singular of the present of the verb *AVOIR*, to have: *dès*, from, is distinguished from *des*, of the, a compound article; *là*, there, from *la*, article; *où*, where, from *ou*, or, conjunction; *dû*, owed, from *du*, of the, a compound article; *crû*, grown, from *cru*, believed, participle past of the verb *croire*, to believe; *tû*, participle past of the verb *taire*, is distinguished from *tu*, thou, personal pronoun.

## OF THE DIÆRESIS.

The *Diæresis* consists in two dots, thus (¨) placed over a vowel; its function is to indicate that the vowel thus marked is to be sounded independently of the other vowel that immediately precedes it, and not to form with it a diphthong; as in *haïr*, to hate; *naïf*, ingenuous, *païen*, pagan.

## OF THE CEDILLA.

The *Cedilla* is a kind of *c* reversed and placed under the letter *c*, when this is followed by either *a*, *o*, or *u*, in order, in general, to preserve the pronunciation of *s*, which it has in the word from which it is derived. Etymology seems to command it. As in *reçu*, received, from *recevoir*, to receive; *François*, French, from *France*, France. Pronounce *resu*; *Franse*.

## THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF WORDS.

There are in the French language nine different kinds of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech. They are

<i>L'Article,</i>	The Article.
<i>Le Substantif,</i>	The Substantive.
<i>L'Adjectif,</i>	The Adjective.
<i>Le Pronom,</i>	The Pronoun.
<i>Le Verbe,</i>	The Verb.
<i>L'Adverbe,</i>	The Adverb.
<i>La Préposition,</i>	The Preposition.
<i>La Conjonction,</i>	The Conjunction.
<i>L'Interjection,</i>	The Interjection.

The *article*, *substantive*, *adjective*, *pronoun*, and *verb*, admit of variations in their terminations; the others do not: they are invariable.

#### GENERAL EXPLANATIONS.

The *article* is one of these words *le, la, les*, THE, which are placed in French before common nouns.

The *substantive* is expressive of the name of a person or thing; as *Pierre*, Peter; *roi*, king; *maison*, house.

The *adjective* expresses the quality of a person or thing; as, *bon*, good; *mauvais*, bad; *aimable*, lovely; *rouge*, red.

The *pronoun* is a word used to take the place of a noun, in order to avoid its too frequent repetition; as,

<i>Jean est instruit; IL parle bien,</i>	John is learned; he speaks well.
--	----------------------------------

*Il* takes the place of a person already spoken of; therefore, it is a pronoun.

The *verb* either expresses the *state* of its subject, or the *action spoken of*, which action is either *done*, or *received*, or *suffered* by the *subject* of the verb. Ex.

<i>Je SUIS malade,</i>	I am ill.
<i>Ma sœur ECRIT une lettre,</i>	My sister writes a letter.
<i>Vous SEREZ PUNI,</i>	You will be punished.

*Suis* serves to express the state of illness; *écrit* and *puni* express the actions spoken of; therefore they are *verbs*.

The *adverb* is generally joined to a *verb*, or to an *adjective*, and even to another *adverb*, in order to modify their signification. Ex. *Mademoiselle Rose danse élégamment*, Miss Rose dances elegantly. *Élégamment* is used in this sentence to point out the manner in which Miss Rose dances. Therefore it is an *adverb*.

The *preposition* serves to express the relation of objects



with respect to one another. It always joins those objects. Ex. *Les fils de Brutus*, the sons of Brutus; *de* is a *preposition*, because it expresses the relation between *les fils* and *Brutus*.

The *conjunction* serves to unite the different parts of a discourse. Ex. *et*, and; *car*, for; *mais*, but; &c.

The *interjection* expresses the various sentiments and sudden emotions of the soul. Ex. *Hélas! mon Dieu!* Oh! my God!

## CHAP. I.—OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives serve to express the names of persons or things; as, *Jean*, John; *Louise*, Louisa; *livre*, book. Substantives are either *common* or *proper*.

The *substantive common* is that which belongs to all beings or things of the same kind; such as, *homme*, man; *roi*, king; *ville*, town, &c.

The *substantive proper* can be applied but to one person or one thing only, as *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London.

Amongst the *substantives common*, we must distinguish those that are *collective*.

The *substantives collective* are those which, though in the singular, present to our minds a collection of objects of the same kind. The *substantives collective* are divided into *general collective* and *partitive collective*.

The *substantive general collective* is that which expresses a whole body; as, *forêt*, forest; *armée*, army; *peuple*, people.

The *substantive partitive collective* expresses only a partial number; as, *la plupart*, the most part; *une foule*, a crowd; *une infinité*, an infinity.

### OF THE GENDER AND NUMBER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The *masculine gender* belongs to men and to animals of the male kind. The *feminine* belongs to women and animals of the female kind.

The French language does not admit the *neuter gender*; therefore all substantives are either of the masculine or of the feminine gender.

There are two *numbers*; the singular and the plural. The *singular* number relates to one person or thing only;

as, *un homme*, one man; *une table*, one table, &c. The plural relates to more than one person or thing. Ex. *des hommes*, men; *des tables*, tables.

There are substantives that are never used in the plural, others that are never used in the singular.

*Substantives that are never used in the plural.*

1st. The names of metals. Ex. *or*, gold; *argent*, silver; *cuiivre*, brass; *plomb*, lead, &c.

2dly. The names of virtues and vices. Ex. *avarice*, avarice; *charité*, charity; *foi*, faith; *haine*, hatred; *orgueil*, pride; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.

3dly. The names by which the five senses are denoted. Ex. *la vue*, the sight; *le goût*, the taste; *l'odorat*, the smell; *le toucher*, feeling; *l'ouïe*, hearing.

4thly. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.

5thly. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules:

*Artillerie*, artillery.

*Attirail*, implements.

*Bonheur*, happiness.

*Colère*, anger.

*Courroux*, wrath.

*Enfance*, infancy.

*Lait*, milk.

*Miel*, honey.

*Noblesse*, nobility.

*Pauvreté*, poverty.

*Sang*, blood.

*Faim*, hunger.

*Fumée*, smoke.

*Fuite*, flight.

*Gloire*, glory.

*Honte*, shame.

*Jeunesse*, youth.

*Salut*, safety.

*Soif*, thirst.

*Sommeil*, sleep.

*Vieillesse*, old age.

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only; such as,

*Ancêtres*, ancestors.

*Aïeux*, forefathers.

*Funérailles*, a funeral.

*Frais*, expense.

*Délices*, delight.

*Dépens*, cost.

*Entrailles*, entrails.

*Epousailles*, espousals.

*Fonts*, font.

*Atours*, apparel.

*Ciseaux*, scissors.

*Hardes*, clothes.

*Limites*, limits.

*Mœurs*, manners.

*Mouchettes*, snuffers.

*Ténèbres*, darkness.

*Vivres*, victuals.

*Pincettes*, tongs.

And in general those which in English admit of no singular.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

### GENERAL RULE.

In general the *plural number* is formed by adding an *s* to the singular. Ex.

<i>Le père</i> , the father;	<i>Les pères</i> , the fathers.
<i>La mère</i> , the mother;	<i>Les mères</i> , the mothers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the *plural*. Ex.

<i>Le fils</i> , the son;	<i>Les fils</i> , the sons.
<i>Une noix</i> , a walnut;	<i>Des noix</i> , walnuts.
<i>Le nez</i> , the nose;	<i>Les nez</i> , the noses.

### EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x* instead of *s*. Ex.

<i>Un chapeau</i> , a hat;	<i>Des chapeaux</i> , hats.
<i>Un manteau</i> , a cloak;	<i>Des manteaux</i> , cloaks.
<i>Un lieu</i> , a place;	<i>Des lieux</i> , places.
<i>Un chou</i> , a cabbage;	<i>Des choux</i> , cabbages.

The following differ from the above nouns, and their plural terminates in *s* :

<i>Matou</i> , a great cat;	<i>Matous</i> , great cats.
<i>Trou</i> , a hole;	<i>Trous</i> , holes.

Nouns ending in *al* and *aïl* have their plural in *aux* :  
Ex.

<i>Animal</i> , a living creature;	<i>Animaux</i> , living creatures.
<i>Cheval</i> , a horse;	<i>Chevaux</i> , horses.
<i>Mal</i> , evil;	<i>Maux</i> , evils.
<i>Travail</i> , work;	<i>Travaux</i> , works.

The following are excepted; they form their plural in *s* :

<i>Bal</i> , a ball;	<i>Gouvernail</i> , the helm.
<i>Eventail</i> , a fan;	<i>Epouvantail</i> , bugbear.
<i>Détail</i> , account, retail;	<i>Sérail</i> , a seraglio.
<i>Portail</i> , a gateway, &c.	

Nouns of more than one syllable ending in *nt* most generally form their plural by changing the *t* into *s*; as,

<i>Enfant</i> , a child;	<i>Enfans</i> , children.
<i>Commandement</i> , command;	<i>Commandemens</i> , commands.

But nouns of one syllable only (monosyllables) preserve the *t*, and form the plural by adding *s*; as,

*Dent*, tooth;

*Dents*, teeth.

*Pont*, bridge;

*Ponts*, bridges.

*Tout*, adj. all, makes *tous* in its plural masculine, *toute* in the feminine singular, and *toutes* in the plural.

The following are not conformable to any established rule:

*Aïeul*, a grandfather;

*Aïeux* or *aïeuls*, grandfathers.

*Bétail*, cattle;

*Bestiaux*, cattle.

*Ciel*, heaven;

*Cieux*, heavens.

*Œil*, the eye;

*Yeux*, eyes.

Except  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{des ciels de lit, testers of a bed.} \\ \textit{des œils de beuf, ovals.} \end{array} \right.$

There are in French several compound words like the last two, which require some attention from the learner, in the formation of their plural, the difficulty of which may be soon removed by means of reflection; for example:

A noun being composed of a substantive and of an adjective, united by a hyphen, both admit of the plural formation; as,

*Un gentil-homme*, a noble-  
man;

*Des gentils-hommes*, noble-  
men.

A noun compounded of two substantives and of a preposition united by hyphens, the first only in French (which is generally the last in English), admits of the plural formation; as,

*Un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow;

*Des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

*Un chef-d'œuvre*, a master-  
piece;

*Des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-  
pieces.

Some of these French compound words are rendered in English by one word, in which case the formation of the plural in the French is still the same; as,

*Un cul-de-sac*, an alley  
without egress.

*Des culs-de-sac*, alleys.

Nouns being composed of a verb or a preposition and a substantive, the substantive only admits of the plural formation; as,

*Un avant-toit*, eaves ;

*Un casse noisette*, a  
nut-cracker ;

*Un garde-fou*, a rail ;

*Des avant-toits*, eaves.

*Des casse-noisettes*, nut-  
crackers.

*Des garde-foux*, rails, &c.

*Monseigneur*, my lord ;

*Monsieur*, Mr. or master ;

*Madame*, Mrs. or madam ;

*Mademoiselle*, miss ;

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Monseigneur, my lord;} \\ \text{Monsieur, Mr. or master;} \\ \text{Madame, Mrs. or madam;} \\ \text{Mademoiselle, miss;} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{c} \text{make in the} \\ \text{plural} \end{array} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Messeigneurs, my lords.} \\ \text{Messieurs, gentlemen.} \\ \text{Mesdames, ladies.} \\ \text{Mesdemoiselles, misses.} \end{array} \right.$$

*Observation.*—The French language admits of no cases.

## CHAP. II.—OF THE ARTICLE.

There is in the French language one article only, which answers to the English article *the*. It is used before nouns common, as if to announce them, and prove that they are used in a determinate sense. This article in the singular is, *le* for the masculine, as *le père*, the father ; *la* for the feminine, as *la mère*, the mother ; and for the plural, *les* for both genders, as *les pères*, the fathers ; *les mères*, the mothers. It is subject to *elision* and *contraction*.

The *elision* is the suppression of the *e* in *le*, and of the *a* in *la*, before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute ; as, *l'ami*, the friend, instead of *le ami* ; *l'actrice*, the actress, for *la actrice* ; *l'histoire*, for *la histoire*.

The *contraction* is the reduction of two syllables into one. It takes place with respect to the article *le* and *les* whenever it is preceded by one of these prepositions, *de*, of or from, or *à*, to. Therefore instead of *de le*, of or from the ; *à le*, to the (masculine singular), we say, *du* and *au* ; and instead of *de les*, of or from the, and *à les*, to the (for both genders in the plural), we say, *des* and *aux* ; as, *du frère*, of or from the brother, and not *de le frère* ; *au frère*, to the brother, and not *à le frère* ; *des frères*, of or from the brothers, and not *de les frères* ; *aux frères*, to the brothers, and not *à les frères*.

The prepositions *de* and *à*, when preceding the feminine article *la*, admit of no alteration ; for we say, *de la*,

of or from the; *à la*, to the, or *de l'*, *à l'*, before a vowel or *h* mute; nor do they admit of any before *le*, when it is followed by a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. Therefore we say, *de l'*, of or from the; *à l'*, to the; *de l'ami*, of or from the friend; *à l'ami*, to the friend.

A TABLE OF THE ARTICLE IN ITS VARIATIONS AND COMBINATIONS  
WITH THE PREPOSITIONS *de* AND *a*.

*Article masculine, before a consonant.*

Singular.

LE,	The.
Le père,	The father.
Du,	Of or from the.
Du père,	Of or from the father.
Au,	To the.
Au père,	To the father.

*Article feminine, before a consonant.*

Singular.

La,	The.
La femme,	The woman.
De la,	Of or from the.
De la femme,	Of or from the woman.
A la,	To the.
A la femme,	To the woman.

*Article masculine and feminine before a vowel or h mute.*

Singular.

L',	The.
L'enfant,	The child.
De l',	Of or from the.
De l'enfant,	Of or from the child.
A l',	To the.
A l'enfant,	To the child.
L'homme,	The man.
De l'homme,	Of or from the man.
A l'homme,	To the man.

*Article masculine and feminine before a vowel or a consonant,  
an h mute, or an h aspirated.*

## Plural.

<i>Les,</i>	The.
<i>Les pères,</i>	The fathers.
<i>Des,</i>	Of or from the.
<i>Des pères,</i>	Of or from the fathers.
<i>Aux,</i>	To the.
<i>Aux pères,</i>	To the fathers.
<i>Les amis,</i>	The friends.
<i>Des amis,</i>	Of or from the friends.
<i>Aux amis,</i>	To the friends.

*H aspirated.*

<i>Les héros,</i>	The heroes.
<i>Des héros,</i>	Of or from the heroes.
<i>Aux héros,</i>	To the heroes.

*H mute.*

<i>Les histoires,</i>	The histories.
<i>Des histoires.</i>	Of or from the histories.
<i>Aux histoires,</i>	To the histories.

There being no neuter gender in French, all nouns are either masculine or feminine. All nouns representing men, or animals of the male kind, are masculine: those representing women, or animals of the female kind, are feminine.

**RULE 1, ON THE ARTICLE.**—The article always agrees in gender and number with the noun substantive to which it belongs.

## EXERCISE.

The father.—The mother.—The sister.—The brother.  
*père                      mère                      sœur                      frère*  
 —From the master.—To the mistress.—Of the boy.—  
*maître                      maîtresse                      garçon*  
 The house. — To the room. — From the garden. —  
*maison, f.                      chambre, f.                      jardin, m.*  
 To the aunt.—Of the child. — From the children.\*—The  
*tante                      enfant, m.*  
 historians.—The prudence.—Of the amiability.—From the  
*historien                      prudence, f.                      amabilité, f.*

\* See the formation of the plural of nouns ending in *nt*, at the end of page 7.

study.—To the attention.—The king.—To the queen.—  
*étude, f. attention, f. roi reine*  
 From the princes.—The glory of the heroes. — The  
*prince gloire, f. héros, m.*  
 humanity of the princesses.—The beauty of the  
*-humanité, f.\* princesse beauté, f.*  
 spring. — The heat of the summers.—From the  
*printemps, m. chaleur, f. été, m.*  
 cold of the winters.—To the army of the  
*froid, m. -hivers, m. armée, f.*  
 Spaniards.  
*Espagnol.*

**RULE 2.**—In the English language, whenever a noun substantive is taken in the full extent of its signification, the article is not used; in French it must be expressed. Therefore when you say, *l'homme est mortel*, man is mortal, as you mean *all men*, without any exception, you must translate the sentence as if it were thus expressed—*the man is mortal*. And if you say, *virtue is estimable*, as you mean *all kind of virtues, virtue in general*, you must place the article before *virtue*, and translate it thus: *la vertu est estimable*.

**Observation.**—I shall take advantage of this opportunity to give to teachers the following advice. Let them make their pupils read every English sentence they are to translate into French with the literal construction that belongs to the French translation, and place the article wherever it is to be used in French. For example: a pupil who had to translate the two following sentences—*Do you prefer England to France? Do not neglect study,*—should first read them thus: *Prefer you the England to the France? Not neglect not the study;*—he would thus soon get into that habit, and familiarise himself with the French construction.

#### EXERCISE.

I hate idleness.—Virtue is estimable. —  
*Je, pro. hais, v. paresse, f. Vertu, f. est, v. estimable, adj.*  
 Gold is preferable to silver. — Do you?  
*Or, m. préférable, adj. argent, m. & vous, pro.*

\* In the first exercises, the *h* mute will be marked by a dash placed before it.



prefer<sup>1</sup> England to France?—Corn grows  
*préférez, v. Angleterre, f. France, f. Bled, m. croît, v.*  
 for men, and grass for cattle.—Love  
*pour, p. homme, m. et, c. herbe, f. bétail, m. Aimez, v.*  
 wisdom.—Do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> neglect<sup>2</sup> study.—Avoid  
*sagesse, f. ne pas, adv. négligez, v. étude, f. Evitez, v.*  
 leisure.—She comes from church.—We  
*loisir, m. Elle, pro. vient, v. église, f. Nous, pro.*  
 speak of America, and not of Poland.—  
*parlons, v. Amérique, f. non pas, adv. Pologne, f.*  
 Grant us peace.—Honour is due to  
*Accordez, v. nous, pro. paix, f.—Honneur, m. dû, p.p.*  
 kings.—They come from Africa.—Pride  
*roi, m. Ils, pro. viennent, v. Afrique, f. Orgueil, m.*  
 disgraces man.—Charity patiently<sup>2</sup> bears<sup>1</sup>  
*dégrade, v. Charité, f. patiemment, adv. souffre, v.*  
 injuries.<sup>3</sup>  
*injures, f.*

RULE 3.—When a noun substantive, instead of being taken in the full extent of its signification, is limited to a particular part of it, the article is expressed in English, and must be so too in French. Example: *L'homme que vous m'avez envoyé*, the man whom you have sent me. In this sentence we do not speak of *men* in general, but merely of that particular man whom you have sent me.

## EXERCISE.

Where is the master of the house?—The prince  
*Où, adv. maître, m. maison, f. prince, m.*  
 spoke to the king.—To the third page of the  
*parla, v. troisième, adj. page, f.*  
 book.—The<sup>1</sup> lazy<sup>2</sup> do<sup>\*</sup> not<sup>3</sup> love<sup>4</sup> work<sup>6</sup>.—  
*livre, m. paresseux, adj. aiment, v. ouvrage, m.*  
 Justice is the mistress and queen of virtue.—  
*Justice, f. maîtresse, f. reine, f.*  
 Send the child to school.—Walk  
*Envoyez, v. enfant, m. école, f. Promenez-vous, v.*  
 in the garden.—Tranquillity of soul is the  
*dans, p. jardin, m. Tranquillité, f. âme, f.*

\* *Do*, being in this sentence a mere sign of the present tense, is not to be translated into French; nor is it ever to be translated when it acts only in that capacity. The same rule applies to *did*.

height of felicity.—Give the tooth-picks to the  
*comble*, m. *félicité*, f. *Donnez*, v. *cure-dent*, m.  
 gentlemen.\*—Education is to the mind what  
*Messieurs*, m. *Education*, f. *esprit*, m. *ce que*, pro.  
 cleanliness is to the body. — The enemies were  
*propreté*, f. *corps*, m. *ennemi*, m. *étoient*, v.  
 on the mountain.—You admire the beauty  
*sur*, p. *montagne*, f. *Vous*, pro. *admirez*, v. *beauté*, f.  
 of the ladies. — To the thickness of the walls. — We  
*dame*, f. *épaisseur*, f. *muraille*, f.  
 go to the park. — It is the will of the em-  
*allons*, v. *parc*, m. *C'est*, v. *volonté*, f. *em-*  
 peror.—The fate of nations is governed by  
*pereur* *sort*, m. *nation*, f. *gouverné*, p.p. *par*, p.  
 Providence. — You play with the boys. —  
*Providence*, f. *jouez*, v. *avec*, p. *garçon*  
 Revenge is the pleasure of a weak<sup>r</sup> mind<sup>r</sup>. —  
*Vengeance*, f. *plaisir*, m. *de un foible*, adj. *esprit*, m.  
 Italy is the garden of Europe, f.—The most  
*Italie*, f. *Europe*, f. *plus*, adv.  
 noble of virtues is charity. — Carry the gram-  
*noble*, adj. *Portez*, v. *gram-*  
 mar to the boys, and the dictionary to the girls.  
*maire*, f. *dictionnaire*, m. *fille*  
 —He comes from the Indies.—Give me the  
*Il*, pro. *vient*, v. *Inde*, f. *moi*, pro.  
 loaf.  
*pain*, m.

RULE 4.—When there are several nouns substantive coming together in a sentence, the article must be placed in French before every one of them, though it is generally placed in English only before the first; and the article must agree in gender and number with the substantive which it precedes.

Adjectives used as substantives follow the same rule, and are always of the masculine gender. Ex.

<i>Le sel, la moutarde et l'huile</i>	The salt, mustard and oil
<i>sont sur la table,</i>	are on the table.
<i>Le blanc, le rouge et le noir</i>	White, red and black are
<i>sont trois différentes couleurs,</i>	three different colours.

\* Gentleman is never to be rendered into French by *gentil-homme*. *Gentil-homme* means nobleman.

## EXERCISE.

Prefer virtue to riches, friendship to  
*Préférez, v. richesses, f. pl. amitié, f.*  
 money, and utility to pleasure.—The father, mother  
*argent, m. utilité, f. père mère*  
 and children are dead.—The men, women and chil-  
*sont morts, p.p. femme, f.*  
 dren of the village were all at the burial. —  
*village, m. tous, adj. à, p. enterrement, m.*  
 Children generally<sup>2</sup> like<sup>1</sup> apples and  
*ordinairement, adv. aiment, v. pomme, f.*  
 pears.—I like yellow and grey. — Peace and  
*poire, f. aime, v. jaune, m. gris, m.*  
 plenty make men happy.—Wheat and  
*abondance, f. rendent, v. heureux, adj. Froment, m.*  
 barley are dear. — I hate milk, butter, and  
*orge, f. cher, adj. lait, m. beurre, m.*  
 cheese. — Bring the knives and forks.—  
*romage, m. Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f.*  
 Patience and perseverance are necessary.—The  
*Patience, f. persévérance, f. nécessaire*  
 desire of glory, riches, power and pleasure is  
*désir, m. gloire, f. pouvoir, m. plaisir, m.*  
 a disease of the mind. — Prefer always virtue,  
*maladie, f. âme, f. toujours, adv.*  
 prudence and good sense to beauty.—Put the  
*prudence, f. bon, adj. sens, m. Mettez, v.*  
 wine, beer and cider on the table.—(It is said)  
*vin, m. bière, f. cidre, m. sur, p. table, f. On dit*  
 that America, France and Spain have made peace  
*que ont, v. fait, p. p.*  
 with England.

**RULE 5.**—The article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French ;

1st. Before a noun expressing a degree of relationship, when that noun is preceded by the name of the person to whom it belongs, or by a pronoun taking the place of the name. Ex.

*Alexandre fils de Philippe,*  
*Elle est sœur de Mademoi-*  
*selle B.*

*Alexander the son of Philip.*  
*She is the sister of Miss B.*

2dly. Before a noun expressing a *dignity*, an *office*, or a *business*, when it is preceded by the name of the person to which it belongs, or by a pronoun taking its place. Ex.

<i>Monsieur D. gouverneur des Indes,</i>	Mr. D. <i>the</i> governor of India.
<i>Il est curé de ***,</i>	He is <i>the</i> curate of ***.

3dly. Before a substantive expressing a *qualification* belonging to a city, a town, &c. when that qualification is preceded by the name of that city or town, or by a pronoun taking its place, provided the name or pronoun be not separated from the qualification by a verb; for, if it is separated by a verb, the article must be expressed. Ex.

<i>Mon ami demeure à Londres,</i>	My friend lives in London,
<i>ville capitale d'Angleterre,</i>	<i>the</i> capital city of England.
<i>Paris est LA ville capitale de France,</i>	Paris is <i>the</i> capital city of France.

*Observation.*—From the two first parts of this rule are to be excepted the sentences in which the verb *être* has for its nominative the pronoun demonstrative *ce*; for, as *ce* points out neither the gender nor number of the noun of which it takes the place, the article becomes necessary. Ex.

<i>C'est LE Recteur de ***,</i>	He is <i>the</i> Rector of ***.
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

## EXERCISE.

Who is this young man?—He is the eldest<sup>2</sup> son<sup>1</sup> of  
*Qui ce jeune C'est aîné*  
 my brother.—The Jupiter of the heathens was the  
*mon payen, m. étoit, v.*  
 son of Saturn, and the father of the gods. — Robert,  
 *fils Saturne, m. dieu, m.*  
 duke of Normandy, the brother of Henry, king of  
*duc Normandie, f. Henri*  
 England, was the son of William the Conqueror.—  
*Guillaume Conquérant, m.*  
 My sister lives at York, the capital city of the  
*Ma, pro. demeure, v. à, p.*  
 county of the same name.—Mr. C. the rector of  
*comté, m. même, adj. nom, m. curé*  
 the parish of St. James, and his brother, the  
*paroisse, f. Jacques son, pro.*

dean of the cathedral, were the sons of Mr. L. the  
*doyen cathédrale, f.*  
 first lord of the Admiralty.  
*premier, adj. lord amirauté, f.*

RULE 6.—The article is to be placed before the proper names of *countries, kingdoms, provinces, rivers, winds and mountains.* Ex.

*La Russie est un pays fort étendu,* Russia is a very extensive country.

## EXERCISE.

Have you passed through Spain, Portugal, or  
*Avez passé par Espagne, f. Portugal, m. ou*  
 Holland?—(It is said) that America, France and Spain  
*Hollande, f. On dit que*  
 have made peace with England.—We intend to pass  
*ont fait avec comptons & passer*  
 through Italy, Germany and Prussia.—The Alps  
*par Italie, f. Allemagne, f. Prusse, f. Alpes*  
 and the Pyrenees are very high mountains.  
*Pyrénées de très hautes montagne, f.*

*Exceptions.*—We must except from the above rule,  
 1st. The names of countries that have the names of  
 their capitals. Ex.

*Naples et Corfou sont de charmans pays,* Naples and Corfu are charming countries.

2dly. The names of countries which are under the government of the preposition *en*. Ex.

*Mon frère est EN France,* My brother is in France.

3dly. Those that are united by the preposition *de* to a preceding substantive, except those countries be personified; for in this case they take the article.

*Le roi de France,* The king of France,  
*Les routes d'Espagne sont mauvaises,* The roads of Spain are bad.  
*La générosité DE L'Angleterre,* The generosity of England; that is to say, of the English.

4thly, When we speak of those countries, as returning, or being returned from them. Ex.

*Nous arrivons de Portugal,*      We arrive from Portugal.

*Observation.*—The names of the four principal parts of the world, *Europe, Asia, Africa and America*, take the article, except only when preceded by the preposition *en*. Ex.

*Un courier vient d'arriver*      A messenger is just come  
*de l'Amérique,*      from America.  
*Il est en Afrique,*      He is in Africa.

## EXERCISE.

*On the Exceptions.*

We have already spoken of Naples and Corfu.\*—  
*avons déjà, adv. parlé*  
 Where is your father?—He is in Russia; and from  
*votre en de*  
 thence he (will go) to Poland.—The present king of  
*là, adv. ira en Pologne, f. present*  
 France is a very<sup>2</sup> religious<sup>3</sup> man<sup>1</sup>.——The<sup>1</sup> public<sup>3</sup>  
*très religieux public*  
 buildings<sup>2</sup> in France are generally more beautiful than  
*édifice, m. de en général beau que*  
 those in England.——The glory of France was  
*ceux de gloire, f. étoit*  
 (not long ago) without equal, and the humilia-  
*il n'y a pas long-temps sans égal humilia-*  
 tion of Spain is now degrading.—(A great deal)  
*tion, f. maintenant dégradante Beaucoup*  
 of wool comes now from Germany to England;  
*laine, f. vient maintenant en*  
 and it is better than that which comes from  
*elle meilleure, adj. que celle qui vient*  
 Spain. — Two missionaries arrived yesterday from  
*missionnaire arrivèrent hier*  
 Africa, and three are (to go) to Asia.——We  
*trois doivent aller en*  
 (werè speaking) of America.  
*parlions*

\* The preposition *de*, or, must be repeated before *Corfou*.

**RULE 7.—1st.** In narrations, whenever we bring in several nouns together, and we wish to give rapidity and warmth to the sentence, no article is used either in French or in English. In such case no conjunction is placed before the last substantive, and in general those substantives are immediately followed by some of these expressions; *every body, every thing, all, &c.*

**2dly.** After the conjunction *ni*, the substantive takes no article, if none is used in English; but if it is expressed in English, it must likewise be expressed in French. **Ex.**

*Conscience, honneur, intérêt,  
tout fut sacrifié,*

Conscience, honour, interest, every thing was sacrificed.

*Il n'a ni justice ni humanité,*

He has neither justice nor humanity.

*Il n'épargnera ni L'argent  
que vous lui avez prêté,  
ni le sien propre,*

He will spare neither the money you lent him, nor his own.

## EXERCISE.

The town was taken by storm; men,  
ville, f. fut, v. prise, p. p. de assaut, m.  
women, children, (old people) (every body) was  
vieillard, m. tous, adj. furent  
put to death.—Palaces, temples, public<sup>2</sup> buildings<sup>1</sup>,  
mis, p. p. à mort, f. Palais édifice, m.  
private<sup>2</sup> houses<sup>1</sup>, (every thing) was destroyed,  
particulière, adj. maison tout fut détruit, p. p.  
and the enemies did not leave stone upon  
laissèrent, v. pierre, f. sur, p.  
stone.—His father will<sup>2</sup> spare<sup>2</sup> neither<sup>3</sup> pains nor  
Son, pro. épargnera, v. ne ni peine ni  
money.—(He is) a (fatherless child); he has nei-  
C'est, v. un orphelin, adj.  
ther parents nor friends.  
parent, m. ami, m.

**RULE 8.**—When two or more substantives immediately follow each other in English, some of them having the sign of the English possessive case; that is to say, the apostrophe after the last letter, or an *s* separated from the last letter by an apostrophe, the substantive coming after the last that is marked with the sign of the possessive case must be translated first, then the preceding one, and so on

backwards with respect to all those that are in the possessive case, placing before them, if they take the article, either *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according to the gender and number of the noun, or the preposition *de* only, if they do not take the article. Ex.

*Le fils* DU *roi*,

The king's son; that is to say, the son *of the* king.

*L'épouse* DU *fils* DU *prince*,

The prince's son's wife; that is to say, the wife *of the* son *of the* prince.

*La fille* DE *Monsieur White*,

Mr. White's daughter; that is to say, the daughter *of* Mr. White.

## EXERCISE.

I have seen the king's apartments and the queen's  
*ai vu appartement, m.*  
 picture.—The chancellor's son's wife is the prime  
*portrait, m. chancelier femme pre-*  
 minister's eldest<sup>2</sup> sister<sup>1</sup>.—The man's strength is  
*mier aînée, adj. force, f.*  
 very great. — Lend me the maid's cloak. —  
*grande, f. Prêtez-moi, pro. servante mantelet, m.*  
 My cousin's brother is my uncle's best friend.—  
*Mon cousin oncle meilleur, adj. ami, m.*  
 The title of Dauphin belongs to the king of  
*titre, m. appartient, v.*  
 France's eldest<sup>2</sup> son<sup>1</sup>. — Modesty is a woman's  
*aîné Modestie, f. une femme, f.*  
 greatest ornament.  
*plus grand, adj. ornement*

RULE 9.—Whenever the preposition *to* is used in English instead of the sign of the possessive case, the preposition *de*, OF, must be substituted in its place. The same substitution becomes necessary after the words *heir*, *heiress*, *witness*, *friend* and *enemy*. Ex.

*Monseigneur le Duc* de *York*,  
*frère du Roi*,

My lord Duke of York, brother *to* the king; that is to say, the king's brother, or the brother *of* the king.



## EXERCISE.

Mr. Richard, brother to the Prince's steward, has  
*intendant a*  
 married Miss Prescott, niece to the constable of the Tower.  
*épousé nièce connétable Tour, f.*  
 —I have spoken to the Marchioness of \*\*\*\*, sister to the  
*Marquise*  
 queen's first lady of honour.—Mr. Henry, perfumer to the  
*dame Henri*  
 princess, has made a considerable<sup>2</sup> fortune<sup>1</sup>.—The heir  
*fait considérable fortune, f. -héritier*  
 to the crown of Portugal is the prince of Brazil.—  
*couronne, f. Brasil, m.*  
 My father was witness to that quarrel.—I am a  
*a été témoin cette, pro. querelle, f. suis*  
 friend to diligent<sup>2</sup> scholars<sup>1</sup>, and an enemy to  
*diligent écoliers, m. ennemi, m.*  
 idleness.  
*paresse, f.*

RULE 10.—All the substantives that are preceded by the adverb *bien*, signifying *much, a great deal, many*, take the preposition *de* and the article; that is to say, *of the*. Therefore *bien* must be followed by *du, de la, de l', or des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive. Ex.

*Bien DU mérite,*

Much merit.

*Bien DES amis,*

Many friends.

*Bien DE L'argent,*

A great deal of money.

That is to say, *much OF THE merit; many OF THE friends; a great deal OF THE money.*

## EXERCISE.

The children make much noise. — This man has  
*font bruit, m. Cet*  
 (a great deal) of money, but he has also many ene-  
*aussi, adv.*  
 mies.—They<sup>1</sup> give<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup> much<sup>4</sup> trouble<sup>5</sup> now,  
*donnent peine, f. à présent, adv.*  
 but they (will<sup>2</sup> give<sup>2</sup>) you<sup>1</sup> hereafter much  
*mais, c. donneront (dans la suite), adv.*

pleasure. — (There were) many ladies at your father's  
*Il y avoit* *chez*  
 (last night). — Mr. R. has read many books, and  
*hier au soir, adv.* *lu, p. p.* *livre, m.*  
 he has acquired much knowledge. — To  
*acquis, p. p.* *connoissances, f. pl.* *Pour, p.*  
 teach youth, (we must have) a great deal of  
*enseigner jeunesse, f.* *il faut, v.* *avoir, v.*  
 patience.

RULE 11.—The article precedes all nouns substantive when they are taken in a partitive sense; that is to say, whenever the word *some* or *any* is either expressed or understood before them in English, if those nouns are not preceded by an adjective. *Some* and *any* being equivalent to *of the*, they must be rendered in French by *du, de la, de l',* or *des*, according to the gender and number of the nouns that follow, and they are to be repeated before every noun. Ex.

Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent,

Apportez du vinaigre, de la moutarde, de l'huile et des fourchettes,

Avez-vous de l'argent à nous prêter?

Bread and water are sufficient for him.

Bring some vinegar, mustard, oil and forks.

Have you any money to lend us?

#### EXERCISE.

Bread, meat and water are things necessary to man.  
*sont chose, f. nécessaire*

—I drink wine and water. — She eats cheese. —  
*bois, v.* *mange fromage, m.*

Bring me some mustard. — Have you bought some  
*acheté, p. p.*

paper, pens and ink? — Send him some bread,  
*papier, m. plumes, f. encre, f.*

meat and potatoes.\* — Do you sell fruit? —  
*pomme de terre, f. vendez fruits, m.*

Buy some tea and sugar. — Will you eat some  
*Achetez thé, m. sucre, m. Voulez manger*

\* *Pomme de terre* meaning literally *apple of the earth*, *pomme* is the only word that takes *s* in the plural.

beef with turnips and carrots?—Do you<sup>2</sup> drink<sup>1</sup>  
*bœuf*, m. *navet*, m. *carotte*, f. *ou* *buvez*, v.  
 beer? — (Is there) any wine in the cellar?—(Was there)  
*bière*, f. *Y a-t-il* *cave*, f. *Y avoit-il*  
 any oil in the bottle?—I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>3</sup> given<sup>4</sup> him<sup>2</sup> bread,  
*bouteille*, f. *donné*, p. p. *lui*, pro.  
 money and clothes.—She has modesty and prudence.—  
*habit*, m. *modestie*, f. *prudence*, f.  
 He has bought some dishes and plates.—Will you  
*plat*, m. *assiette*, f.  
 have some milk or cream?—I eat fish, eggs,  
*ou* *crème*, f. *poisson*, m. *œuf*, m.  
 greens, artichokes and asparagus.—Bread, meat, fish and  
*légume*, *artichau*, m. *asperge*, f.  
 vegetables often<sup>2</sup> make<sup>1</sup> a good dinner.  
*légume* *souvent font* *dîner*, m.

**RULE 12.**—When the nouns taken in a partitive sense are preceded by an adjective, the words *some* and *any*, whether expressed or understood, must be translated into French by the preposition *de* before a *consonant* or *h* aspirated, and by *d'* before a *vowel* or *h* mute, instead of the article *du*, *de la* and *des*. *De*, being a preposition, does not change, whether the noun be in the singular or plural; of the masculine or feminine gender. Ex.

<i>De mauvais vin,</i>	Bad wine.
<i>De bonne eau,</i>	Good water.
<i>D'excellent pain,</i>	Excellent bread.
<i>De bons livres,</i>	Good books.
<i>D'habiles gens,</i>	Learned people.

That is to say, *some* bad wine; *some* good water; *some* excellent bread; *some* good books; *some* learned people.

## EXERCISE.

You always read good books.—Bad<sup>1</sup> wine<sup>2</sup> is<sup>3</sup>  
*toujours*, adv. *lisez*  
 3not<sup>5</sup> worth<sup>4</sup> good water.—He speaks to learned men. —  
*vaut*, v. *parle* *gens*, f.\*  
 I have heard good news.—You have fine  
*appris*, p. p. *bonne nouvelle*, f. *avez beau*, adj.

\* When the word *gens* is preceded by the adjective, it is of the feminine gender; and when the adjective follows it, it is of the masculine.

fruit.—She has worthy friends.—Bring me good  
*fruit*, m.\* *digne*, adj.  
 pens. — Onions, celery, leeks, chervil and  
*Oignons*, m. *céleri*, m. *poireau*, m. *cerfeuil*, m.  
 plenty of meat make what the French  
*beaucoup* *font* (*ce que*, pro.) *François*, m. pl.  
 call good broth. — I prefer good water to bad  
*appellent*, v. *bouillon*, m.  
 cider.—I have discoursed with good people.—  
*cidre*, m. *conversé*, p. p. *bonnes gens*, f.  
 My father has in his garden good plums, fine peaches  
*son* *prune*, f. *belle pêche*, f.  
 and very large apricots. — Miss Sharp has fine  
*très gros abricot*, m. *Mademoiselle* *beaux*  
 eyes.  
*œil*, m. (plural *yeux*.)

RULE 13.—We have said that proper names of countries, kingdoms, republics, counties and provinces take in general the article. However when they are preceded by one of these verbs, *to go*, *to return*, *to send*, *to come*, or by a substantive conveying the same meaning, the preposition *to*, that follows the verb, is to be translated into *en*, which, as we have said in the exceptions to Rule 6, is not to be followed by the article. Ex.

<i>Mon frère est allé</i> EN <i>Italie</i> ,	My brother is gone <i>to</i> Italy.
<i>Il doit bientôt revenir</i> EN	He is soon to come back <i>to</i>
<i>France</i> ,	<i>France</i> .
<i>A mon retour</i> EN <i>Angleterre</i> ,	On my return <i>to</i> England.

On the contrary *to*, when immediately preceded by the words *road*, or *way*, ROUTE, CHEMIN, must be rendered by *de*. Ex.

<i>La route</i> DE <i>Londres</i> ,	The road <i>to</i> London.
<i>Le chemin</i> DE <i>Bristol</i> ,	The way <i>to</i> Bristol.

Exception.—The proper names of distant countries, and of some few places in Europe, do not follow the above rule, as they always take the article. Such are,

*L'Abyssinie*, Abyssinia—*La Barbade*, Barbadoes—*Le Brésil*, Brazil—*Le Caire*, Cairo—*Le Canada*, Canada—*La Chine*, China—*Le Chili*, Chili—*La Guadeloupe*, Guadeloupe—*La Havane*, Havannah—*La Jamaïque*, Jamaica

\* *Fruit* must be put in the plural in French.

—*Le Japon*, Japan—*La Martinique*, Martinico—*Le Mexique*, Mexico—*Le Pérou*, Peru—*La Virginie*, Virginia—and a few others. Ex.

<i>Venir DE L' Abyssinie</i> ,	To come from Abyssinia.	} That is to say, from the.
<i>Venir DU Brésil</i> ,	To come from Brazil.	
<i>Venir DU Caire</i> ,	To come from Cairo.	
<i>Aller A LA Chine</i> ,	To go to China.	} To the.
<i>Aller AU Canada</i> ,	To go to Canada.	
<i>Aller AU Japon</i> ,	To go to Japan.	

## EXERCISE.

My mother is gone to Spain: on her return to  
*allée Espagne à son*  
 England, she (will have) the pleasure of seeing<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>. —  
*aura de voir*

Have you ever been to Paris?—My sister says that the  
*Avez jamais été Paris Ma dit que*  
 road to Dover is very bad.—She goes to Richmond.  
*Douvres très mauvais va, v.*

—He comes from Paris.—When<sup>1</sup> will<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> go<sup>2</sup> to  
*vient Quand irez*  
 France?—I know not; for my father says that he  
*sais ne-pas car, c. dit que il*  
 (will<sup>2</sup> send<sup>2</sup>) me<sup>1</sup> soon to Canada or Jamaica.—I  
*enverra bientôt, adv.*

(am going) to Croydon.—She (shall come back) to  
*vais reviendra*

England (next year) to see her brother who is  
*l'année prochaine pour voir son qui est*  
 arrived from Japan and China.—Here is the road to  
*arrivé*

Clapham.—My mother intends to send my sister  
*Ma (se propose) de envoyer ma*  
 to Portugal or Spain, and thence to Rome, and my cousin  
*de là mon*  
 is to go to Mexico or Cairo.  
*doit aller Mexique, m. ou, c.*

RULE 14.—1st. The substantives preceded by a noun or an adverb expressing a *quantity*, such as *beaucoup*, much, or many; *tant*, so much, or so many; *peu*, little; *plus*, more; *trop*, too much, too many; *moins*, less; *infiniment*, infinitely, &c.; never take the article, but only the preposition *de*. Ex.

<i>Tant de pommes,</i>	So many apples.
<i>Trop d'argent,</i>	Too much money.
<i>Plus de rigueur que DE bonté</i>	More rigour than kindness
<i>et DE générosité,*</i>	and generosity.

*Observation.*—*Bien*, much, many, is the only adverb of quantity excepted from this rule. (See Rule 10, p. 21.)

2dly. The nouns which are preceded by any of these words, *quelque chose*, something; *rien*, nothing; *que*, what (meaning *how much*); *sorte*, kind; *espèce*, kind, sort, species; always take the preposition *de*, but never the article; *pas* and *point*, no or not, follow the same rule, when the noun that follows is taken in an indefinite sense; but if it is taken in a definite sense, the article *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, must be used. Ex.

<i>Je n'ai POINT DE repos,</i>	I have no rest.
<i>Ne faites POINT D'observations,</i>	Make no observations.
<i>Ne faites POINT DES observations inutiles,</i>	Do not make useless observations.
<i>Donnez - moi QUELQUE CHOSE DE bon,†</i>	Give me something good.
<i>Je ne vois en lui RIEN DE mauvais,</i>	I see in him nothing bad.

## EXERCISE.

I have bought six yards of cloth. — Bring me  
*acheté, p. p. six aune, f. drap, m.*  
 three pounds of veal and two pounds of mutton. —  
*trois livre, f. veau, m. deux mouton, m.*  
 He<sup>1</sup> does <sup>2</sup>not<sup>4</sup> read<sup>3</sup> irreligious<sup>6</sup> books<sup>5</sup>. — She has a  
*ne-pas lit un*  
 great number of children. — He has (too much)  
*grand, adj. nombre, m. trop, adj.*  
 vanity. — You have less merit, but more  
*vanité, f. - moins, adv. mais, c. plus, adv.*  
 wisdom. — What a noise you make! — Do  
*sagesse, f. Que bruit, m. faites, v.*

\* When the *que*, THAN or AS, which is governed by the adverbs *plus*, more; *moins*, less; or *autant*, as much, as many; is followed by a substantive or substantives under the influence of the adverb, the preposition *de* must be placed before every substantive coming after *que*.

† *Quelque chose* is of the masculine gender, though *chose* is of the feminine.

<sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> give<sup>3</sup> her<sup>2</sup> (too many) pears.——I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>3</sup>  
*ne pas*, adv. *lui trop*, adv.  
<sup>2</sup>no<sup>4</sup> daughters<sup>5</sup>.——So much pride does <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup>  
*ne-point*, adv. *Tant orgueil*, m. ∞  
 become<sup>3</sup> him<sup>2</sup>.——(There is) something noble in his  
*sied*, v. *lui*, pro. *Il y a*, v. *sa*, pro.  
 physiognomy.——He has more friends than enemies.——  
*physionomie*, f.  
 More virtue than riches and power is necessary to the

future<sup>2</sup> happiness<sup>1</sup> of men.——We have (so many) grapes\*.——  
*raisin*, m.  
 They have a little money. — I know the king of  
*un peu*, adv. *connois*, v.  
 Prussia.——Did you see the Duke of Bavaria  
*Prusse*, f. *Avez*, v. *vu*, p. p. *duc Bavière*, f.  
 with the Archbishop of York? — He commanded an  
*Archevêque* *commandoit*, v. *une*  
 army of forty thousand men.——She<sup>1</sup> says<sup>3</sup>  
*armée*, f. *quarante mille* *dit*  
<sup>2</sup>nothing<sup>4</sup> true.——What kind of dogs do you<sup>2</sup>  
*ne rien vrai*, adj. *Quelle* *chien* ∞  
 prefer<sup>1</sup>?  
*préférez*

RULE 15.—The proper names of *divinities, men, women, animals, cities, towns, villages, months, &c.* do not take the article, except we limit the extent of their signification to a particular application. Ex.

VENUS est la déesse de la	Venus is the goddess of
<i>beauté</i> ,	beauty.
LA VENUS de Médicis,	The <i>Venus di Medicis</i> .

## EXERCISE.

God is the creator, the protector, the benefactor  
*Dieu* *créateur* *protecteur* *bienfaiteur*  
 and best friend of men.——The God of the Christians  
*meilleur* *Chrétien*  
 is the only true God.——Peter, John and Maria are in  
*seul vrai* *Pierre Jean* *Marie sont à*  
 London.——Minerva is the goddess of wisdom and  
*Londres* *Minerve* *déesse*, f. *sagesse*, f.

\* *Grapes* must be put in French in the singular.

prudence.—It was Paris who decided, on Mount Ida, *prudence, f. Ce fut Paris qui décida sur le Mont, m.* the grand question between Venus, Minerva and Juno. —

*Junon*

The works of Cicero prove that (he was) an *œuvres, pl. Cicéron prouvent que c'étoit un* excellent orator.—Solis is the Tacitus of the Spaniards.—*excellent orateur Solis Tacite Espagnol*

The Venus di Medicis is one of the finest statues *de une plus belles statue, f.* which antiquity has<sup>2</sup> left<sup>3</sup> us<sup>1</sup>.—May and June *que antiquité, f. ait laissées nous Mai Juin* are two of the finest months in the year. *deux beaux mois, m. de année, f.*

*Observation.*—The English language has another article besides *the*, which is *a* or *an*; *UN*, for the masculine; *UNE*, for the feminine. Though we do not consider it in French as an article, I shall give a few rules relative to it, in order to resolve some difficulties which arise from the difference in the genius of both languages.

#### EXERCISE.

I have a hat and a sword.—She speaks of an *chapeau, m. épée, f. parle* officer.—He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> given<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to<sup>5</sup> a sailor.—(There are) *officier donné le matelot, m. Voilà* a bird and a cage.—An (ungrateful man) is a *oiseau, m. cage, f. ingrat, m.* monster in the eyes of a feeling<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup>.—Alexander *monstre, m. aux œil, m. sensible Alexandre* was a great warrior, and a very learned *étoit guerrier, m. très, adv. savant, adj.* philosopher.—A fine flower is an ornament in a *philosophe, m. belle, adj. fleur, f. ornement, m.* garden.

**RULE 16.**—1st. Whenever the English article *a* or *an* precedes nouns expressing a *measure*, a *weight*, or a *number*, it must be rendered into French by the article *le, la, l', les*; according to the gender and number of the noun before which it is placed. Ex.

*Deux schellings* LE cent,  
*Un écu* LE boisseau,

Two shillings a hundred.  
A crown a bushel.



2dly. When the article *a* or *an* precedes a noun expressing *time*, it must be translated into French either by the article *le, la, l', les*, or by the preposition *par*, *PER*. Ex.

*Cinq schellings LA semaine,* Five shillings *a week.*

*OU PAR semaine,*

*Une guinée PAR mois, ou* One guinea *a month.*  
*LE mois,*

3dly. If the article *a* or *an* precedes a noun expressing *a distance*, it is to be rendered in French by the preposition *par*, *PER*, and not by the article *le, la, l', les*. Ex.

*Dix schellings PAR lieue,* Ten shillings *a league.*

## EXERCISE.

Barley sells for three shillings *a bushel.* ———

*Orge, f. se vend* *schellings*

That ale (is worth) six pence *a pint.* ———

*Cette, pro. aile, f. vaut, v. sou, m. pinte, f.*

Beef costs eight pence *a pound.* — This lace

*Bœuf, m. coûte huit livre, f. Cette dentelle, f.*

costs a crown *an ell.* — He sells his best cloth

*coûta écu, m. aune, f. vend son meilleur drap, m.*

*a guinea a yard.* — Burgundy<sup>2</sup> wine<sup>1</sup> (is sold) nine

*verge, f. Bourgogne vin de se vend neuf*  
shillings *a bottle.* — My shoemaker sold<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> two

*Mon cordonnier a vendu, p. p.*

pair\* of shoes (at the rate) of half<sup>2</sup> a<sup>1</sup> guinea<sup>3</sup> *a*

*paire, f. soulier, m. à raison demi*

pair. — My master comes twice *a week.* —

*vient (deux fois), adv.*

My uncle goes to France thrice *a year.* — She gives

*va (trois fois) an, m. donne*

three shillings *a day* and ten pence *a mile.*

*jour, m. mille, m.*

*Observation.*—Foreigners finding the greatest difficulty with respect to the English article, *a*, *an*, not knowing when it is to be translated and when to be suppressed in French, I shall do my best to clear up the difficulty, intreating the learner to give the greatest attention to the different parts of the following rules.

**RULE 17.**—The English article *a* or *an* is not to be translated in French when it precedes a noun expressing *a*

\* *Paire* takes the plural termination in French.

*title, dignity, office, trade, business, or words mentioning the country to which the object belongs, if that noun, being preceded by the name of the object to which it belongs, or by a personal pronoun taking its place, acts as an adjective qualifying the preceding noun or pronoun. Ex.*

*Monsieur D., membre de la  
chambre des communes,  
est à Paris,*

*Etes-vous Anglois?*

*Non, Monsieur; je suis  
François,*

*Il est tailleur,*

*Mr. D., a member of the  
house of commons, is in  
Paris.*

*Are you an Englishman?*

*No, Sir; I am a French-  
man.*

*He is a tailor.*

## EXERCISE.

(I saw) the Duke of C\*\*\*, a prince of the blood,  
*J'ai vu duc sang, m.*  
who (was speaking) to Mr. F. a member of parliament.—  
*qui parloit parlement, m.*  
His cousin is a surgeon, and his brother is a physician.  
*Son chirurgien médecin.*  
—My sister is a milliner, my brother is a  
*marchande de modes*  
tailor, and I am a carpenter.—I have read Castor and  
*tailleur charpentier lu*  
Pollux, a French<sup>2</sup> opera<sup>1</sup>.—Bristol, a sea<sup>2</sup> - port<sup>1</sup>,  
*opéra, m. de mer, f. port, m.*  
passes now for the second city of the kingdom of  
*passe à present pour seconde*  
England.—The king made<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> a bishop.—Is she  
*fit le, pro. évêque. Est*  
a duchess or a marchioness?—No: she is a countess.  
*duchesse marquise Non comtesse*

**RULE 18.**—If the noun expressing a *title, dignity, office, &c.* is itself qualified either by an adjective or some other word, then *a* or *an* must be translated; for in such case that noun keeps the nature of a substantive, or it could not be qualified. **Ex.**

*Je suis UN prince malheu-  
reux,*

*Je suis UN tailleur, qui  
cherche de l'ouvrage,*

*I am an unfortunate  
prince.*

*I am a tailor, who is look-  
ing for work.*

## EXERCISE.

That gentleman is an Italian, who <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>succeeded<sup>4</sup>  
*Ce monsieur Italien ne-jamais (a réussi)*  
 in this country.—Mr. Barry was a very clever painter.  
*dans ce pays, m. étoit habile peintre*  
 —Mrs. D.'s husband is a man of talent and a great  
*Madame mari*  
 orator. — Do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> consider<sup>2</sup> your professor] as  
*orateur & ne-pas regardez professeur, m. comme*  
 infallible; you know (that he) is a man.—I am a man of  
*infaillible savez qu'il*  
 high rank, and I expect (to be) treated as such.  
*haute distinction, f. veux être traité comme tel*

RULE 19.—Whenever any one of the above nouns, being accompanied by *a* or *an*, is preceded by the verb *être*, TO BE, and the verb *être* has for its subject the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, the article *a* or *an* must ALWAYS be translated, whether the noun itself be qualified or not by an adjective, or some other words. Ex.

*C'est UN tailleur,*  
*C'est UNE marquise,*

He is *a* tailor.  
 She is *a* marchioness.

## EXERCISE.

I (shall go) and\* see your sister: (she is) an amiable<sup>2</sup>  
*irai & voir votre c'est*  
 woman<sup>1</sup>.——Who is that man whom I saw with you  
*Qui cet que vis*  
 yesterday?—(He is) an artist: he is an excellent painter.  
*hier C'est artiste peintre*  
 —I am a painter myself: I (shall be) very glad to  
*moi-même serai fort aise de*  
 (become acquainted with him) and to see his paintings.  
*faire sa connoissance de voir ses peinture*  
 —Have you ever heard Mr. D. preach?—Who is he?  
*Avez jamais entendu prêcher Qui est-il*

\* The conjunction *and*, used instead of *to*, in order to; being preceded by one of these verbs, *to go*, *to come*, *to return*, and followed by another verb, is never translated into French. Ex. Come and speak to me; *Venez me parler*. He came yesterday to see me; *Il vint hier me voir*.

—He is a doctor in divinity.—He is an excellent orator.  
*divinité*

—He has a brother who is also a very clever man. — He  
*qui aussi habile*

is a poet.  
*poète*

*Exception.*—The article *a* or *an* must be omitted before the above nouns when they form an incidental clause,\* or part of one in a sentence; for in such a case, those nouns always act the part of adjectives; that is to say, they are always introduced to qualify the preceding noun or pronoun, and for that reason they must be under the influence of the 17th Rule.

---

### CHAP. III.—ON THE ADJECTIVE.

The adjective is a word used to express the quality of a person or thing. Ex.: *bon roi*, good king; *bonne reine*, good queen; *bel enfant*, fine child; *méchant garçon*, wicked boy; *good, fine* and *wicked* are adjectives, because they express the qualities of *king, queen, child* and *boy*. Therefore whenever we can add the word *person* or *thing* to another word, we may be sure this is an adjective. For example: *rich, poor, good, bad* are adjectives, because we may say, *rich person, poor person, good person* or *good thing, bad person* or *bad thing*.

*Adjectives* must agree in gender and number with *substantives*.

#### *Formation of the Feminine of the French Adjectives.*

All *adjectives* ending with an *e* mute belong to both genders; therefore they admit of no change in the singular. We say,

\* We call an *incidental clause* or *proposition* some useful information, remark, or qualification, obliquely introduced into the body of a sentence, and which may be omitted without injuring the grammatical construction. Ex.

<i>Le duc de Clarence, PRINCE DU</i>	<i>The duke of Clarence, Prince of</i>
<i>SANG, est frère du Roi,</i>	<i>the blood, is brother to the King.</i>

In this sentence, the words *Prince of the blood* form an incidental clause; for it is evident that, if you suppress them, there will be still remaining a complete and perfectly grammatical sentence. It may be also easily perceived that these words *Prince of the blood* are introduced into the sentence in order that they may perform the part of an *adjective*.

<i>Un jeune homme,</i>	A young man.
<i>Une jeune femme,</i>	A young woman.

*Adjectives* ending with one of the following letters, *d, e, i, l, n, r, s, t* and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute. Ex,

Masc. <i>Grand,</i>	Fem. <i>grande,</i>	great, tall, large.
<i>Poli,</i>	<i>polie,</i>	polite.
<i>Aimé,</i>	<i>aimée,</i>	loved.
<i>Civil,</i>	<i>civile,</i>	civil.
<i>Demi,</i>	<i>demie,</i>	half.
<i>Nu,</i>	<i>nue,</i>	naked.

The last two adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive; but they are declinable when they follow it. Ex.

<i>Une demi-livre,</i>	A half pound.
<i>Une livre et demie,</i>	A pound and a half.
<i>Nu-tête,</i>	bare head, } <i>La tête nue.</i>
<i>Nu-pieds,</i>	bare foot, } <i>Les pieds nus.</i>

There are a few ending in *an, as, el, il, eil, ien, in, es, et, is, on, os, ot,* and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e* mute, for the feminine. Ex.

Masc. <i>Gras,</i>	Fem. <i>grasse,</i>	fat.
<i>Gentil,</i>	<i>gentille,</i>	genteel.
<i>Eternel,</i>	<i>éternelle,</i>	eternal.
<i>Pareil,</i>	<i>pareille,</i>	alike.
<i>Chrétien,</i>	<i>chrétienne,</i>	christian.
<i>Moyen,</i>	<i>moyenne,</i>	middle.
<i>Epais,</i>	<i>épaisse,</i>	thick.
<i>Bon,</i>	<i>bonne,</i>	good.
<i>Gros,</i>	<i>grosse,</i>	big.
<i>Sot,</i>	<i>sotte,</i>	foolish.

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, viz.

Masc. <i>Beau,</i> BEL,*	Fem. <i>belle,</i>	handsome, fine.
<i>Bénin,</i>	<i>bénigne,</i>	benign.
<i>Favori,</i>	<i>favorite,</i>	favourite.
<i>Fou,</i> FOL,*	<i>folle,</i>	foolish.
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>fraîche,</i>	fresh.

\* These adjectives are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.

Masc.	<i>Long,</i>	Fem.	<i>longue,</i>	long.
	<i>Malin,</i>		<i>maligne,</i>	malicious.
	<i>Mou, MOL,*</i>		<i>molle,</i>	soft.
	<i>Nouveau,</i>		<i>nouvelle,</i>	new.
	NOUVEL,* }			
	<i>Vieux,</i>		<i>vieille,</i>	old.
	VIEIL,* }			

Adjectives ending in *c* take *he* after the *c* for their feminine. Ex.

Masc.	<i>Blanc,</i>	Fem.	<i>blanche,</i>	white.
	<i>Franc,</i>		<i>franche,</i>	sincere.
	<i>Sec,</i>		<i>sèche,</i>	dry, &c.

The four following are excepted :

Masc.	<i>Caduc,</i>	Fem.	<i>caduque,</i>	in decay.
	<i>Grec,</i>		<i>Grecque,</i>	Greek.
	<i>Public,</i>		<i>publique,</i>	public.
	<i>Turc,</i>		<i>Turque,</i>	Turkish.

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine. Ex.

Masc.	<i>Bref,</i>	Fem.	<i>brève,</i>	short.
	<i>Naïf,</i>		<i>naïve,</i>	plain, ingenuous.
	<i>Neuf,</i>		<i>neuve,</i>	new.
	<i>Veuf,</i>		<i>veuve,</i>	widowed.
	<i>Vif,</i>		<i>vive,</i>	quick.
	<i>Actif,</i>		<i>active,</i>	active.

Adjectives ending in *x* change *x* into *se*. Ex.

Masc.	<i>Douloureux,</i>	Fem.	<i>douloureuse,</i>	painful, dolorous.
	<i>Heureux,</i>		<i>heureuse,</i>	happy.
	<i>Jaloux,</i>		<i>jalouse,</i>	jealous, &c.

The following are excepted :

Masc.	<i>Doux,</i>	Fem.	<i>douce,</i>	sweet.
	<i>Faux,</i>		<i>fausse,</i>	false.
	<i>Perplex,</i>		<i>perplexe,</i>	perplexed.
	<i>Préfix,</i>		<i>préfixe,</i>	prefixed.
	<i>Roux,</i>		<i>rousse,</i>	reddish.

\* These adjectives are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.

*Formation of the Plural of the French Adjectives.*

The French adjectives form their plural by adding an *s* to the singular. This rule is without any exception as to the feminine of adjectives. The masculine has two exceptions, which are the following :

*Exception 1.*—Adjectives ending in French in *s* or *x* do not change their terminations for the plural. Ex.

<i>Un homme gras,</i>	A fat man.
<i>Des hommes gras,</i>	Fat men.
<i>Un enfant heureux,</i>	A happy child.
<i>Des enfans heureux,</i>	Happy children.

*Exception 2.*—Adjectives ending in *au* form their plural by the addition of an *x* ; those ending in *al* change *al* into *aux*. Ex. : *beau*, fine, *beaux* ; *nouveau*, new, *nouveaux* ; *général*, general, *généraux*.

*Observation.*—Most of the adjectives ending in *al* have no plural for the masculine. As, *conjugal*, conjugal ; *fatal*, fatal ; *filial*, filial ; *final*, final ; *frugal*, sober ; *jovial*, jovial ; *pastoral*, pastoral ; *pectoral*, pectoral ; *nasal*, nasal ; *natal*, natal ; *naval*, naval ; *total*, total.

## RULES ON THE ADJECTIVES.

**RULE 1.**—The adjective must agree in gender and number with the substantive which it modifies.

## EXERCISE.

The tall<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup>, the little woman, and the pretty children, whom I met yesterday with their grandmother\* (were going) to London : they were all very hungry and thirsty.—The polite<sup>2</sup> inhabitants<sup>1</sup> of that fine  
*petit*, adj. *joli*  
*que* *rencontrai* *hier*, adv. *leur*  
*alloient* *avoient* GRAND'  
*faim*\* *habitant* *cette*

\* In the following instances, the adjective *grand* loses the *e* in the feminine, and, instead of it, takes the apostrophe.

*A grand' peine,*  
*Avoir* { *grand' faim,*  
           *grand' soif,*  
           *grand' peur,*  
*Faire grand' chère,*  
*La grand' mère,*  
*La grand' messe,*  
*La grand' chambre,*

With hard labour.  
 To be { very hungry.  
           very thirsty.  
           very much frightened.  
 To live well.  
 The grand-mother.  
 The high mass.  
 The high court.

city treat all strangers (in a) civil<sup>2</sup> and<sup>3</sup> frank<sup>4</sup>  
*traitent étranger d'une*  
 manner<sup>1</sup>. — Lean<sup>2</sup> sheep<sup>1</sup> grow fat in good  
*manière, f. Maigre brebis, f. deviennent dans*  
 pastures. — Constant<sup>2</sup> study<sup>1</sup> joined to a great applica-  
*pâturages étude, f. joint applica-*  
 tion makes men learned. — The new<sup>2</sup> coat<sup>1</sup> which  
*tion, f. rend savant neuf\* habit, m. que*  
 you gave<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>, is better than the old great-coat  
*avez donné meilleur que, c. redingote, f.*  
 which my father had bought at his tailor's. — We  
*avoit achetée chez son tailleur*  
 went yesterday to the high court, where we found  
*allâmes trouvâmes*  
 all the judges already met.  
*déjà, adv. assemblé*

RULE 2.—When an adjective modifies two or more substantives, it must always be put in the plural; and if they are of different genders, it must be put in the masculine. Ex.

*Le frère, la sœur, le neveu* The brother, sister, ne-  
*et la nièce sont morts,* phew and niece are dead.

## EXERCISE.†

The book, paper, pencil and penknife, which  
*papier, m. crayon, m. canif, m. que*  
 you lent<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> are excellent. — The pen, ruler,  
*avez prêté excellent règle, f.*  
 inkhorn and grammar which my brother has bought  
*écritoire, f. que mon achetées, p.*

\* New must be translated by *neuf* when it means *not used, not worn*; and by *nouveau* when signifying *of a new fashion, of a new invention*.

† Some grammarians except from this rule the adjectives which qualify nouns substantive expressive of things, whenever these are not subjects to a verb; but excellent grammarians are of a different opinion, and sound reason seems to be in their favour. They, however, recommend, for harmony sake, to place the substantive of the masculine gender the last. Yet those sentences are to be excepted in which the meaning of the first substantive is included in that of the last. In such cases, the adjective may very properly, and even elegantly, agree with the last; the conjunction *et*, and, must then be left out, as in the following sentence:

*Il gouverne avec un pouvoir, une* He governs with an absolute power  
*autorité absolue,* and authority.



are very good.——The king, queen, prince and  
*très, adv.*  
 princesses were gone.——The corn, wheat, rye,  
*princesse étoient sorti seigle, m.*  
 peas and beans, in a word, all the grains which  
*fève, f. en mot, m. grain, m. qui*  
 were on the ground, were frozen.——My father's  
*étoient sur terre, f. furent gélé Mon*  
 house and my uncle's (country-seat) are (very much)  
*château, m. bien, adv.*  
 alike.——He studies with <sup>an</sup> incredible<sup>6</sup> application<sup>2</sup>  
*semblable étudie incroyable, adj.*  
 and<sup>3</sup> courage<sup>5</sup>.——She left the trunk, the room  
*courage, m. laissa coffre, m. chambre, f.*  
 and the closet open.——I found the doors, the  
*cabinet, m. ouvert ai trouvé porte, f.*  
 windows and the shutters shut.——We saw the chil-  
*fenêtre, f. volets, m. fermé vîmes*  
 dren, father and mother well recovered.——When we  
*bien rétabli Quand*  
 arrived on the frontiers, we found the soldiers,  
*arrivâmes sur frontière, f. trouvâmes soldat*  
 the officers and the general in chief assembled, and  
*officier en chef, m. assemblé*  
 (drawn up) in (battle array).  
*rangé en bataille, f.*

*Of the Place to be given to the Adjectives.*

RULE 3.—The following adjectives must be placed before the substantives.

*Beau*, handsome, fine.  
*Bon*, good.  
*Brave*, brave.  
*Cher*, dear.  
*Chétif*, vile, poor, mean.  
*Galant*, well bred.  
*Grand*, great.  
*Gros*, big, large.  
*-Honnête*, honest, civil.  
*Jeune*, young.

*Saint*, holy, saint.  
*Tout*, all.  
*Joli*, pretty.  
*Méchant*, wicked.  
*Mauvais*, bad.  
*Meilleur*, better.  
*Moindre*, less.  
*Petit*, little, small.  
*Vieux*, old.  
*Vrai*, true.

## EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady, who (was speaking) to an  
*vu dame, qui parloit*  
 old gentleman. — He had a fine hat and a pretty  
*monsieur Il avoit chapeau*  
 sword. — Your little sister deserved a better fate. — I  
*épée, f. Votre méritoit destin, m.*  
 know a young man who has a good horse, but a bad  
*connois cheval, m.*  
 stable. — He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> lent<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to an honest man. —  
*écurie, f. Il a prêté le\**  
 The apostle Paul was a holy man. — My brother has  
*apôtre étoit*  
 bought a good watch. — Your father was a brave gene-  
*acheté montre, f. Votre étoit*  
 ral, and a well-bred man. — You have lost all your  
*avez perdu votre*  
 money. — Vile creature, I have heard your wicked  
*créature, f. entendu*  
 conversation.  
*conversation, f.*

RULE 4.—We place after the substantives

1. All participles used as adjectives ; as,

<i>Une femme aimante,</i>	A loving woman.
<i>Du bœuf rôti,</i>	Roast beef.

2. Adjectives ending in *esque, il, ic, ique, or ule* ; as,

<i>Style burlesque,</i>	Burlesque style.
<i>Amusement puéril,</i>	Childish amusement.
<i>Bruit public,</i>	Public report ; &c.

3. All adjectives expressing shape or form ; as,

<i>Une table ronde,</i>	A round table.
<i>Une chambre carrée,</i>	A square room.

4. All adjectives expressing colour or taste ; as,

<i>Un chapeau noir,</i>	A black hat.
<i>Un -habit rouge,</i>	A red coat.
<i>Une pomme douce,</i>	A sweet apple.
<i>Une liqueur amère,</i>	A bitter liquor.

\* The *e* in *le* must be contracted before the verb *a*, has ; says, there-  
 fore, *il l'a*, &c.

5. All adjectives expressing the matter of which a thing is composed; as,

<i>Des parties sulfureuses,</i>	Sulphurous parts.
<i>Un corps aérien,</i>	An aerial body.

6. All adjectives expressing the qualities of hearing or touching; as,

<i>Un instrument sonore,</i>	A sonorous instrument.
<i>Une voix -harmonieuse,</i>	An harmonious voice.
<i>Un bois dur,</i>	A hard wood.
<i>Un corps mou,</i>	A soft body.

7. All adjectives expressing the names of nations; as,

<i>L'empire Romain,</i>	The Roman empire.
<i>La poésie Angloise,</i>	The English poetry.

8. All adjectives, which, when used by themselves, convey the meaning of a substantive, as *rich, blind, &c.*

<i>Un -homme riche,</i>	A rich man.
<i>Une femme aveugle,</i>	A blind woman.

RULE 5.—When a substantive is modified by two or more adjectives, the adjectives must be placed after the substantive. Ex.

<i>Une femme vertueuse et bien-faisante,</i>	A virtuous and beneficent woman.
--	----------------------------------

#### EXERCISE.

We have a just, wise and bountiful king.—Mr.

*Nous avons juste sage bienfaisant* Monsieur Brown's daughter is with a sincere and generous lady.—  
*sincère généreux*

I have a scholar of a solid, bright and lively genius.—  
*écolier, m. solide brillant vif esprit, m.*

Miss Preston is a young, handsome and well-shaped  
*Mademoiselle bien-fait*  
lady.—She has married a sober, virtuous and amiable  
*dame Elle a épousé sobre vertueux aimable*  
man.

*Observations* upon the adjectives *épais*, thick; *gros*, big, large; *haut*, high, tall; *large*, wide, broad; *long*, long; and *profond*, deep.

The difference that exists between the English and French languages in the turn of sentences, when these

adjectives are accompanied by substantives expressing *measure*, requires a clear explanation of the difficulty. Therefore I shall say,

There are two ways of translating such sentences. The first, by using the adjective itself; the other (which is the most elegant) by changing the adjective into its corresponding substantive.

RULE 6.—If the adjective itself be used, it must be placed immediately after the noun substantive of which it expresses the dimension; the preposition *de*, or *of*, follows it; then come the number and substantive expressing the measure. The preposition *de* must be repeated after every adjective of dimension. Ex.

*Une table longue DE dix pieds*      A<sup>1</sup> table<sup>2</sup> ten<sup>4</sup> feet<sup>5</sup> long<sup>3</sup>  
*et large DE huit,*                      and<sup>6</sup> eight<sup>8</sup> broad<sup>7</sup>.

That is to say, a table long *of* ten feet and broad *of* eight.

*J'ai une boîte SUPERBE\**      I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>2</sup> a<sup>3</sup> beautiful<sup>5</sup> box<sup>4</sup>  
*longue DE deux pieds, trois*      two<sup>7</sup> feet<sup>8</sup> three<sup>9</sup> inches<sup>10</sup>  
*pouces, profonde D'un*      long<sup>6</sup>, one<sup>12</sup> foot<sup>13</sup> and<sup>14</sup>  
*pied et demie et large DE*      a half<sup>15</sup> deep<sup>11</sup>, and<sup>16</sup>  
*deux pieds,*                      ~~~~~  
    two<sup>18</sup> feet<sup>19</sup> broad<sup>17</sup>.

That is to say *literally*, I have a box beautiful long *of* two feet three inches, deep *of* one foot and half, and broad *of* two feet.

#### EXERCISE.

I saw a tree eighteen feet large. — I have  
*J' ai vu un arbre, m. dix-huit pied, m. gros*  
 a box four inches thick, ten feet long, and  
*une boîte, f. quatre pouce, m. épais dix pied, m. long*  
 six broad.—I know a man seven feet high. — (It is) a  
*large connois un sept haut C'est un*  
 ditch nine feet six inches deep and five feet broad.  
*fossé, m. neuf six profond cinq*  
 —(There is) a room fifty paces long and  
*Voilà une chambre, f. cinquante pas, m.*

\* From this sentence it may be easily perceived that, whenever the substantive of which the dimensions are given is followed either by an adjective or any other words that modify it, the adjective expressing its dimension must come after the word or words expressing those modifications.

twenty broad.—The walls of our garden are thirty  
*vingt muraille, f. notre sont trente*  
 feet three inches high and two feet broad.—I have a tree  
*trois*  
 sixty feet high and eighteen round.  
*soixante dix-huit gros.*

RULE 7.—If the adjective be changed into its corresponding substantive, the object, of which the dimensions are given, must be immediately followed by the preposition *de*, or, then by the number and substantive expressing the measure, and finally by another preposition *de* and the substantive that takes the place of the adjective of dimension. Whenever there is any new dimension given, the preposition *de* must precede the number, and be repeated before the substantive that takes the place of the adjective of dimension. Ex.

<i>Une table DE dix pieds DE</i>	A table ten feet long
<i>longueur et DE huit DE</i>	and eight broad.
<i>largeur,</i>	

That is to say ; a table OF ten feet OF length and OF eight OF breadth.

When there is more than one dimension given, the sentence may be elegantly turned thus :

<i>Une table DE dix pieds DE</i>	A table ten feet long and
<i>longueur, SUR huit DE</i>	eight broad.
<i>largeur,</i>	

That is to say literally, a table of ten feet of length upon eight of breadth.

<i>Une boîte DE quatre pouces</i>	A box four inches thick,
<i>d'épaisseur, SUR dix pieds</i>	ten feet long and six
<i>DE longueur et six DE</i>	broad.
<i>largeur,</i>	

That is to say, a box OF four inches OF thickness, UPON ten feet OF length and six OF breadth.

The last exercise is to be translated again according to Rule 7.

## DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION IN THE ADJECTIVES.

There are three *degrees of signification* in the adjectives; the *positive*, the *comparative* and the *superlative*.

*The Positive.*

The *positive* is the adjective used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution; as, *riche*, rich; *pauvre*, poor; *bon, bonne*, good. The adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

## EXERCISE.

A good, feeling, beneficent and virtuous man is a  
*sensible bienfaisant*  
 treasure to society.——A true and sincere friend is  
*trésor, m. pour société, f.*  
 a<sup>1</sup> very<sup>3</sup> rare<sup>4</sup> being<sup>2</sup>. —— Men used to vicissitudes  
*bien, adv. rare être, m. accoutumé mal-*  
 are not easily dejected.——The causes of  
*heur, m. sont aisément abattu, p. p. cause, f.*  
 good and evil are various and uncertain; often  
*bien, m. mal, m. sont varié incertain*  
 (entangled with each other) and subject to unforeseen<sup>2</sup>  
*entremêlé sujet (à des) imprévu*  
 accidents<sup>1</sup>.——Intemperance makes life short and miserable.  
*Intempérance, f. rend vie, f. court*  
 able.

*The Comparative.*

The *comparative* is the adjective expressing a comparison between two objects, and showing that the one is either *equal*, *superior*, or *inferior* to the other. There are therefore three different sorts of comparatives; the comparative of *equality*; as, *Je suis aussi riche que vous*; I am as rich as you.

The comparative of *superiority*; as, *mon frère est plus studieux que le vôtre*; my brother is more studious than yours.

The comparative of *inferiority*; as, *les richesses sont moins utiles*, or, *ne sont pas si utiles, à l'homme que la santé*; riches are less useful, or, are not so useful, to man as health.

**RULE 8.**—The comparative of *equality* is formed by placing *aussi*, **AS**, before the adjective, and *aussi* or *autant*, **AS MUCH**, before the participle passive; *aussi* must be repeated before every adjective. The conjunction *que*, **AS**, unites the objects that are compared. **Ex.**

*Ma sœur est AUSSI ambi-  
tieuse QUE vous,  
L'homme vertueux est  
AUSSI, ou AUTANT, es-  
timé QUE le libertin est  
méprisé,*

My sister is *as* ambitious  
*as* you.  
The virtuous man is *as*  
*much* esteemed *as* the  
libertine is despised.

## EXERCISE.

Alexander was *as* ambitious *as* Cæsar.—I am *as*  
*Alexandre étoit ambitieux que César Je suis*  
tall *as* you.—My father is *as* rich *as* yours.—  
*haut riche le vôtre*  
Miss D. is *as* amiable *as* her cousin.—If  
*Mademoiselle sa cousine, f. Si, c.*  
my father were *as* rich *as* my uncle, he (would make) *a*  
*mon étoit oncle feroit*  
better use of his riches.—Your brothers are *as*  
*meilleur usage, m. ses Vos sont*  
learned *as* we.—I am *as* rich *as* you, and *as* honest and  
*nous*  
civil *as* my companions.—My cousin is *as* merry, *as*  
*compagnons, m. cousin, m. gai*  
lively and amiable *as* his brothers.  
*enjoué ses*

**RULE 9.**—The comparative of *superiority* is formed by placing *plus*, **MORE**, before the adjective; and *que*, **THAN**, will unite the objects that will be compared. *Plus* must be repeated before every adjective.

*Sa cousine est PLUS savante  
et plus studieuse QUE vous,*

His cousin is *more* learned  
and *more* studious *than*  
you.

## EXERCISE.

Miss A. is handsomer\* and more learned than her  
 sisters.—Lucia is taller and more proud than her  
 little cousin.—His sister is more covetous than he.—  
 Nothing is pleasanter to the mind than the  
 light of truth.—Nothing is more lovely than virtue,  
 and nothing is more desirable than wisdom.—My  
 daughter is taller than your son by two inches.†—  
 Your brother is taller than you by the<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> head<sup>3</sup>.—  
 In winter the roads are always worse than  
 in summer.—His eldest<sup>2</sup> brother<sup>1</sup> (will be) more attentive,  
 industrious and rich than he

*et que, c.*  
*Lucie orgueilleux sa*  
*Sa avare lui, pro.*  
*Rien ne, adv. agréable esprit, m.*  
*lumière, f. vérité, f. aimable*  
*désirable sagesse, f. Ma*  
*de pouce, m.*  
*tête, f.*  
*En hiver, m. chemin, m. sont toujours plus mauvais*  
*en été, m. sera attentif*  
*industrieux lui.*

RULE 10.—The comparative of *inferiority* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, LESS; or *ne-pas*† *si*, NOT SO, before the adjective; *que*, THAN, follows it; *moins* must be repeated before every adjective.

<i>Votre cousin est MOINS</i>	Your cousin is <i>less</i> noble
<i>noble QUE vous,</i>	<i>than you.</i>
<i>Il N'est PAS SI orgueilleux</i>	He is <i>not so</i> proud as his
<i>QUE sa sœur,</i>	sister.

\* To translate this adjective, *handsomer*, it must be changed into *more handsome*, and the same turn must be given to all others, the comparatives of which are formed by the addition of *er* or *r*.

† The preposition *by*, being preceded by a comparative, is to be translated by the preposition *de*.

‡ It will be easily perceived that the *dash*, which separates *ne* from *pas*, points out the place to be given to the verb that is used in the sentence.



## EXERCISE.

Mrs. P. is less polite than her daughter, and her  
*Madame poli sa sa*  
 daughter (is not) so revengeful as she.—You are<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup>  
*vindicatif elle\* êtes ne-pas*  
 so dutiful as your brother.—My father is not so rich  
*obéissant*  
 as yours.—Miss Goodwill is less amiable than her mother.  
*le vôtre sa*  
 —Paris (is not) so populous as London.—Your  
*peuplé Londres*  
 companion (is neither) so prudent nor so circum-  
*compagnon, m. n'est ni† prudent ni circons-*  
 spect as you.  
*pect*

*Observation.*—The adverbs *more* and *less*, offering serious difficulties when preceded by the article *the*, I consider it as necessary to give the following rule, though it has no connexion with the comparatives.

**RULE 11.**—The adverbs *more* and *less* being preceded by the article *the*, and placed in two different members of a sentence, the second of which is a consequence drawn from the first, the *article* is to be suppressed, and the construction of the sentence must be this. Begin the sentence with the adverb *more* or *less*, then bring in the *subject* of the verb, afterwards the *verb*, and lastly the adjective or noun substantive standing as the object of the verb. Ex.

*Plus nous sommes riches,*      The <sup>1</sup>richer<sup>4</sup> we<sup>2</sup> are<sup>3</sup>, the  
*plus nous sommes avares,*      more<sup>5</sup> covetous<sup>8</sup> we<sup>6</sup> are<sup>7</sup>.

That is to say ; *more we are rich, more we are covetous.*

**N. B.** If the object of the verb should be a conjunctive pronoun, that pronoun must precede the verb. Ex.

*Plus vous êtes vertueux, plus*      The more virtuous you are,  
*je vous aime,*      the more I love you.

That is to say ; *more you are virtuous, more I you love.*

\* The *e* of *que* must be contracted before the pronoun *elle*. Write then *qu'elle*.

† *Ni*, being a negative conjunction, takes the place of *pas*.

## EXERCISE.

The more a thing is difficult, the more honourable  
*chose, f. difficile, adj. -honorable*  
 it is.—The less you give to your children, the less  
*elle donnez, v.*  
 they spend. — The richer they are, the more  
*ils, pro. dépensent, v.*  
 covetous they are. — The more a young man studies,  
*avare, adj. étudie, v.*  
 the more learned he grows, and the more  
*savant, adj. devient, v.*  
 respected he is. — The more a drunkard drinks, the  
*respecté, p. p. ivrogne, m. boit, v.*  
 more thirsty he is. — The more odious laziness  
*altéré, adj. odieux, adj. paresse, f.*  
 is, the more we should avoid<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. — The less  
*devrions, v. éviter, v. la, pro.*  
 you apply, the less you learn. — The more  
*vous vous appliquez, v. apprenez, v.*  
 they shall know<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, the less they will esteem<sup>2</sup>  
*connoîtront, v. estimeront, v.*  
 you<sup>1</sup>.

*Observation.*—The three following adjectives are comparative by themselves.

*Meilleur*, better, for *plus bon*, which is never used.

*Pire*, worse, for *plus mauvais*, which is used.

*Moindre*, less, for *plus petit*, which is also used.

## EXERCISE.

The watch which my grandfather has bought is  
*montre, f. que grandpère, m. achetée*  
 better than the clock which he gave to my mother.  
*-horloge, f. a donnée mère, f.*  
 — My friend's buckles are better than those of his  
*boucle, f. celles*  
 uncle, but mine are worse than his. — The  
*oncle, m. les miennes les siennes.*  
 life of a slave is a thousand times worse than death  
*vie, f. esclave, m. & mille fois mort, f.*  
 itself. — The pain which I endure is less than that  
*même peine, f. que souffre celle*  
 which is inflicted on galley-slaves.  
*qui est infligée aux galérien, m.*

*The Superlative.*

The adjective is in the *superlative* when it raises the quality to the *highest* or to a *very high* degree. Therefore there are two kinds of superlatives: the *superlative relative*, and the *superlative absolute*.

*Formation of the Superlative Relative.*

**RULE 12.**—The *superlative relative* is formed, first, by placing the article *le, la, les*; *du, dela, des*; *au, à la, aux*, the, of the, &c. either contracted, or in its natural state, before the comparative adjectives, *meilleur*, best; *pire*, worse; *moindre*, least; or before the comparative adverbs *moins*, least; *plus*, most; and *mieux*, best; followed by an adjective. **Ex.**

*Votre sœur est LA MEILLEURE et LA PLUS belle femme de la ville,*

Your sister is *the best* and the handsomest woman in the town.\*

2dly, by placing one of these possessive pronouns *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur*, instead of the article, before the comparative adjectives or adverbs *meilleur, pire, moindre, moins* and *plus*. **Ex.**

*Monsieur R. est mon meilleur ami,*

Mr. R. is my best friend.

*Mon frère a toujours été votre plus zélé protecteur,*

My brother has always been your warmest protector.

**N. B.**—1. When an adjective in the *superlative relative* precedes the substantive, the article placed before the adverb *plus* or *moins* serves both for the formation of the superlative and for the substantive. **Ex.**

*LA plus aimable femme de Londres,*

The most amiable woman in London.

2. When, on the contrary, the adjective is placed after the substantive, the article is repeated before both the substantive and the adjective. **Ex.**

*LA femme LA plus aimable de Londres,*

The most amiable woman in London.

\* The preposition *in*, following a superlative relative, must be translated by the preposition *de*, or the genitive of the article *du, de la, des*, &c. if the noun governed by the preposition *in* takes the article.

3. If the substantive is qualified by more than one adjective, those adjectives must be placed after the substantive, and the article and adverb of comparison are to be repeated before every adjective. Ex.

LE *prince* LE PLUS *sage*, LE PLUS *prudent et* LE PLUS *généreux qui* AIT *existé*,\*      The wisest, most prudent and most generous prince that has existed.

## EXERCISE.

The vine is one† of the most useful and agreeable gifts of Providence.‡——Virtue is the most precious thing§ in the world.——The lion is the strongest and most courageous of all animals.——(There is) the handsomest lady in London.—She is so touchy, that she will not bear the least joke.——Miss P. is the mildest, politest and most affable of all her sisters.¶—Ingratitude is the greatest of all vices.——If France were as rich as England (it would be) the best country in the world.

*vigne, f.*      *utile*  
*don, m.*      *Providence, f.*      *précieux*  
*chose, f.*      *du monde, m.*      *lion*      *fort*  
*courageux*      *animal, m.*      *Voilà*  
*bourru*      *veut*  
*souffrir*      *raillerie, f.*      *doux*  
*poli*      *affable*      *ses*      *Ingratitude, f.*  
*vice, m.*      *Si*      *étoit*  
*ce seroit*      *pays, m.*

*Formation of the Superlative Absolute.*

RULE 13.—The SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE is formed by placing *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very; or *infiniment*, infinitely; *extrêmement*, extremely, before the adjective. When the substantive is modified by more than one adjective, the

\* *Qui* or *que* following a superlative relative always governs the next verb in the subjunctive mood. Therefore in the above sentence, instead of *that has existed*, we say, *that may have existed*, QUI AIT EXISTÉ.

† The word *gift* being understood after *one*, *one* must take its gender.

‡ See the N. B. 3, after Rule 12, at the top of this page.

§ Place the substantive *thing* before the adjective *precious*.

¶ See the N. B. 3, at the top of this page.

adverb forming the superlative must be repeated before each of them. Ex.

*Charles dix est TRES religieux, TRES charitable et TRES indulgent,*

Charles the Tenth is very religious, very charitable and very indulgent.

## EXERCISE.

God is a being infinitely great and perfect: — I am  
*être, m. parfait*  
 your most humble and obedient servant. — The front  
*très obéissant serviteur, m. façade, f.*  
 of your house is very beautiful. — You are very good, but  
*beau*  
 your brother is very wicked. — My uncle has a very fine  
*méchant*  
 country<sup>2</sup> - house<sup>1</sup>, and very<sup>2</sup> spacious<sup>3</sup> gardens<sup>1</sup>. — My  
*campagne, f. maison de spacieux*  
 best friend is dead. — Our common<sup>2</sup> enemy<sup>1</sup> has 'the<sup>3</sup>  
*Notre commun*  
 most<sup>4</sup> inveterate<sup>5</sup> hatred<sup>2</sup> against this country. — Their  
*invétééré. haine contre ce Leurs*  
 least embarrassments\* make their greatest delight. —  
*embarras, m. font délices, f. pl.*  
 Pride and passion are his least defects.\*  
*Orgueil, m. colère, f. sont ses défaut, m.*

## OF ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS OF NUMBER.

The *adjectives of number* are words used in calculation. I call them *adjectives*, because they are intended to modify; and every word that modifies is an adjective. They are divided into two sorts, the *cardinal* and the *ordinal*.

The *cardinal* merely express the *number* of the persons and things of which we speak. The *ordinal* point out the *order* of the persons or things with respect to the *numbers*.

*Observation.*—Some of the *cardinal numbers* having different pronunciations, according to their different situations, I shall give a proper representation of them for the advantage of beginners.

\* Observe that in these two sentences, *least* is an *adjective*, and not an *adverb*. It is therefore to be translated by *moindre* and not by *moins*.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

## PRONUNCIATION.

	Not followed by any other word.	Before a vowel, or an <i>h</i> mute.	Before a consonant, or an <i>h</i> aspirated.
<i>Un</i> , m. } <i>Une</i> , f. }	one.		
<i>Deux</i> ,	two.		
<i>Trois</i> ,	three.		
<i>Quatre</i> ,	four,	<i>quatre</i> ,	<i>cat maisons.</i>
<i>Cinq</i> ,	five,	<i>cink</i> ,	<i>cin livres.</i>
<i>Six</i> ,	six,	<i>siss</i> ,	<i>si plumes.</i>
<i>Sept</i> ,	seven,	<i>set</i> ,	<i>set étoiles,</i> }
		stars,	<i>sé tables.</i>
<i>Huit</i> ,	eight,	<i>huit</i> ,	<i>huit anges,</i> }
		<i>angels,</i>	<i>hui villes.</i>
<i>Neuf</i> ,	nine,	<i>neuf</i> ,	<i>neuve évêques,</i> }
		bishops,	<i>neu jardins.</i>
<i>Dix</i> ,	ten,	<i>diss</i> ,	<i>diz officiers,</i> }
		officers,	<i>di dames.</i>

*Onze*,*Douze*,*Treize*,*Quatorze*,*Quinze*,*Seize*,*Dix-sept*,*Dix-huit*,*Dix-neuf*,*Vingt*,*Vingt-un*, or }*Vingt-et-un*,\* }*Vingt-deux*,*Vingt-trois*,*Vingt-quatre*,*Vingt-cinq*,*Vingt-six*,*Vingt-sept*,

Eleven.

Twelve.

Thirteen.

Fourteen.

Fifteen.

Sixteen.

Seventeen.

Eighteen.

Nineteen.

Twenty.

Twenty-one.

Twenty-two.

Twenty-three.

Twenty-four.

Twenty-five.

Twenty-six.

Twenty-seven.

\* The conjunction, *et*, is used from *twenty* to *eighty* before *un* only; not before any other number. But we cannot say with any propriety *quatre-vingt et un*; we must say, *quatre-vingt-un*, &c. I shall observe also that in *vingt* the *g* is never pronounced; the *t* is also mute, except when followed by a vowel, or an *h* not aspirated. Yet from *twenty-one* to *thirty*, the *t* must be distinctly sounded.

<i>Vingt-huit,</i>	Twenty-eight.
<i>Vingt-neuf,</i>	Twenty-nine.
<i>Trente,</i>	Thirty.
<i>Trente-un, or</i> }	Thirty-one.
<i>Trente-et-un,</i> }	
<i>Trente-deux, &amp;c.</i>	Thirty-two, &c.
<i>Quarante,</i>	Forty.
<i>Quarante-et-un,</i>	Forty-one.
<i>Quarante-deux,</i>	Forty-two.
<i>Cinquante,</i>	Fifty.
<i>Cinquante-et-un,</i>	Fifty-one.
<i>Soixante,</i>	Sixty.
<i>Soixante-et-un,</i>	Sixty-one.
<i>Soixante-deux,<sup>1</sup></i>	Sixty-two.
<i>Soixante-trois,</i>	Sixty-three.
<i>Soixante-quatre,</i>	Sixty-four.
<i>Soixante-cinq,</i>	Sixty-five.
<i>Soixante-six,</i>	Sixty-six.
<i>Soixante-sept,</i>	Sixty-seven.
<i>Soixante-huit,</i>	Sixty-eight.
<i>Soixante-neuf,</i>	Sixty-nine.
<i>Soixante-dix,</i>	Seventy.
<i>Soixante-onze,</i>	Seventy-one.
<i>Soixante-douze,</i>	Seventy-two.
<i>Soixante-treize,</i>	Seventy-three.
<i>Soixante-quatorze,</i>	Seventy-four.
<i>Soixante-quinze,</i>	Seventy-five.
<i>Soixante-seize,</i>	Seventy-six.
<i>Soixante-dix-sept,</i>	Seventy-seven.
<i>Soixante-dix-huit,</i>	Seventy-eight.
<i>Soixante-dix-neuf,</i>	Seventy-nine.
<i>Quatre-vingt,*</i>	Eighty.
<i>Quatre-vingt-un,</i>	Eighty-one.
<i>Quatre-vingt-deux,</i>	Eighty-two.
<i>Quatre-vingt-trois,</i>	Eighty-three.
<i>Quatre-vingt-quatre,</i>	Eighty-four.
<i>Quatre-vingt-cinq,</i>	Eighty-five.
<i>Quatre-vingt-six,</i>	Eighty-six.
<i>Quatre-vingt-sept,</i>	Eighty-seven.
<i>Quatre-vingt-huit,</i>	Eighty-eight.
<i>Quatre-vingt-neuf,</i>	Eighty-nine.

\* In *quatre-vingt* the *g* and *t* are not sounded in any of the numbers to one hundred, not even before a vowel; therefore we say, *quatre-vingt*, *quatre-vingt-un*, *quatre-vingt-huit*, *quatre-vingt-onze*.

<i>Quatre-vingt-dix,</i>	Ninety.
<i>Quatre-vingt-onze,</i>	Ninety-one.
<i>Quatre-vingt-douze,</i>	Ninety-two.
<i>Quatre-vingt-treize,</i>	Ninety-three.
<i>Quatre-vingt-quatorze,</i>	Ninety-four.
<i>Quatre-vingt-quinze,</i>	Ninety-five.
<i>Quatre-vingt-seize,</i>	Ninety-six.
<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-sept,</i>	Ninety-seven.
<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-huit,</i>	Ninety-eight.
<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf,</i>	Ninety-nine.
<i>Cent,* *</i>	A hundred.
<i>Cent-un, &amp;c.</i>	A hundred and one.
<i>Deux cens,</i>	Two hundred.
<i>Trois cens, &amp;c.</i>	Three hundred.
<i>Mille,* mil,†</i>	A thousand.
<i>Deux mille,</i>	Two millions.
<i>Trois mille, &amp;c.</i>	Three millions.
<i>Million,‡</i>	A million.

RULE 14.—*Cent* in the plural, and *vingt* in *quatre-vingt* and *six-vingt* (this last number is become obsolete), take an *s* when they are followed by a substantive either expressed or understood; as in these examples: *deux cens soldats*, two hundred soldiers; *quatre-vingts chevaux*, eighty horses; *six-vingts écus*, one hundred and twenty (or six score) crowns: *Combien serons-nous à table?* How many shall we be at table? *Nous serons quatre-vingts*; we shall be eighty. The word *persons* is understood after *how many*, and so it is also after *eighty*. But whenever *cent* and *quatre-vingt* are followed by another number, they must be written without an *s*. Ex.: *quatre-cent-six maisons*; four hundred and six houses. *Quatre-vingt-dix officiers*; ninety officers.

Observation 1.—Before *onze* and the ordinal number *onzième*, the article is not to be contracted. We say, *le onze, le onzième*; *du onze, du onzième, &c.*; *les onze, des onze, &c.* pronouncing these numbers as if they began with

\* In one hundred, except speaking of things that may be sold by the hundred, *one* is not to be translated; therefore we say *cent hommes*, one hundred men; *un cent de pommes*, one, or a hundred apples. In *one thousand*, *mille*, *one* is never translated.

† In mentioning dates, we write *mil* and not *mille*; in any other case we use *mille*, which never takes the sign of the plural.

‡ *Million* is not an adjective; it belongs to the class of the *substantives*.



an *h* aspirated, which *h* however must be pronounced slightly.

In this sentence, *sur les une heure*, at about one o'clock, the *u* in *une* is also to be sounded as if it were preceded by an *h* aspirated.

*Observation 2.*—When the above numbers *one, two, three, &c.* are followed by a participle past, the participle must be preceded by the preposition *de*. Ex.

<i>Il y en eut vingt d'absous, et</i>	Twenty were acquitted,
<i>cing DE condamnés à</i>	and five were condemned
<i>mort,</i>	to death.

## EXERCISE.

I was in the company of eleven gentlemen and nine ladies.——He has spoken to three officers and two

generals.——If I had a hundred guineas, I (would lend<sup>2</sup>)  
*généraux, m. avois un guinée, f. en prêteroï*

you<sup>1</sup> eighty.—The army of our allies was composed  
*armée, f. nos allié, m. composée*  
 of a hundred thousand men of foot, and of twenty  
*infanterie, f.*

thousand of horse.——They took fifteen hundred men  
*cavalerie, f. firent*

prisoners, killed four thousand, wounded a  
*prisonnier, m. en tuèrent en blessèrent*

thousand, and (carried away) above two millions in  
*emportèrent plus de en*

specie.—The battle (was fought) in one thousand  
*espèce, f. bataille, f. se livra en*

eight hundred and fourteen, at three o'clock in the  
*heure, f. du*

morning.—I shall be here (at about) one o'clock.—I have  
*matin ici vers une heure*

found a purse in which (there were) one and  
*trouvé bourse, f. dans laquelle il y avoit*

thirty\* guineas, one and forty crowns, and one and  
*guinée, f. écu, m.*

\* Those compound numbers must be inverted in French, as the highest always comes first. Therefore turn them thus; *thirty and one, forty and one, &c.*

twenty shillings.—I saw one and fifty men assembled  
*schelling, m. ai vu assemblé*  
 before St. James's palace.—When my brother  
*devant, p. St. Jacques, m. Quand*  
 died he was one and thirty years old.—Mr. P. (will pay)<sup>2</sup>  
*mourut avoit payera*  
 me' one and sixty guineas well told.—I received  
*me bien compté reçus*  
 yesterday by the last mail one and forty letters  
*hier dernier malle, f. lettre, f.*  
 well sealed, and very interesting.—The enemies had  
*cacheté important eurent*  
 one hundred men killed, seventy wounded, forty  
*tué, p. p. blessé, p. p.*  
 lost, and five hundred taken prisoners.  
*perdu, p. p. fait, p. p. prisonnier*

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

<i>Premier, m. première, f. }</i>	First.
<i>or unième,* }</i>	
<i>Second, m. seconde, f. }</i>	Second.
<i>or deuxième,* }</i>	
<i>Troisième,</i>	Third.
<i>Quatrième,</i>	Fourth.
<i>Cinquième,</i>	Fifth.
<i>Sixième,</i>	Sixth.
<i>Septième,</i>	Seventh.
<i>Huitième,</i>	Eighth.
<i>Neuvième,</i>	Ninth.
<i>Dixième,</i>	Tenth.
<i>Onzième,</i>	Eleventh.
<i>Douzième,</i>	Twelfth.
<i>Treizième,</i>	Thirteenth.
<i>Quatorzième,</i>	Fourteenth.
<i>Quinzième,</i>	Fifteenth.
<i>Seizième,</i>	Sixteenth.
<i>Dix-septième,</i>	Seventeenth.
<i>Dix-huitième,</i>	Eighteenth.

\* *Unième* is only used after *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent et mille*; and *deuxième* is always used instead of *second* after these same numbers. We therefore say, *vingt-unième, vingt-deuxième*; *cinquante-unième, cinquante-deuxième*, &c. Yet the use of *deuxième* is not, like that of *unième*, confined to the formation of these compound numbers.

<i>Dix-neuvième,</i>	Nineteenth.
<i>Vingtième,</i>	Twentieth.
<i>Vingt-unième, or Vingt- et-unième,</i> }	Twenty-first.
<i>Vingt-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	Twenty-second.
<i>Trentième,</i>	Thirtieth.
<i>Trente-unième, &amp;c.</i>	Thirty-first.
<i>Quarantième,</i>	Fortieth.
<i>Quarante-unième, &amp;c.</i>	Forty-first.
<i>Cinquantième,</i>	Fiftieth.
<i>Cinquante-unième, &amp;c.</i>	Fifty-first.
<i>Soixantième, &amp;c.</i>	Sixtieth.
<i>Soixante-neuvième,</i>	Sixty-ninth.
<i>Soixante-dixième,</i>	Seventieth.
<i>Soixante-onzième, &amp;c.</i>	Seventy-first.
<i>Quatre-vingtième,</i>	Eightieth.
<i>Quatre-vingt-unième, &amp;c.</i>	Eighty-first.
<i>Quatre-vingt-neuvième,</i>	Eighty-ninth.
<i>Quatre-vingt-dixième,</i>	Ninetieth.
<i>Quatre-vingt-onzième, &amp;c.</i>	Ninety-first.
<i>Centième,</i>	Hundredth.
<i>Cent-unième,</i>	Hundred and first.
<i>Cent-deuxième,</i>	Hundred and second.
<i>Deux-centième,</i>	Two hundredth.
<i>Millième,</i>	Thousandth.

## SUBSTANTIVES OF NUMBER.

There are three sorts of *substantives of number*, which are the *collective*, the *distributive* and the *proportional*.

The *collective* serve to denote a determinate quantity of objects; such as, *une demi douzaine*, half a dozen; *une douzaine*, a dozen; *une centaine*, a hundred; *un millier*, a thousand; *un million*, a million.

The *distributive* serve to denote the different parts of a whole; as, *la moitié*, half; *le tiers*, the third part; *le quart*, a quarter, or fourth part; *un cinquième*, a fifth part, &c.

The *proportional* serve to denote the progressive increase of the number of objects; as, *le double*, double; *le triple*, triple; *le quadruple*, quadruple, &c.

RULE 15.—The *cardinal* numbers must be used in French in speaking of the days of the month, excepting the first, though the *ordinal* be used in English. Ex.

*Le DEUX de Novembre,*

The *second* of November.

*Le PREMIER de Mai,*

The *first* of May.

## EXERCISE.

My friend will come to see<sup>2\*</sup> us<sup>1</sup> on† the fifth of  
*viendra voir en du*  
 next<sup>2</sup> month<sup>1</sup>. — Lady - day‡ falls on the  
*prochain mois, m. Notre-dame, f. jour, m. tombe en*  
 twenty-fifth of March. — In the leap<sup>2</sup> year<sup>1</sup> the  
*Mars, m. bissextile année, f.*  
 month of February has one day more, which is the  
*mois, m. Février, m. de plus qui*  
 twenty-ninth. — The first of November is All-saints day,§  
*Novembre, m. la toussaint, f.*  
 and the fifth of the same month is the day of the  
*même des*  
 gunpowder plot.|| — Come on the first day of  
*poudres, pl. conspuration, f. Venez en*  
 July.  
*Juillet, m.*

RULE 16.—Whenever the *ordinal* numbers are used in English to point out the rank or order which persons or things hold with respect to one another, the *ordinal* numbers must be used in French.

## EXERCISE.

Pay attention to Rules 14 and 15, and to the observations on the Cardinal Numbers.

On the eleventh of June I received twelve letters, but  
*Juin reçus*  
 the eleventh has<sup>2</sup> afforded<sup>3</sup> me<sup>1</sup> more pleasure than the  
*procuré me plus*  
 others. — Mrs. B. is the fifth lady whom I have seen  
*Madame, f. que*  
 to-day. — The spring begins on the twenty-  
*aujourd'hui printemps, m. commence*  
 first or twenty-second of March. — He cannot spend  
*Mars, m. ne peut pas dépenser*  
 the sixth part of his fortune. — The eleventh of Novem-  
*partie, f. sa fortune, f.*

\* See the note\* in the exercise upon Rule 19, page 31.

† On preceding a date is never translated in French.

‡ Lady-day; that is to say, the day of our lady.

§ Say, the day of all saints.

|| Say, of the plot of the gun-powders.

ber, which is the eleventh month of the year, was the  
*année, f.*

dullest day of the<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> month<sup>3</sup>.

*triste*

*tout*

RULE 17.—In speaking of *sovereigns* and *princes*, the *cardinal* numbers are used in French, instead of the *ordinal*; and they are placed after the substantives as in English, but without the article; as, *George trois, Henri quatre*; George the Third, Henry the Fourth. However from this rule are to be excepted the two first ordinal numbers, *premier* and *second*, first and second, which must be used in French, but without the article; as, *George premier, George the First; François second, Francis the Second*.

When we speak of the Emperor *Charles the Fifth*, and of the Pope *Sixtus the Fifth*; we say, *Charles quint, Sixte quint*; *quint* is a contraction of the Latin word *quintus*, fifth.

## EXERCISE.

*See Rule 5, on the Article, page 15.*

Edward the Sixth, the son of Henry the Eighth,  
*Edouard, m. fils, m. Henri*

and the grand-son of Henry the Seventh, was<sup>2</sup> *batz*  
*petit* *avoit ne que*  
 nine years old when he began to reign.—Henry  
*an, m. quand commença à regner*  
 the Fifth, King of England, the son of Henry the  
*roi, m.*

Fourth, and father of Henry the Sixth, married Catha-  
*épousa Cathe-*  
 rine, the daughter of Charles the Sixth, king of France,  
*rine, f.*

conquered the greatest part of that kingdom, and  
*conquit grand partie, f. ce royaume, m.*

died (in the) midst of his victories.—(Long live)  
*mourut au milieu ses victoire, f. Vive*

George the Fourth, son of George the Third.—Charles  
*George*

the Fifth, King of Spain, and the Pope Sixtus the  
*Pape, m.*

Fifth, were two great men.

*étoient grand*

**RULE 18.**—The article is suppressed in French before the ordinal number when it is preceded by a noun used to quote a *chapter*, an *article*, a *page*, a *line*, &c. ; but should the ordinal number precede the noun, the construction is the same in French as in English; and the article is expressed. Ex.

*Livre troisième,*  
*Le troisième livre,*

Book the third.  
The third book.

## EXERCISE.

What you (look for) you will find\* in the second

*Ce que cherchez trouverez le*

book of Samuel, chapter the third, verse the  
*Samuel, m. chapitre, m. verset, m.*

ninth, page the first, and line the tenth. — We read  
*page, f. ligne, f. lisons*

in Telemachus, book the seventh, page the hundred  
*Télémaque, m.*

and twenty-fifth, that Mentor pushed Telemachus into the

sea, and threw<sup>3</sup> himself<sup>1</sup> (into it<sup>2</sup>) afterward with him.  
*que poussa Télémaque*

*mer, f. jeta se y ensuite lui*

—Our master forgives the first time, threatens the

*Notre pardonne fois, f. menace*

second, and always<sup>2</sup> punishes<sup>1</sup> the third.

*toujours punit*

## OF COMPOUND ENGLISH INVERTED NOUNS.

Nouns, such as *a tin-box*, *Burgundy-wine*, I call compound inverted, and with reason, I think; as, according to their meaning, the last should come first, and the first last; and the words that are in ellipsis should be placed between both. For example, these words *a tin-box*, according to their meaning, present to the mind this simple construction, *a box made of tin*, and *Burgundy-wine*, *wine from Burgundy*. These English inversions give rise to difficulties, which it is impossible to bring to any fixed rules that would embrace them all. I shall however do my best, assisted by the decisions of the French Academy, to throw some light upon them.

\* Translate the sentence as if it were thus expressed; you it will find,  
*vous le trouverez.*

**RULE 19.**—To translate into French these English compound inverted words, the first in English must be put the last in French, and the last must be put the first; and whenever the first in English specifies the material of which the second is made, or the country or place from which it comes, the last in French is to be preceded by the preposition *de*, of or from. Ex.

<i>Une maison DE brique,</i>	A brick house.
<i>Une cuiller D'argent,</i>	A silver spoon.
<i>Du poisson DE rivière,</i>	A river fish.
<i>Du vin DE Bourgogne,</i>	Burgundy wine.

That is to say, a house of, &c.; a spoon of, &c.; a fish of, &c.; wine from, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Your<sup>1</sup> sister<sup>2</sup> has<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup> silk<sup>6</sup> gown<sup>5</sup> and a  
*Votre, pr. sœur, f. a, v. une soie, f. robe, f. un*  
 gold thimble.—We drink Champagne wine.—It is  
*or, m. dé, m. buvons C'est, v.*  
 a marble pillar. — They have a house  
*marbre, m. pillier, m. Ils ont une maison, f.*  
 built with oak wood. — She has  
*construite, p. p. de, p. chêne, m. bois Elle a*  
 bought silver buckles and diamond  
*argent. m. boucle, f. diamans, m.*  
 ear-rings. — Have you spoken to the  
*(pendans-d'oreilles, m.) Avez, v. parlé, p. p.*  
 silk-merchant? — Bring me my straw-  
*marchand, m. moi mon, pr. paille, f.*  
 hat. — The rich (make use) of silver  
*chapeau, m. riches, m. se servent, v. argent*  
 plate, and the poor make use of iron  
*vaisselle, f. pauvres, m. font, v. usage, m. fer, m.*  
 forks and pewter spoons.  
*étain, m. cuiller, f.*

**RULE 20.**—Whenever the first word in English expresses the use to which the second is destined, the second in French (which is the first in English) is generally preceded by the preposition *à*, to.

It is to be observed that the word which is preceded by the preposition *à* is also sometimes preceded by the *article*. This belonging in a great measure to the idiom of the

language, I shall not pretend to reduce it to any fixed rule.

<i>Le pot au lait,</i>	The milk-pot.
<i>La boîte à poudre,</i>	The powder-box.
<i>Le fer à friser,</i>	The curling-irons.
<i>Un pot à l'eau,</i>	A water-jug.
<i>La chambre à manger,</i>	The eating-room.

That is to say, the pot to the, &c.; the box to, &c.; the iron to, &c.; a jug to the, &c.; the room to, &c.

## EXERCISES.\*

Gun- powder was invented by a monk. —  
*Canon poudre, f. fut inventée par moine, m.*  
 Go to the wine - cellar, and bring<sup>2</sup> us! a  
*Allez vin, m. art. cave, f. apportez nous*  
 vinegar - bottle. — The servant has  
*vinaigre bouteille, f. domestique, f. and m. a*  
 lost the tinder-box, and cannot light  
*perdu, p. p. fusil, m. ne sauroit, v. allumer, v.*  
 the candle. — I live in the hay - market,  
*chandelle, f. demeure sur foin, m. art. marché, m.*  
 my cousin in the fish - market, and my  
*mon, pr. sur poisson, m. art. ma, pr*  
 sister in the poultry - market. — If you  
*sur volaille, f. art. Si, c.*  
 go to London to-morrow, bring me a tour<sup>ee</sup> -  
*allez, v. demain, adv. toupet, m.*  
 iron. — Give me the oil - bottle, pepper -  
*fer, m. moi, pr. huile, f. art. poivre, m. art.*  
 box, and mustard - pot. — Have you seen  
*boîte, f. moutarde, f. art. vu, p. p.*  
 the water-mill which my father has bought?  
*moulin, m. que, pr.*  
 No, but I have seen the wind-mill which your bro-  
*Non, adv. vent*  
 ther has built at Greenwich. — We had  
*a fait bâtir à éumes, v.*  
 cabbage - soup, a rice - pudding, a (leg  
*cnou, m. art. soupe, f. riz, m. art. pouding, m.*  
 of mutton) with caper - sauce, and ice -  
*gigot, m. capre, f. art. sauce, glace, f. art.*

\* Whenever the second word in French is to be preceded by the article, I put these letters (*art.*) immediately after it.



cream.\*—I have found your sister's work - bag,  
*crème, f. ouvrage, m. sac, m.*  
 in the eating - room.—We shall have peas -  
*manger, m. chambre, f. aurons, v. pois, m. art.*  
 porridge, a salt<sup>2</sup> cod<sup>1</sup>, with egg - sauce, and a  
*soupe, f. salé, adj. morue, f. œuf, m.*  
 turbot with lobster - sauce.†—I bought a  
*homar, m. art. ai acheté*  
 plum - cake, an apple - tart, and  
*raisin, m. art. gâteau, m. pomme, f. art. tarte, f.*  
 two gooseberry. and cherry pies.‡ — Give me  
*groseille, f. art. cerise, f. art. tourte, f.*  
 the wine-glass and the coffee - cup.  
*verre café, m. tasse*

*Recapitulatory Exercise upon the preceding Rules.*

Ignorance is the mother of admiration, error  
*Ignorance, f. est mère, f. admiration, f. erreur, f.*  
 and superstition.—The covetous despise the poor. —  
*superstition, f. Les avare méprisent les pauvre*  
 Humility is the basis of Christian<sup>2</sup> virtues<sup>1</sup>.—  
*-Humilité, f. base, f. Chrétien*  
 Pride is generally the effect of ignorance.—  
*Orgueil, m. effet, m.*  
 Give me some bread, meat, turnips and water.—  
*Donnez-moi*  
 Merit and favour are the two springs of envy.—  
*Mérite, m. faveur, f. sont source, f. envie, f.*  
 Interest, pleasure and glory are the three motives  
*Intérêt, m. motifs, m.*  
 of the actions and conduct of men. — Is<sup>2</sup> it<sup>3</sup> not<sup>4</sup>  
*conduite, f. Est ce ne-pas*  
 Peter's book?—Your father is gone to London, where he  
*allé*  
 has bought (a few) horses and (a great many) cows,  
*acheté quelques beaucoup vache*  
 (which he) intends to send to Canada or Jamaica.§ —  
*qu'il se propose d'envoyer*

\* *Caper-sauce* cannot be made with one *cuper* only; therefore *capre* must be put in the plural number. Take care to place the word *some* before *soup, sauce* and *cream*.

† Read the last note \*, and apply it to *peas* and *egg*.

‡ Read the last note \*, and apply it to *plum, apple, gooseberry* and *cherry*.

§ See the exception on Rule 13, page 24.

——The father's house and the son's garden  
*maison, f. jardin, m.*

(are adjoining).——He found the windows and the door  
*se joignent trouva*

shut.——Truth is the basis of human<sup>2</sup> happiness<sup>1</sup>;  
*fermé Vérité, f. humain bonheur, m.*

without it (there is no)\* confidence in friendship,  
*sans elle il n'y a point confiance, f. dans amitié, f.*

and no security in promises.——The love of  
*point sûreté, f. promesse, f. amour, m.*

liberty and independence is the character of noble  
*liberté, f. indépendance, f. caractère, m.*

minds<sup>1</sup>.——Iron, steel and brass are more useful  
*Fer, m. acier, m. cuivre, m. utile*

than gold and silver.——The smith has at last  
*argent, m. serrurier, m. enfin*

repaired the two jacks, and the cook  
*réparé tourne-broche, m.† cuisinière, f.*

(is roasting) the meat.——I have seen the inside of  
*fait rôtir dedans, m.*

the church.——Bring my powder-box, and my  
*église, f. ma mon*

(toupee-iron).——I take a lesson three times a week.—  
*fer à friser prends ∞*

The study of grammar is<sup>2</sup> neither<sup>3</sup> so dry nor so dull as  
*étude, f. ne ni sec triste*

(it is thought).——Have prudence and patience, and  
*on se l'imagine Ayez prudence, f. patience, f.*

you will have success.——A good conscience is to  
*aurez succès, m. conscience, f.*

the soul what health is to the body.——Merit  
*âme, f. ce que santé, f. corps, m. Mérite, m.*

and virtue are the only source of true nobility.—  
*unique source, f. véritable noblesse, f.*

Religion, commerce and arms are proper<sup>2</sup> instruc-  
*Religion, f. commerce, m. arme, f. propre instruc-*

tions<sup>1</sup>‡ for a young prince.——Her father has been  
*tion, f. à Son été*

\* See Observation 2, on Rule 14, page 26.

† In all compound nouns formed of a *verb* and a *substantive*, the part belonging to the *verb*, as *tourne*, is indeclinable; the *substantive*, on the contrary, as *broche*, is declinable.

‡ As they are not the *only* instructions proper for a young prince, *proper instructions* must not be translated by *les instructions propres*, which would exclude all other instructions; but by *des instructions propres*, some instructions, &c.

made a knight of the Order of the Bath, and  
*fait chevalier, m. ordre, m. Bain, m.*  
 her grandfather was a knight of the Order of the  
*étoit*  
 Garter.——He has not (so much) profit, but more  
*Jarretière, f. tant profit, m.*  
 honour.——Fortune's favours are seldom the  
*faveur, f. rarement*  
 prize of virtue.——Gaming is the son of avarice,  
*récompense, f. Jeu, m.*  
 and the father of despair.——This cloth is equal  
*désespoir, m. Ce drap, m. comparable*  
 to silk.——I see the coast of England.——A forest  
*soie, f. vois côte, f. forêt, f.*  
 twenty miles long and eleven wide.——The example  
*mille exemple, m.*  
 of a good life is a lesson for the rest of  
*pour reste, m.*  
 mankind.——The French<sup>2</sup> fleet<sup>1</sup> was destroyed by  
*genre humain, m. François flotte, f. fut détruite*  
 the brave Admiral Nelson, on the first of August, one  
*Amiral, m. Août, m.*  
 thousand seven hundred and ninety-eight.——The eldest<sup>2</sup>  
*ainé*  
 son<sup>1</sup> of the king of England bears the title of Prince of  
*porte titre, m.*  
 Wales, as presumptive<sup>2</sup> heir<sup>1</sup> to the crown.——  
*Galles comme présomptif héritier, m. de la couronne, f.*  
 Lewis the Sixteenth was the grandson of Lewis the  
*Louis, m. petit-fils*  
 Fifteenth.——William, surnamed the Conqueror,  
*Guillaume, m. surnommé Conquérant, m.*  
 King of England and Duke of Normandy, was one  
*Duc, m. Normandie, f. étoit*  
 of the greatest generals of the eleventh century.——He  
*siècle, m.*  
 (was born) at Falaise, and was the natural<sup>2</sup> son<sup>1</sup> of  
*naquit à naturel*  
 Robert Duke of Normandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's  
*—die fourreur, m.*  
 daughter.——He died at Hermentrude, in France, on the  
*filles, f. mourut à*  
 ninth of September, one thousand and eighty-seven.——  
*—bre*

Mrs. Nelson's servant knows the price of all the provisions. — She bought yesterday some chickens at one shilling and three pence a-piece. — She came from America in three weeks. — Thomas was formerly a musician, now he is a (dancing master), to-morrow he (will be) a painter. — This water is very agreeable to the smell. — We (are going) to Coxheath to see the camp. — I have in my wardrobe five coats, sixteen waistcoats, twenty-two pair of stockings, and forty-six handkerchiefs. — The road to Croydon is very bad in winter. — Bring us good wine, good beer and the (oil-bottle). — The front of the king's palace (is not) so beautiful as I thought. — Generosity excites admiration. — Charles the Second, the son of Philip the Fourth, the grandson of Philip the Third, and the great grandson of Philip the Second, left his kingdom to Philip the Fifth. — On the eighteenth of February, one thousand four hundred and seventy-eight, the Duke of Clarence, brother to king Edward the Fourth, was drowned in a butt (of malmsey wine). — The inhabitants of the city of Dublin have presented a petition to the king. — It

*servante, f. sait      prix, m.*  
*denrée, f.      acheta      poulet, m. à*  
*sous      vint*  
*en      étoit autrefois*  
*musicien, m.      à présent      maître à danser, m.*  
*demain      sera      peintre, m. Cette*  
*odorat, m.      allons*  
*voir      camp, m.      dans      garde-robe, f.*  
*habit      veste, f.      bas*  
*mouchoir, m.      chemin, m.*  
*en hiver, m.*  
*bouteille à l'huile, f.      façade, f.*  
*n'est pas      croyois      Géné-*  
*rosité, f. excite      l'admiration, f.*  
*Philippe*  
*arrière-petit-fils, m.*  
*laissa son*  
*Février*  
*frère, m.*  
*fut noyé      dans      tonneau, m.*  
*de vin de malvoisie, f.      habitant, m.      ville, f.*  
*ont présenté      adresse, f.      Elle*

was signed by one and twenty knights, and\* above two  
*était signé par* *plus*  
 hundred citizens.—Good cider is preferable to bad  
*citoyen, m.* *cidre, m.*  
 wine.—That man always<sup>2</sup> wears<sup>†</sup> a green hat, a white  
*a*  
 shirt, red shoes and black stockings.—He has many  
*chemise, f.* *bas, m.* *bien*  
 children and plenty of money.—The longer<sup>‡</sup> the day  
*beaucoup* *argent, m.* *long*  
 is, the shorter is the night.—You have a fine hat.—  
*court* *nuit, f.*  
 Shame is a mixture of the grief and fear  
*Honte, f.* *mélange, m.* *chagrin, m.* *crainte, f.*  
 which infamy causes.—Religion, morality, govern-  
*que* *infamie, f.* *cause* *morale, f.* *gouverne-*  
 ment, fine arts, in a word (every thing) is over-  
*ment, m.* *beaux arts en* *mot, m.* *tout* *ren-*  
 turned.§—Homer was the first poet who personified the  
*versé* *fut* *poète, m.* *personnifia*  
 divine<sup>2</sup> attributes<sup>1</sup>, human<sup>2</sup> passions<sup>1</sup>, and physical<sup>2</sup>  
*divin* *attribut, m.* *humain* *physique*  
 causes<sup>1</sup>.—Pride and vanity are often the source  
*vanité, f.* *souvent*  
 of the misfortunes of mankind.—We sell good  
*malheur, m.* *vendons*  
 bread, excellent meat, and very large fishes; but<sup>1</sup>  
*gros poisson, m.* *mais*  
 we<sup>2</sup> have<sup>4</sup> neither<sup>5</sup> gold nor|| silver.—(Is there) any  
*avons* *ne-ni* *Y a-t-il*  
 beer in the cellar? — Mrs. B. is a good, virtuous, pru-  
*dans* *cave, f.* *vertueux*  
 dent and generous lady: she has a daughter as beautiful  
*fille, f.*  
 as an angel; but she has neither so much docility nor¶  
*ange, m.*

\* Repeat the preposition *by*.

† Adverbs are generally placed after the verbs; and when these are in a compound tense, the adverbs are to be placed after the auxiliary verb. Ex.

*Je dis toujours la vérité,*  
 I always speak the truth.

*J'ai toujours dit la vérité,*  
 I have always spoken the truth.

‡ See Rule 11, page 45.

§ See Rule 7, on the Article, Part 1, page 19.

|| See Rule 7, on the Article, Part 2, page 19.

¶ Repeat the adverb *so much*.

affability as her cousin.——Pindar (was born) at  
*cousine, f. Pindare, m. naquit à, p.*  
 Thebes, a city of Greece.——Malta is a small island,  
*Grèce, f. Malthé, f. île, f.*  
 but it produces corn, cotton, honey, figs and the  
*elle produit coton, m. miel, m. figue, f.*  
 finest oranges in the world.\*——The inhabitants of that  
*beau orange, f.*  
 fine country are all catholics, and go (every Sunday)  
*pays, m. vont tous les Dimanches*  
 (to hear) high mass.——The pleasure of the mind is  
*à la esprit, m.*  
 greater than the pleasure of the body, and the  
*corps, m.*  
 diseases of the mind are more pernicious than the  
*maladie, f. pernicieux*  
 diseases of the body.——Health, honours and fortune  
*Santé, f.*  
 united together cannot satisfy the heart of man.  
*uni ensemble ne peuvent satisfaire cœur, m.*  
 ——(It is) in the sixth page of the second book, chapter  
*C'est à*  
 the third. ——Miss W.'s father, a banker in the  
*banquier, m.*  
 Strand, is one of the richest men† in town, but she  
*Strand, m.*  
 is prouder and more haughty than if she were the  
*orgueilleux hautain étoit*  
 handsomest woman in Europe.——Their son arrived  
*Leur*  
 yesterday at Portsmouth from Peru and Martinico, in the  
 St. George, a ninety-gun ship.‡——Hypocrisy is  
*canon, m. vaisseau sie, f.*  
 a homage which vice pays to virtue.—A judicious\*  
*hommage, m. que vice, m. rend judicieux*  
 answer<sup>1</sup> does more honour than a brilliant<sup>2</sup> repartee<sup>1</sup>.—  
*réponse, f. fait brillant repartie, f.*  
 Give me a knife and fork.—My father has bought one and  
 thirty fine<sup>1</sup> grey<sup>3</sup> horses<sup>2</sup>.—(He is) an intrepid<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup>, and  
*gris C'est intrepide*

\* See the note \* on Rule 12, on the Superlative Relative, page 47.

† Say, one of the men the most rich of the town.

‡ Say, ship of ninety guns.

a man of honour and probity,——Mr. C. the queen's  
*de probité, f.*

jeweller has a very<sup>2</sup> prudent<sup>3</sup> wife<sup>1</sup>, and the most  
*jouailler, m.*

faithful, industrious and honest servant in London.——

*fidèle industriel honnête*

He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom, and  
*trouva la beauté jeunesse, f.*

even virtue, united in her person.——Thomas has  
*même réuni dans sa*

discretion, but he has no wit.——They have  
*discrétion, f. ne point*

(a quantity) of apples and pears.——Vienna, the capital  
*beaucoup Vienne, f.*

of the empire of Germany, is a fine city.——The more  
*Allemagne, f.*

pleasing plays are, the more dangerous they are.\*  
*agréable spectacle, m. dangereux*

—The rich, the poor, the young the old,  
*jeunes gens, m. vieillards, m.*

the learned and the ignorant are all subject to death.†——  
*savant sujet mort, f.*

True friends are very rare.——The famous mine of  
*Vrai rare fameux mine, f.*

Potosi, in Peru, is above two hundred and fifty fathoms  
*à plus toise, f.*

deep.——Henry the First, king of England, and brother  
*profondeur Henri*

to William Rufus, died the richest prince in Europe.  
*le Roux mourut*

——Paul is taller than you by an inch; but Mrs.  
*pouce, m.*

Nichol's brother is the tallest of all.

*tous*

\* See Rule 11, on the Comparatives, page 45.

† Put all those nouns, except *death*, in the plural.

## CHAP. IV.—OF PRONOUNS.

*Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns.

There are six different kinds of *pronouns*, the *personal*, the *possessive*, the *demonstrative*, the *relative*, the *interrogative* and the *indefinite*.

## PART I.—OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The *personal pronouns* are those which denote persons, and supply the place of them.

There are three persons :

The first is the person who speaks. Ex.

JE parle,	I speak.
NOUS parlons,	We speak.

The second is the person to whom we speak. Ex.

TU parles,	Thou speakest.
VOUS parlez,	You speak.

The third is the person of whom we speak. Ex.

IL or ELLE parle,	He or she speaks.
ILS or ELLES parlent,	They speak.

The pronouns of the first and second persons are the following, and they are of both genders.

*First Person.*

## Singular.

Je, moi,	I.
De moi ; à moi,	Of me ; to me.
Moi, me,	Me, or to me.

## Plural.

Nous,	We, us, or to us.
De nous ; à nous,	Of us ; to us.

*Second Person.*

## Singular.

Tu, toi,	Thou.
De toi ; à toi,	Of thee ; to the.
Toi, te,	Thee, or to the.

## Plural.

Vous,	You, or to you.
De vous ; à vous,	Of you ; to you.



The pronouns of the third person are, for the

Singular.

Masculine.

<i>Il, lui,</i>	He, or it.
<i>De lui ; à lui,</i>	Of him ; to him.
<i>Lui,</i>	To him, or to it.
<i>Le,</i>	Him, or it.

Plural.

Masculine.

<i>Ils, eux,</i>	They.
<i>D'eux ; à eux,</i>	Of them; to them.
<i>Leur,</i>	To them.
<i>Les,</i>	Them.

Singular.

Feminine.

<i>Elle,</i>	She, it.
<i>D'elle ; à elle,</i>	Of her ; to her.
<i>Lui,</i>	To her, or to it.
<i>La,</i>	Her, or it.

Plural.

Feminine.

<i>Elles,</i>	They.
<i>D'elles ; à elles,</i>	Of them; to them.
<i>Leur,</i>	To them.
<i>Les,</i>	Them.

*Observation.*—When the above pronouns are preceded in French by a preposition, *moi, toi, lui, eux, elle* and *elles* must be used, and not *je* or *me, tu* or *te, il* or *le, ils* or *les*, &c. Ex. With me, *avec moi* ; for thee, *pour toi* ; without him, *sans lui* ; in her, *en elle* ; in them, *en eux* (mas.), *en elles* (fem.).

#### REFLECTED PRONOUNS.

*First Person.*

Singular.

<i>Moi-même,</i>	Myself.
------------------	---------

Plural.

<i>Nous-mêmes,</i>	Ourselves.
--------------------	------------

## PRONOUN.

*Second Person.*

## Singular.

<i>Toi-même,</i>	Thyself.
<i>Vous-même,</i>	Yourself.

## Plural.

<i>Vous-mêmes,</i>	Yourselves.
--------------------	-------------

*Third Person.*

## Singular.

## Masculine.

<i>Lui-même,</i>	Himself, itself.
------------------	------------------

## Plural.

<i>Eux-mêmes,</i>	Themselves.
-------------------	-------------

## Singular.

## Feminine.

<i>Elle-même,</i>	Herself, itself.
-------------------	------------------

## Plural.

<i>Elles-mêmes,</i>	Themselves.
---------------------	-------------

## Singular and Plural.

## Masculine and Feminine.

<i>Soi,</i>	To himself, to herself, to itself, to themselves.
<i>Se,</i>	Himself, herself, itself, themselves.

This pronoun is of both genders and of both numbers ; it is called *reflected*, because it generally represents the action expressed by the verb, as reflected upon him who does it ; as, *il s'habille*, he dresses himself ; *elle se flatte*, she flatters herself ; *ils se ruinent*, they ruin themselves. *Se* always precedes the verb ; *soi* always follows it, being preceded by a preposition.

*Soi*, with reference to persons, is never used but when it relates to an indefinite subject. Ex. *Chacun pense à soi*, every one thinks of himself.

*Observations.*—1. The pronouns of the first and second persons are applied only to persons and to things that are personified.

Those of the third person are applied either to persons or things, whether these be personified or not.

2. *Tu, te* and *toi* are never used, except expressive of anger, contempt, or great intimacy. *Vous* is substituted for *tu* and *toi*; and though it belongs to the second person plural, and the verb that accompanies it is in the same number; yet if any noun qualifies it, that noun must be put in the singular. Ex.

*Vous êtes aimable,*

You are amiable.

3. The following pronouns

<i>Je, moi,</i> <i>Nous,</i> <i>Tu, toi,</i> <i>Il, lui,</i> <i>Ils, eux,</i> <i>Elle,</i> <i>Elles,</i>	} When rendered in English by	<i>I,</i> <i>We,</i> <i>Thou,</i> <i>He,</i> <i>They,</i> <i>She,</i> <i>They,</i>
--	----------------------------------	--

are always the *subjects* of the verb. *Vous, you*, may be the *subject* or *object* of the verb. It is the *subject*, when it performs the action expressed by the verb. Ex. *Vous aimez*, you love. It is its *object*, when it does not perform that action, but receives it either *directly* or *indirectly*: *directly*; that is to say, without the assistance of any preposition expressed or understood: *indirectly*; that is to say, with the assistance of a preposition expressed or understood. Ex. *Je vous aime*; that is to say, *J'aime vous*, I love you. *Je vous parle*; that is to say, *Je parle à vous*, I speak to you. In the first example, *vous* is governed *directly* by the verb *love*; in the second it is governed *indirectly* by the verb *speak*; that is to say, with the assistance of the preposition *to*, which is understood.

4. The pronouns *it* and *they* always take in French the gender of the nouns they represent. Ex. *Cette table est excellente, mais ELLE est chère*; this table is excellent, but it is dear. *A qui sont ces maisons? ELLES sont à moi*; whose houses are those? *They* are mine.

## EXERCISE

*On the Personal Pronouns which are the Subjects of the Verb.*

I love and adore the God of all goodness who created<sup>2</sup>  
 me<sup>1</sup>.——We<sup>1</sup> too<sup>3</sup> often<sup>4</sup> forget<sup>2</sup> the benefits\*  
 trop souvent oublions bienfaits que  
 we have received.——Ungrateful man!† thou<sup>1</sup> daily<sup>3</sup>  
 reçus tous les jours  
 offendest,<sup>2</sup> thou<sup>4</sup> daily<sup>6</sup> provokest<sup>5</sup> a God who never<sup>3</sup>  
 offenses provoques ne-jamais  
 ceases<sup>2</sup> to<sup>4</sup> load<sup>6</sup> thee<sup>5</sup> with new benefits.——O ye men!  
 cesse de combler de  
 who seem to concentrate your happiness in the plea-  
 qui semblez concentrer  
 sures of this transitory<sup>2</sup> life<sup>1</sup>, remember that you live<sup>2</sup>  
 cette passagère souvenez-vous que vivez  
 but<sup>3</sup> to die.——This picture is very old; but it  
 ne-que pour mourir Ce portrait, m. ancien  
 is well painted.——The house which I have bought is  
 bien peint que ai achetée  
 well situated, but I assure<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> that it cost<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> much.——  
 situé assure que coûte me beaucoup  
 The books which you saw in my library are good  
 que vîtes ma bibliothèque  
 books; but they are badly bound.——Your buckles  
 mal relié boucles, f.  
 (would be) much more in the fashion, if they were  
 seroient à mode, f. étoient  
 smaller.——My hat is quite new; but it is too large.——  
 Mon tout neuf trop grand  
 Their coach is old; but it is as good as if it were  
 Leur carrosse, m. vieux étoit  
 new.

*Observations.*—1. The pronouns *we* and *they*, when used in a general, vague, or indefinite sense, are elegantly translated into French by the indefinite pronoun *on*, which

\* Which is understood after the word *benefits*; but it must be expressed in French, and translated by *que*.

† The article is never placed before nouns representing those on whom we call, as it were by apostrophe, to listen to us.

always governs the verb in the singular, and is *generally*\* of the masculine gender. Ex. *On n'est jamais très malheureux, quand on a toujours la vertu pour compagne*; we are never very wretched, when we have virtue for our constant companion.

2. *On* is to be repeated before every verb upon which it acts as subject. Ex. *On joua, on chanta et l'on dansa jusqu'à deux heures du matin*; they played, sung and danced till two o'clock in the morning.

3. In order merely to soften the pronunciation, *l'on* is to be used instead of *on*, whenever it is preceded by *et*, and; *où*, where; *ou*, or; and *si*, if. The *l'* placed before the pronoun has no meaning at all. Ex. *Dites moi où l'on va*; tell me where they are going. If however *l'on* were to be followed by one of these pronouns *le*, *la*, *les* or *leur*, or by a word beginning with one of those monosyllables, the *l'* should be suppressed, in order to avoid a still greater harshness in the sounds. Ex. *Si on le lui donne*; if they give it to him. *Et on la loua tant que*, &c.; and they praised her so much that, &c. *Si l'on le lui donne; et l'on la loua*; would be intolerably harsh.

There are other cases in which the ear may claim *l'on* instead of *on*. Practice will make them known.

#### EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING OBSERVATIONS.

People imagine that, when they are rich, they are  
*On s'imagine que quand est*  
 happy; but they (are mistaken) very often; for the more  
*heureux se trompe très souvent car*  
 one has, the more one wishes to have.†——When we are  
*veut avoir*  
 (raised up) to honours, or we are invested with some  
*élevé ou que revêtu de quelque*

\* I say that *on* is *generally* of the masculine gender (instead of saying is *always*), because we find in the dictionary of the Academy this exception: "When it is clearly understood that the object represented by *on* is a woman, it must, in that case, be followed by a feminine. Ex. *On n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie*; we are not always young and pretty. *Quand on est jolie, on ne l'ignore pas*; when we are pretty we are conscious of it."

† I should advise learners not to pretend to translate one single sentence of this exercise before they have turned it as I do the following: *One imagines that when one is rich, one is happy; but one is mistaken very often; for more one has, more one wishes to have.*

dignity, we are to expect to be criticised. —  
*dignité, f. doit s'attendre à être critiqué*  
 (Some persons) reported last<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup> (that in)  
*On rapporta dernière semaine, f. qu'en*  
 France they talk of peace. — We are always humane,  
*parle*  
 charitable and compassionate when we have (acute  
*compatissant* feelings). — If we knew\* how abundant and solid  
*de sensibilité* are the consolations which religion offers, we should  
*savoit combien*  
 incessantly<sup>2</sup> recur<sup>3</sup> to that inexhaustible<sup>2</sup> spring<sup>1</sup>. —  
*sans cesse auroit recours cette intarissable source, f.*  
 When we are admired for our beauty, we (cannot  
*ne sauroit*  
 help) being<sup>3</sup> proud<sup>4</sup> (of it<sup>2</sup>). †  
*s'empêcher de être flatté en*

RULE 1. — The *personal pronouns* of the first and second persons being subjects to the verb, must be repeated before every verb, when these are in different tenses; but they may be repeated or not when the verbs are in the same tense, except the second be followed by its object; for then they must be repeated. Ex.

<i>Je crois et je croirai toute ma vie que, &amp;c.</i>	I believe, and shall for ever believe that, &c.
<i>J'estime, je respecte et j'aime votre sœur,</i>	I esteem, respect and love your sister.
<i>J'estime, respecte et aime votre sœur,</i>	I esteem, respect and love your sister.
<i>J'estime votre sœur, et je la respecte,</i>	I esteem your sister, and I respect her.

## EXERCISE.

I complain and shall continue to complain of the  
*me plains continuerai à me plaindre*  
 imprudence of your conduct, unless I see you  
*à moins que je ne voie que*  
 follow my advice. — You tell<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> and have<sup>3</sup> often<sup>3</sup>  
*suivez mes conseils dites*

\* See Observation 2, page 73.

† See the note\*, Observation 1, page 73.

repeated<sup>4</sup> (to me<sup>1</sup>) that you love<sup>2</sup> and<sup>3\*4 5</sup> will ever<sup>8</sup>  
*répété me que aimez en*  
 love<sup>7</sup> me<sup>6</sup>.—I believe<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, and thank<sup>3</sup> you<sup>1</sup> (for<sup>2</sup> it).  
*aimerez crois remercie en*  
 —We entered the garden, we saw peaches, plums and  
*entrâmes† vîmes*  
 pears, and we gathered the finest.  
*cueillîmes*

**RULE 2.**—In general the personal pronouns of the third persons may be repeated or not, whether the verbs be in the same or in different tenses. **Ex.**

*Il parle et écrit élégamment,*      He speaks and writes ele-  
 or *Il parle et il écrit élé-*      gantly.  
*gamment,*

**Exceptions.**—1. From this rule are to be excepted the sentences in which, in order to lay more stress upon the verbs, when there are several following one another, we suppress the conjunction *et* before the last; for in this case the pronoun must be repeated before every verb. **Ex.** *Il craint, il tremble, il s'agite, il se désespère ; pour lui plus de consolation :* he fears, he trembles, he is agitated, he despairs; for him there is no more consolation.

2. When there are several verbs following one another, and we wish to give rapidity to the narration, we do not repeat the pronoun. **Ex.** *Il va, vient, retourne sur ses pas et ne s'arrête que, &c. ;* he goes, returns, retraces his steps, and never stops until, &c.

EXERCISE.

A good dog pays<sup>2</sup> no<sup>1</sup> attention<sup>3</sup> to those people  
*fait ne (aucune attention) aux gens*  
 who are<sup>2</sup> neither<sup>3</sup> friends nor foes, and declares  
*qui ne-ni ni ennemis déclare*  
 war against those who are troublesome by profession :  
*la guerre à ceux importuns par état*

\* That you are understood in English after *and* ; they must be expressed in French. The figures 4 and 5 point out the order in which they are to be placed in the sentence.

† We cannot say in French *to enter the garden, to enter an apartment,* but *to enter into*—ENTRER DANS. Therefore the preposition **DANS** must be used after *nous entrâmes*.

he<sup>1</sup> knows<sup>3</sup> them<sup>2</sup> (by their) clothes, their voices, their manners, and keeps<sup>2</sup> them<sup>1</sup> at a proper<sup>2</sup> distance<sup>1</sup>. —  
*aux habits à la voix à leurs gestes tient les à convenable distance, f.*

(How many) traitors we constantly<sup>2</sup> meet<sup>1</sup> in  
*Combien traître, m. constamment rencontrons dans société ! — Traitors to their consciences, traitors to those — té, f. leurs ceux*

they call their friends. — Do they<sup>3</sup> see<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>? —  
*qu'ils appellent leurs voient*

They<sup>1</sup> accost<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup>, take<sup>5</sup> you<sup>4</sup> by the hand, embrace<sup>2</sup>  
*accostent prennent par embrassent*  
 you<sup>1</sup>, make<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> a thousand offers of services, embrace<sup>3</sup>  
*offre*

you<sup>1</sup> again<sup>3</sup>, leave<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, meet other people,  
*encore quittent rencontrent d'autres personnes*  
 speak of you, candidly<sup>2</sup> say<sup>1\*</sup> they hate<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>,  
*parlent sincèrement disent haïssent*

and conclude by poisoning what is<sup>2</sup> most<sup>3</sup> precious<sup>4</sup>  
*finissent empoisonner ce qui est le plus*  
 (to you<sup>1</sup>)—your reputation.  
*vous reputation, f.*

**RULE 3.**—The personal pronouns, subjects of the verbs, of whatever person they may be, are not to be repeated before verbs preceded by the conjunction *ni*, neither, nor.  
**Ex.**

*Il est très malade ; il ne mange, ni ne boit, ni ne dort ; †*      He is very ill ; he neither eats, drinks nor sleeps.

#### EXERCISE.

Your sister does not<sup>4</sup> resemble<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup> ; she is neither informed, nor anxious for information ; she neither ‡ reads  
*ressemble instruit jaloux de s'instruire lit*

\* That is understood after the verb *say*, and must be translated into French by *que*.

† Whenever a verb is either preceded or followed by a negative conjunction, pronoun or adverb, the particle *ne* must be placed before the verb ; and if neither, nor, precede the verbs, the particle *ne* alone is put before the first, and both *ni ne* before every one of the others.

‡ Read the above note †.



nor writes. — We neither love nor esteem Miss Turner; she (speaks ill) of every body; she pities no one, and tramples under foot the most sacred duties of religion.\* — Bonaparte neither loved nor esteemed any man, he despised<sup>2</sup> them<sup>1</sup> all<sup>3</sup>.

écrit                      aimons                      estimons  
 dit du mal                      tout le monde                      (a pitié de)  
 personne                      foule                      aux pieds                      devoir, m.  
 of religion.\* —                      aimoit                      estimoit

aucun                      méprisoit les                      tout

On the Pronouns *je* and *moi*, *I*; *tu* and *toi*, *thou*; *il* and *lui*, *he*; *ils* and *eux*, *they*.

RULE 4.—1. *I*, *thou*, *he* and *they* are always to be translated by *je*, *tu*, *il* and *ils*, when the verb to which they stand as subjects is expressed. They are, on the contrary, to be translated by *moi*, *toi*, *lui* and *eux*, whenever the verb is understood. Ex.

Je sais qu'IL est riche,	I know he is rich.
Sers fidèlement ton Dieu, et	Serve thy God faithfully,
TU seras heureux,	and thou shalt be happy.
Qui a lu cette lettre?—LUI;	Who has read this letter?
	—He.
Qui parloit?—MOI,	Who was speaking?—I.
Qui viendra avec vous?—	Who will come with you?
EUX;	They.

In the two first examples, *I* and *thou* are followed by the verbs of which they are the subjects; that is to say, by *know* and *shall be*; on the contrary, in the three last, *has read* is understood after *he*; *was speaking*, after *I*; and *will come*, after *they*.

2. *I*, *thou*, *he*, *they*, must be translated by *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *eux*, whenever they are followed by one of these pronouns, *who*, *whom*, or *that*, preceded or not by a preposition, and even in those sentences in which *who*, *whom*, or *that*, is understood. Ex.

C'est MOI qui l'ai fait,	It is I who have done it.
Voudrois-tu l'offenser? TOI	Wouldst thou offend him?
qu'il comble de bienfaits!	Thou whom he loads
	with benefits!
Qui l'a dit?—C'est moi,	Who said it?—It was I.

In the last example, *who said it* is understood after *it was I*.

\* Turn the last part of the sentence thus: *the duties the most sacred*, &c.

3. Whenever a verb has two or more pronouns as its subjects, or if one or two pronouns are accompanied by one or several nouns, and they all act as subjects to the verb, *moi, toi, lui* and *eux* must be used instead of *je, tu, il* and *ils*.

*Observation.*—If the pronouns used in the sentence as subjects to the verb are of different persons, or if *moi* or *toi* is joined to a noun, an additional pronoun must be placed before the verb, and that pronoun will be in the plural, in order to represent all the subjects of the verb. This additional pronoun must be the plural of that one in the sentence which is the nearest to the first person, and of course it shall be *nous*, if *I* is one of them. Ex.

TOI et MOI, NOUS serons  
toujours bons amis,

TOI et LUI, VOUS serez  
punis,

L'AMBASSADEUR et MOI,  
NOUS dinâmes ensemble  
hier,

ELLE et NOUS, NOUS en  
fûmes très fâchés,

Mon FRERE et LUI par-  
tirent hier pour Paris,\*

Thou and I shall always be  
good friends.

Thou and he shall be pu-  
nished.

The Ambassador and I  
dined together yester-  
day.

She and we were very  
sorry for it.

My brother and he set off  
yesterday for Paris.

4. *Moi* is sometimes joined to *je*; *toi* to *tu*; *lui* to *il*; and *eux* to *ils* in order to give more energy to the sentence, or to point out more forcibly an opposition; and *moi, toi, lui* and *eux* may be placed either after or before the verb. In the sentences in which an opposition is to be marked, the double pronoun is only used in the second member. Ex.

Il dit qu'il est innocent; et  
JE maintiens MOI, or et  
MOI JE maintiens qu'il  
est coupable,

MOI à qui il fait tant de  
mal, JE cherche toutes les  
occasions de le servir,

Vous riez, et EUX, ILS pleu-  
rent,

He says he is innocent; as  
to me, I maintain he is  
guilty.

I to whom he does so much  
harm, I seek every op-  
portunity to serve him.

You laugh and they cry.

\* In the last example there is no additional pronoun, because *my brother* and *he* are both of the same person; that is to say, of the third, and govern the verb in the third person plural.

*Observation.*—Sometimes *je* does not appear in the sentence; but it is understood. And this generally happens when the sentence is exclamative. Ex.

*Moi, trahir le meilleur des amis!* I, betray the best of friends!

*Etre capable d'un tel crime, moi!* I, be guilty of such a crime!

That is to say, *Moi JE VOUDROIS trahir le meilleur des amis! JE pourrais être capable, &c.*

## EXERCISE.

Who (was calling<sup>2</sup>) me<sup>1</sup>? It was not I.—The boy  
*appeloit me Ce ne-pas*  
 wants (to speak<sup>2</sup>) to you<sup>1</sup>.—I, who am older than he,  
*désire parler en âgé lui*  
 I go and speak<sup>2</sup> (to him<sup>1</sup>)! No, I will not go;  
*aller en lui Non veux*  
 (let him come) himself.—It is I who am to be  
*qu'il vienne lui-même dois en*  
 rewarded instead of him.—My father commanded the  
*récompensé au lieu commandoit*  
 horse, and I commanded the foot.—He could not  
*cavalerie, f. infanterie, f. put*  
 do<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup> in one day, and I did it in the space of  
*faire le en ai fait dans espace, m.*  
 three hours.—When the enemy appeared, my compa-  
*heure, f. parut mes*  
 nions (ran away) and I remained alone.—My bro-  
*prire la fuite restai seul*  
 thers, sisters and I\* went yesterday to the concert.—  
*allâmes concert, m.*  
 You and your sister are engaged to dine to-morrow with  
*à dîner*  
 Mr. Donallon. —How darest thou answer thy  
*Comment oses répondre à ton*  
 master in so<sup>3</sup> insolent<sup>4</sup> a<sup>1</sup> manner<sup>2</sup>? thou whom he loves,  
*de si insolent manière, f. que aime*  
 thou for whom he takes so much pains.—He and  
*pour qui prend peine, f.*  
 they, not (being able) to agree, were obliged  
*pouvant s'accorder furent obligé*

\* See Rule 4, Part 3, and the Observation, page 78.

to part. — It is I who wrote the letter; but it is  
*de se séparer* *ai écrit* *lettre, f.*  
 he who carried<sup>2</sup> it'. — It is<sup>2</sup> 'neither<sup>3</sup> I, nor thou, nor  
*a portée la* *Ce* *ne-ni* *ni*  
 he, who have broken the windows; but it is they who  
*avons cassé* *fenêtre, f.* *ce*  
 have<sup>2</sup> done<sup>3</sup> it'.  
*ont fait le*

*On the Personal Pronouns Objects of the Verb.*

These pronouns may be, as it has been observed before, either *direct* or *indirect* objects of the verb.

They are *direct objects* of the verb when they are governed *directly* by the verb, and not with the assistance of a preposition either expressed or understood. Ex.

*Je vous estime,*

I esteem you.

They are *indirect objects* of the verb, whenever they are governed indirectly by the verb; that is to say, with the assistance of a preposition expressed or understood. Ex.

*Je LUI parlerai*; that is to  
 say, *je parlerai A LUI*, ou  
 A ELLE;

I shall speak *to him* or *to her*.

*Je vous donne ce livre*;  
 that is to say, *je donne*  
*ce livre A VOUS*;

I give you this book; that  
 is to say, *I give this book*  
*to you*.

*Pronouns Objects of the Verb.*

*Me* or *moi* (direct or indirect),

Me or to me.

*Te* or *toi* (direct or indirect),

Thee or to thee.

*Le* (direct),

Him or it.

*La* (direct),

Her or it.

*Lui* (indirect),

To him, to her, to it.\*

*Nous* (direct or indirect),

Us or to us.

*Vous* (direct or indirect),

You or to you.

*Les* (direct),

Them.

*Leur* (indirect),

To them.\*

\* The preposition *to* being often understood in English before these pronouns, it may not be easy for the learner to know whether they are *direct* or *indirect* objects of the verb. The suppression of the preposition never takes place but when the verb governs both a direct object and an indirect one; the former representing the thing spoken of, and the latter the person. When the object of the verb which represents the person comes

*Of the Place these Pronouns are to have in a Sentence with respect to the Verb.*

**RULE 5.**—In French these pronouns are generally to be placed before the verb; and if the verb is in a compound tense, they are to precede the auxiliary verb. *Ex.*

*Je LA respecterai toujours,* I shall always respect *her*.  
*Je LUI ai envoyé la lettre,* I have sent *him* the letter.

## EXERCISE.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good book, and  
*acheta*  
 after having read it, he gave it to my sister.—You speak  
*après avoir lu le donna ma*  
 of my cousin, do you<sup>3</sup> know<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup>?—I see her and  
*mon en connoissez vois*  
 speak to her (every day).—Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> your  
*parle tous les jours en savez vos*  
 lessons?—We know them all.—I (will carry) them  
*leçon, f. savons tout menerai*  
 to my brothers, but I (will write) to them before.—  
*chez mes écrirai auparavant*  
 I find him more reasonable than his sister.—Your  
*trouve raisonnable sa*  
 dog (is thirsty); shall I<sup>2</sup> give<sup>1</sup> him water? \*—  
*chien, m. a soif en donnerai*  
 They are fatigued, and I give them rest.  
*fatigué donne repos, m.*

**RULE 6.**—Whenever the verb *commands* in the second person singular, in the first and second persons plural, all these pronouns must be placed after the verb, and be united to it by a hyphen; and then *moi* and *toi* are always used instead of *me* and *te*. *Ex.*

*Dites-MOI*, tell me.

*Parlons-LUI*, let us speak to him, or to her.

*Habillez-MOI*, dress me.

*Récompensez-LES*, reward them.

immediately after the verb, the preposition *to* is suppressed. In such a case make an inversion, place the noun expressive of the thing next to the verb, then bring in the pronoun; and the preposition that was in ellipsis will necessarily appear, and show that this pronoun is indirect object to the verb. *Ex.* He gave her one guinea; that is to say, he gave one guinea to her: *il LUI donna une guinée.*

\* Read attentively the note at the bottom of the preceding page.

*Observation.*—Whenever the verb *forbids*, instead of *commanding*, the pronouns must be placed before the verb, according to Rule 5. Ex.

<i>Ne ME parle pas,</i>	Do not speak to me.
<i>Ne L'envoyez pas demain,</i>	Do not send it to-morrow.
<i>Ne ME dites pas,</i>	Do not tell me.

## EXERCISE.

Send them some apples; but do not send them  
*Envoyez*  
 any plums.—I give you these books; but do not lend  
*prune, f. donne ces prêtez*  
 them to your brother.—You may tell it to my  
*votre pouvez dire mon*  
 father; but do not tell it to my mother.—Believe me,  
*dites ma Croyez*  
 go and speak to them; but do not insult them.—  
*allez parler insultez*  
 Have you returned to her the handkerchief which she has  
*rendu mouchoir, m.*  
 lent you?—Send it to-morrow, do not forget it.—  
*prété demain oubliez*  
 Bring me some chocolate, but bring me no sugar.\*—  
*Apportez chocolat, m.*  
 I have seen her.  
*rue*

**RULE 7.**—When two verbs joined by either of these conjunctions, *et*, and; *ou*, or; command in the second person singular, or in the first or second person plural, the pronoun or pronouns, object or objects of the last verb, may very elegantly be placed before it. Ex.

<i>Ecrivez-moi; et ME faites</i>	Write to me; and let me
<i>savoir quand vous vien-</i>	know when you will
<i>drez;</i>	come.

*Observation.*—The verbs *penser à*, *songer à*, to think of; *courir à*, *accourir à*, to run to; *venir à*, to come to; *préférer à*, to prefer to; *se fier à*, to trust to; and other reflexive verbs which govern two pronouns, the one directly, the other indirectly; that is to say, with the assistance of the preposition *à*, to; require that the pronoun governed by the preposition *à* should be placed, being preceded by

\* Read the second part of Rule 14, and the first example, page 26.

that preposition, after the verb, though the other pronoun, which is governed directly by the verb, be placed before it, according to Rule 5. Ex.

*Je me fie* A VOUS,

I trust to you.

*Nous pensons* A VOUS,

We think of you.

*Vous la préférez* A MOI,

You prefer her to me.

## EXERCISE.

Bring me my hat, or send it to me by the carrier.—

Trust <sup>mon</sup> to him, but do not trust to them, and do not <sup>par</sup> *Fiez-vous* <sup>voiturier, m.</sup>

believe them.—Think of us and write to us as soon

*croyez* <sup>Pensez à</sup> as you can.—Go and see her, and carry her

*que* <sup>pourrez</sup> *Allez* <sup>en</sup> *voir* <sup>portez</sup> these flowers.—Send me my clock, or bring it to me

*ces fleurs, f.* <sup>horloge, f.</sup> yourself.—Do not give it to my sister, give it to me.

*vous-même* <sup>en</sup> *donnez* Why do you prefer her to me, and give her all your

<sup>en</sup> *préférer* affection?\*

*A Table of the Pronouns Objects of the Verb.*

First Person Singular, masculine and feminine.

The order to be given to these pronouns with respect to each other.

Me or to me, *me, moi,*†

*Me le, me la, me les, m'y, m'en, m'y en, le moi, la moi, les moi.*

First Person Plural, masculine and feminine.

Us or to us, *nous,*

*Nous le, nous la, nous les, nous y, nous l'y, nous les y, nous en, nous y en.*

Second Person Singular, masculine and feminine.

Thee or to thee, *te* or *toi,*†

*Te le, te la, te les, t'y, t'en, t'y en.*

\* Repeat the pronoun *you* after the verb *give*.

† *Moi* and *toi* are never used but after the verb: that is to say, when it commands, or *when they are preceded by a preposition*.

## Second Person Plural, masculine and feminine.

The order to be given to these pronouns with respect to each other.

You or to you, *vous*,

*Vous le, vous la, vous les,  
vous y, vous en, vous y en.*

## Third Person Singular, masculine.

Him, it, *le*,

To him, to it, *lui*,

*Le lui, la lui, les lui, le*

*leur, le moi, lui en, l'y.*

## Third Person Singular, feminine.

Her, it, *la*,

To her, to it, *lui*,

*La lui, la leur, la moi, le*

*lui, l'y, lui en.*

## Third Person Plural, masculine and feminine.

Them, *les*,

To them, *leur*,

*Les en, les y, le leur, la*

*leur, leur en, leur y en.*

*The Order which the Pronouns Objects of the Verbs must keep with respect to each other.*

RULE 8.—Whenever a verb governs two of these pronouns, if both are not of the third person, the pronoun, which is the indirect object of the verb, comes first, and the other after it, *if they are to be placed before the verb.*  
Ex.

*Il ME LE prête,*

*Je VOUS le promets,*

He lends it to me.

I promise it to you.

But if they are to be placed after the verb, then they keep, in French, the same order they have in English. Ex.

*Donnez LE MOI,*

*Montrez LES NOUS,*

Give it to me.

Show them to us.

## EXERCISE.

My brother (will send) them to you, or he (will bring) *enverra* *apportera*  
them to you himself.—I asked yesterday a favour *sollicitai* *grace, f.*  
of our gracious king, and he granted it to me.—Have *bon* *accorda*  
you bought the watch (of which) you spoke to me last<sup>2</sup>  
*acheté* *dont* *parlâtes*



week<sup>1</sup>? Yes, I have bought it. — Will you  
*achetée* *Voulez*  
 show it to me? Very willingly; my daughter  
*montrer* *volontiers*  
 (will go for it). — Emma, my watch is in the next<sup>2</sup>  
*ira la chercher* *dans* *voisin*  
 room<sup>1</sup>; bring it to me. (Here it is), mother. — Give  
*La voici* *ma mère*  
 it to me.

RULE 9.—If both pronouns are of the third person, the one that is the direct object of the verb comes first, and the indirect object comes after it, as in English, whether they are to be placed before or after the verb. Ex.

<i>Nous</i> LE LEUR <i>donnons</i> ,	We give <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> .
<i>Il</i> LE LUI <i>dira</i> ,	He will tell <i>it</i> to <i>her</i> .
<i>Envoyez</i> LE LUI,	Send <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> or to <i>her</i> .
<i>Donnons</i> LE LEUR,	Let us give <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> .

## EXERCISE.

How do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> that he likes my house? \*  
*Comment* *savez*  
 We showed it to him last<sup>2</sup> Monday<sup>1</sup>. — (Here is)  
*fines voir* *dernier Lundi* *Voici*  
 the book; carry it to them. — My captain wishes to  
*Mon capitaine désire* *et*  
 sell his horse; your father offered to buy it; but the  
*a offert de acheter*  
 captain refuses to sell it to him. — If they ask a  
*refuse* *vendre* *demandent*  
 favour, will<sup>1</sup> you<sup>2</sup> refuse<sup>1</sup> it to them? — Where is your  
*et* *refuserez*  
 sister? She is in the garden. — Take this fan  
*éventail*, m.  
 and carry it to her.

## Y and EN.

These pronouns are used to represent *persons, things and places*, and follow the same rules as the above pronouns objects of the verbs.

\* Turn the sentence thus; *that my house pleases him; that is to say, to him—que ma maison lui plaît.*

**Y** is used with the signification of *to him, to her, to it, to them, in him, in her, in it, in them, &c.; there, thither, in or to that place.*

**EN** is used instead of *some, any, of him, of her, of it, of them, from him, from her, from it, from them, from here, from there, &c.*

**RULE 10.**—1. According to the preceding rules **Y** and **EN** are to be placed before the verb, except when it commands in the second person singular, first and second persons plural.

2. When they are placed in the same sentence with any of the above pronouns objects of the verbs, they always come after them; and when **Y** and **EN** meet in the same sentence, **EN** is always placed the last. **Ex.**

<i>Il vous dira de belles paroles ;</i>	He will tell you fine words ;
<i>mais ne vous y fiez pas ;</i>	but do not trust to them.
<i>Nous vous y verrons ;</i>	We shall see you there.
<i>A-t-il des amis ? Oui, il en a ;</i>	Has he any friends ? Yes, he has some.
<i>Vous avez de beaux fruits,</i>	You have fine fruit, give
<i>donnez-m'en ;</i>	me some.
<i>Je vous y en enverrai ;</i>	I will send you some thi- ther.

**Observations.**—1. *Moi* being immediately followed by *en*, must be changed into *m'*, and instead of *moi en*, we say *m'en*.

2. We but very seldom make use of the pronoun **Y** in speaking of persons: we then have recourse to the personal pronouns, as in this sentence, *C'est un honnête homme ; attachez-vous à lui* : he is an honest man ; attach yourself to him. However custom allows us to say, *Je connois cet homme, je ne m'y fie pas* ; I know that man, I do not trust to him,

#### EXERCISE

##### Upon the Pronoun **Y**.

I never (will consent) to it ; and I neither will  
*ne-jamais consentirai* *ne-ni veux*  
 speak nor write to him.\*—Believe me, go and see  
*parler ni écrire* *Croyez allez*

\* The pronoun *to him* must be repeated before *write*.

them, do not confide in it.—We have forced them to  
*fiez vous* *avons forcés*  
 it.—I (will carry) my brother thither.—He  
*menera*  
 (will carry) them to you thither himself.—Did you  
*portera* *Avez*  
 think of what you had promised me?—No, but I  
*pensé à ce que* *aviez promis* *Non*  
 (will think of it).—It is a good book; we read excel-  
*penserai y* *C'est* *on lit*  
 lent things (in it).—Our orchards are very fruitful,  
*chose, f.* *y* *Nos verger, m.* *fertile*  
 we see all sorts of fruits (in them).—Since those  
*on voit* *sorte* *fruit, m.* *y* *Puisque ces*  
 people have deceived you, do not trust them (any more).  
*gens* *trompé* *vous fiez* *plus*  
 —When a friend is dead, we<sup>2</sup> often<sup>1</sup> think<sup>4</sup> (of<sup>6</sup> him)  
*mort on souvent pense à lui*  
 no<sup>3</sup> longer<sup>5</sup>.  
*ne plus*

## EXERCISE

## Upon the Pronoun EN.

I have heard that your uncle is arrived, and I am  
*ouï dire* *arrivé*  
 very glad of it.—She spoke to him of it.—Talk no  
*aise* *parla* *Parlez ne*  
 more of it, for I will (not hear) of it (any more).  
*plus* *car* *veux ne entendre parler* *plus*  
 —I thank you (for it).—Do you not see the  
*remercie* *en* *voyez*  
 beauty of it?—They are sorry for it.—Since  
*sont fâchés* *Puisque*  
 you have no pears in your garden, I (will send) you  
*ne-pas poire, f.* *enverrai*  
 some.—They have stolen from us the greatest part  
*ont volé* *partie, f.*  
 of them.—My brother has written a letter to your  
*Mon* *écrit*  
 sister, and shown me the two first lines of it.—  
*a montré* *ligne, f.*

\* The sentence being interrogative, the pronoun *you*, which is subject of the verb *to see*, must come after that verb. Say then *not of it see you not*, &c. ?

Will you lend me some books? With all my heart;  
*Voulez prêter des De cœur, m.*  
 I will lend you some very pretty ones.——Do you?  
*prêterai en de très joli en en*  
 think<sup>1</sup> that she has spoken to him of it?——If I had  
*croyez ait parlé avois*  
 money, I (would give) you some, but you know as well as  
*donnerois mais savez*  
 I do how scarce it is now.——Send me none.  
*en combien rare à présent Envoyez ne en pas*  
 ——Have you any?——Do you remember it?\*

*Avez en en souvenez-vous en*

*On the Pronouns le, la, les.*

*Observation.*—These pronouns are often used in French to prevent the repetition of one or more words, and supply their place. In English they are either not expressed, or rendered by *so*. Ex.

*Est-elle belle? Oui, elle L'est ;* Is she handsome? Yes, she is.

*Il est riche, mais nous ne LE sommes pas ;* He is rich, but we are not so.

**RULE 11.**—Whenever a noun substantive, not used adjectively, is either understood in English, or rendered by *so*, it is to be expressed in French by one of these pronouns *le, la, les*, according to the gender and number of the substantive of which it takes the place. *Le* is for the masculine singular, *la* for the feminine singular, and *les* for the plural and for both genders. Ex.

*Cette jeune demoiselle est-elle votre fille? Oui, elle l'est ;* Is that young lady your daughter? Yes, she is.

*Etes-vous la nièce de mon ami? Oui, je la suis ;* Are you my friend's niece? Yes, I am.

#### EXERCISE.

Are you my friend Mr. D.'s son? Yes, I am.——Are you the mother of that fine child? No, I am not.——

Ladies, are you Mr. Brown's aunts? Yes, we are.——  
*Mesdames*

\* Say, yourself of it remember you?—VOUS EN, &c.

(Is this) your book? Yes it is.\*—(It is said) that  
*Est-ce là c'est lui On dit*  
 you are the son of my neighbour Mr. Peter, are you so?  
*voisin, m. Pierre*

Yes, Sir, I am.—Are you the sister of Mrs.  
*Monsieur Madame*  
 Adams? Yes, I am.—She is very amiable, and so are  
*aimable*

you also.—Are you the ladies whom my mother  
*aussi dame que*  
 expects? Yes, we are.—These young people are the  
*attend Ces jeune gens*  
 scholars whom you have taught? Yes, Madam,  
*écolier enseignés*

(they are).—(Is that) the horse which you bought  
*ce sont-eux Est-ce là cheval, m. que*  
 from my brother? Yes, (it is).—(Are these) the  
*de c'est lui Sont-ce là*  
 houses which you built? Yes, they are.—  
*que avez fait bâtir ce sont elles*

Are you the widow of Mr. B.? Yes, I am.

RULE 12.—If *so* takes the place of an adjective or adjectives, of a substantive used adjectively, of a verb, or of any part of a sentence; or if an adjective or adjectives, a substantive used adjectively, a verb or any part of a sentence is completely understood in English, every one of them must be expressed in French by *le*, which remains invariable, as adjectives and verbs cannot communicate any gender or number, but only receive them. Ex.

<i>Vous m'avez crue belle,</i>	You have thought me hand-
<i>mais je ne le suis pas ;</i>	some, but I am not.
<i>Etes-vous veuve ? Non, je</i>	Are you a widow ? No, I
<i>ne le suis pas ; †</i>	<i>am not.</i>

\* In this sentence, and in all others like it, the verb *être* being preceded by the pronoun *ce*, the noun, which is understood in English, must be rendered in French by *lui, elle, eux* or *elles*, according to the gender and number of the noun which they represent, and not by *le, la, les*. Ex.

Is that your house? Yes, it is. *Est-ce là votre maison ? Oui, c'est elle.*

That is to say, *it is it*. *Ce l'est*, would not be French.

† The substantive *veuve* being taken in this sentence in an indeterminate, in an indefinite sense, performs the part of an adjective.

## EXERCISE.

My brothers were ill yesterday, and are so still  
*Mes malade hier encore*  
 to-day.——I am satisfied with my fate, but my sister  
*aujourd'hui content de sort, m. ma*  
 is not so with hers.—I had heard that your sister was  
*du sien avoir ouï dire que étoit*  
 married; but my cousin tells me that she is not. — Our  
*marié mon dit Notre*  
 master rewards us when we deserve it.——Children  
*récompense méritons*  
 ought to apply to their studies (as much) as they  
*doivent s'appliquer leurs études autant*  
 can.——I thought your brother was diligent, but I  
*peuvent croyois étoit*  
 mistook; for he is not and <sup>1</sup>never<sup>4</sup> will be<sup>3</sup> so<sup>2</sup>.——  
*me suis trompé ne-jamais sera*  
 Are you a mother? Yes, I am.

RULE 13.—The pronouns objects of the verb, being governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated in French before every governing verb, though generally expressed but once in English. Ex.

*Votre fils vous aime et vous craint,* Your son loves and fears you.  
*Je LE plains et L'encourage,* I pity and encourage him.

## EXERCISE.

You have very fine roses in your garden; when I shall  
*avez serai*  
 be in the country, pray send me some.—May God  
*à campagne de grace envoyez Que Dieu*  
 bless and reward her! said the prince.——Our mas-  
*bénisse récompense dit*  
 ter rewards and punishes us when we deserve it.——  
*punit méritons*  
 Beauty<sup>2</sup> often<sup>1</sup> seduces and deceives us.——A<sup>1</sup>  
*Beauté, f. souvent séduit trompe*  
 (well<sup>3</sup>-bred) child<sup>2</sup>, who knows the extent of his duties  
*bien-né connoît étendue ses devoir*  
 towards his parents, far from offending and vexing  
*envers parent loin de offenser de molester*

them, cherishes, loves, honours, respects and obeys  
*chérit aime honore respecte obéit*  
 them.\*  
*leur.*

RULE 14.—The following personal pronouns *me, te, se, le, la, les* et *leur* can never be used after a preposition. We cannot say, *j'étois avec LE, avec LA, avec LES*, I was with him, with her, with them; or *il a parlé pour ME, pour TE, pour LEUR, ou pour LES*, he has spoken for me, for thee, for them; but we must use the personal pronouns *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, eux* or *elles*, and say, *j'étois avec LUI, avec ELLE, avec EUX; il a parlé pour MOI, pour TOI, pour EUX, ou pour ELLES*.

## EXERCISE.

The nosegay, which I gathered in our garden, is  
*bouquet, m. que ai cueilli*  
 for her, and not for him.—He was with me when  
*pour non-pas étoit*  
 he received a letter from them.—If he do not come  
*reçut lettre, f. vient*  
 soon, we (will set out) without him.—Your sisters  
*bientôt partirons sans Vos*  
 have displeased me; I am very angry with them.—  
*mécontenté fâché contre*  
 Your brothers have broken these windows; I am sure of  
*Vos cassé ces sûr*  
 it; for I was behind them; and John was with me.  
*car derrière Jean*

*Recapitulatory Exercise on the Personal Pronouns.*

I (shall send) you to-morrow the books which I have  
*enverrai que ai*  
 promised you: if they please you, I advise you to  
*promis plaisent conseille*  
 buy them: you (will find) them at Mr. Barry's.—  
*acheter trouverez chez*  
 Your eldest<sup>2</sup> brother<sup>1</sup> has assured us that Miss  
*assuré Mademoiselle*

\* *Them* must be rendered in French by *leur* before *obeys*; as we say in French *obéir à quelqu'un*, and not *obéir quelqu'un*.

Sophia W. is in London: write to her, and invite her  
*Sophie à écrivez engagez*  
 to come and stay some time with us.—I have  
*à venir & passer quelque-temps*  
 received two letters from my brothers: if Miss W. refuse  
*reçu de mes*  
 to come, I shall send them to her: she (will read) them  
*de venir lira*  
 with pleasure.—I (shall write) to them myself, and  
*écrirai moi-même*  
 tell them\* that you (are recovering); that you are much  
*dirai leur que vous vous rétablissez*  
 better.—(Let us defend ourselves) my friends;  
*mieux portant Défendons-nous mes*  
 let us defend ourselves with courage against the enemies  
*contre*  
 that attack us and pretend to conquer us.—  
*attaquent prétendent vaincre*  
 (Let us force) them to confess that our valour, (as well as)  
*Forçons avouer notre courage ainsi que*  
 our love for our king, our country, and the holy<sup>2</sup>  
*amour pour notre patrie*  
 religion<sup>1</sup> of our ancestors, make us invincible.—I pity  
*pères rendent invincibles plains*  
 with all my heart the (modest<sup>2</sup> poor<sup>1</sup> WHO ARE  
*de tout mon cœur honteux. pauvres & &*  
 ASHAMED TO BEG).—I love, esteem and respect them,  
*& & aime estime respecte*  
 and give them the relief that (lies in my power).  
*les secours qui dépendent de moi*  
 —When a Roman general received the honours (of a)  
*Quand Romain général recevoit du*  
 triumph, a herald told him (now and then),  
*triomphe, m. héraut disoit de temps en temps*  
 “Recollect that thou art mortal.”—Let us always<sup>2</sup>  
*Souviens-toi es mortel & &*  
 submit<sup>1</sup> with resignation to the decrees of divine  
*soumettons-nous décrets*  
 providence.—Lend me thy book; I (shall return) it to  
*Prête ton rendrai*

\* The verb *dire* requires the noun or pronoun representing the person that is its object, to be preceded by the preposition *à* either expressed or understood; therefore say, and shall tell to them . . .



thee to-morrow; do not refuse it me. — Carry this  
*refuse* *Portez ce*

pencil to my sister, and present it to her politely. —  
*crayon, m. ma présente poliment*

Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> Miss V.? Yes, we were speaking  
*connoissez Oui parlions*

(of her). — You know Mr. D.; have you seen him  
*en avez vu*

lately? — Do not speak to me (of him). — I can  
*depuis peu parlez en Je ne puis*

neither esteem nor respect him. — (Here are) apples  
*ni estimer ni respecter Voici*

and pears: take some, taste them; you will find them  
*prenez-en goûtez trouverez*

excellent: (I shall buy others) to-morrow, and send  
*J'en achèterai d'autres*

you some. — The (ambitious man) torments and  
*ambitieux tourmenter*

consumes himself to obtain places or honours; and  
*consumer se pour obtenir places ou*

when he has obtained them, he is not yet satisfied.  
*quand obtenus encore satisfait*

— Have you received any money? Yes, I have.  
*reçu J'en ai reçu*

— Will you give me some fruit? With all my heart.  
*Voulez donner du De*

— I shall never<sup>2</sup> consent<sup>1</sup> to that foolish  
*ne-jamais consentirai ce sot*

scheme; do not speak to me (any more) of it. — Tell  
*projet, m. plus Dites*

me candidly; did you<sup>3</sup> not<sup>4</sup> think<sup>2</sup> he was a pru-  
*franchement que c'étoit*

dent<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup>? Yes, I did. — Well, you see he is  
*je le croyois Hé bien voyez qu'il*

not so. — (To love) a<sup>2</sup> person<sup>3</sup> truly<sup>1</sup> is<sup>4</sup>  
*Aimer personne, f. sincèrement c'est*

to render that person all the services (in our  
*rendre à cette personne service, m. qui dépendent*

power). — Are you not married, Madam? No, Sir, I am  
*de nous mariée*

not. — You are (if I am not mistaken) the cousin of  
*si je ne me trompe cousine, f.*

Mrs. Good? Yes, I am. — I have been told she is very  
*On m'a dit qu'elle*

well informed. She is, Sir, and will be more so still; for  
*instruit* *encore car*

she is<sup>1</sup> constantly<sup>2</sup> reading<sup>1</sup> instructive<sup>3</sup> books<sup>1</sup>.——  
*constamment lit instructif*

You and I are not quite so studious: I am not, most  
*tout à fait si studieux* *très*

certainly, but I know you are, and I am glad.  
*certainement sais que vous* *fort aise*

of it.——My son learnt last<sup>2</sup> year<sup>2</sup> all the fables of  
*apprit* *fable, f.*

La Fontaine by heart, but he has already forgotten the  
*par cœur* *déjà oublié*

greatest part of them. —— (How<sup>1</sup> many) children<sup>5</sup>  
*Combien, adv. d'enfans*

has<sup>4</sup> your<sup>2</sup> sister<sup>3</sup>? She has two,\* one son and one  
*a-t-elle*

daughter.——When (will they send) your servant  
*enverront-ils* *votre domestique*

to prison? He is (in it) already, and I assure you  
*en prison* *y* *assure*

(I shall not go) and see him there.——(Has he) any  
*que je n'irai pas* *voir* *A-t-il*

money? No; but I shall send him some.——Your daugh-  
*Votre*

ter wishes to see the British<sup>2</sup> Museum<sup>1</sup>; I shall  
*désire* *Britannique Musée, m.*

accompany her there myself.——Do you not  
*accompagnerai* *ne désirez*

wish to read these books? take them, read them,  
*vous pas* *lire ces* *prenez* *lisez*

and give them afterwards to your father.——Buy the  
*donnez* *ensuite* *Achetez*

chocolate that man offered us yesterday, and send  
*chocolat, m. que cet* *offrit* *hier* *envoyez*

me half of it.——Listen to me, my friends, and  
*la moitié* *Ecoutez* *mes amis*

believe me.——God is a good father; love him with all  
*croyez*  *aimez* *de*

your hearts (sing.); serve him faithfully; trust to him;  
*servez* *fidèlement* *fiez-vous*

depend upon him; he will not abandon you; he  
*comptez sur* *abandonnera*

\* Say, she of them has two, elle en a, &c.

will protect you; watch over you; and sooner or  
*protégera il veillera sur tôt ou*  
 later reward you for your love and  
*tard il récompensera de*  
 confidence. Always depend on our divine master: \*  
*de votre confiance comptez divin*  
 he never has forsaken you. †  
*abandonné*

## PART II.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote possession or property. Some are always joined to the substantive, of which they denote the possession. Ex.

*Mon livre*, my book. . *Ma maison*, my house.

Others are never joined to any substantive, but relate to, and take the place of one, or more than one substantive expressed before, and of which they also point out the possession. Ex.

<i>Cet enfant est plus jeune que</i>	<i>This child is younger than</i>
LE MIEN,	<i>mine.</i>
<i>La maison du Comte B.</i>	<i>The house of the Earl B.</i>
<i>touche à LA NÔTRE,</i>	<i>joins ours.</i>

The possessive pronouns which are always joined to a substantive are the following. They never take the article.

Singular.		Plural.
Masc.	Fem.	Both genders.
<i>Mon,</i>	<i>Ma,</i>	<i>Mes,</i> my.
<i>Ton,</i>	<i>Ta,</i>	<i>Tes,</i> thy.
<i>Son,</i>	<i>Sa,</i>	<i>Ses,</i> his.
Both genders.		
Singular.		Plural.
<i>Notre,</i>		<i>Nos,</i> our.
<i>Votre,</i>		<i>Vos,</i> your.
<i>Leur,</i>		<i>Leurs,</i> their.

\* Adverbs are generally to be placed in French after the verb; and when they are negative, the particle *ne* is to precede the verb. When the verb is in a compound tense, the adverb must be placed immediately after the auxiliary verb.

† See the end of the above note.

Ex. *Mon père*, my father.      *Mes frères*, my brothers.  
      *Ma mère*, my mother.      *Ton ami*, thy friend.  
      *Ta maison*, thy house.      *Tes domestiques*, thy servants, &c.

*Observation.*—The pronouns *ma*, *ta* and *sa* must be changed into *mon*, *ton* and *son* before nouns beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, though of the feminine gender. This substitution takes place in order to avoid the meeting of the two vowels, which would give to the articulation of them a most unpleasant harshness. Therefore instead of saying *ma âme*, my soul; *ta indifférence*, thy indifference; *sa opinion*, his opinion; *sa humeur*, his humour, &c.; we must say, *mon âme*, *ton indifférence*, *son opinion*, *son humeur*, &c.

**RULE 1, PART 1.**—These pronouns always agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they are joined, and not, as in English, with the noun to which the object belongs. Ex.

*Son père*, her father.      *Sa mère*, his mother.

2. They must be repeated before every substantive that follows them, though but once expressed in English. Ex.

*Mon frère, ma sœur, mes*      My brother, sister, cousins  
      *cousins et mes tantes;*      and aunts.

3. Whenever we address any body by a noun expressive of relationship, or by the word *friend* or *friends*, those nouns must always be preceded by one of these pronouns, *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, according to the gender and number of the noun. Ex.

*Bonjour, MON père;*      Good day, father.  
      *Etes vous là, MES sœurs?*      Are you there, sisters?

*Observation.*—The words *papa*, father, and *maman*, mother, used by children, are excepted from this rule, as *maman* is never used with the pronoun *ma*, and *papa* is very seldom preceded by *mon*, except when they follow an adjective which qualifies them; for the pronoun may then be expressed or not. Ex.

*Papa, regarde-moi;*      Father, look at me.  
      *Mon chère papa, parle-moi,*      My dear father, speak to  
           or *chère papa, parle-moi;*      me.  
      *Maman, embrasse-moi;*      Mother, kiss me.  
      *Ma bonne maman, or bonne*      Good mother, do not cry.  
           *maman, ne pleure pas;*

## EXERCISE

Upon the above Rule.

Give me my dictionary and grammar.—She had  
*dictionnaire, m. grammaire, f. avoit*  
 lost her gloves and fan.—Have you found your  
*perdu gant éventail, m. Avez trouvé*  
 pen?—His daughter is older than my son, but her  
*plume, f. fille, f. vieux fils, m.*  
 son (is not) so tall as my nephew.—Her brother  
*n'est pas grand neveu*  
 says that he will not refuse you what you ask of  
*dit refusera ce que demandez*  
 him.—Dear father, pray, forgive me.—My ambi-  
*lui de grâce ambi-*  
 tion is the only cause of my imprudence.—I have  
*tion, f. seul cause, f. imprudence, f. ai*  
 seen your father, mother, brothers and sisters.—Her  
*vu*  
 affection for me is false.—Good night, cousin; I  
*affection, f. pour faux soir, m.*  
 hope that you will soon come (to see) my country-  
*espère & bientôt viendrez voir de campagne*  
 house<sup>t</sup> and gardens.—Your horses and carriage  
*cheval, m. carrosse, m.*  
 are very beautiful; but the queen's horses and carriages  
*beau*  
 are much more so.—Mother, where is my sister?  
*beaucoup Maman*  
 —Father, dear father, (how much) I love you!  
*Papa combien*

RULE 2.—The article *le, la, or les*, must be used instead of the possessive pronoun, before the object of the verb, whenever a personal pronoun, either subject or object of the verb, excludes the necessity of the possessive pronoun, and there is no ambiguity left in the sentence; and if the words *to have a pain in* are used, *a* must be suppressed, and *in* changed into *to the*. Ex.

*J'ai mal aux yeux,* I have a pain in my eyes.  
*Il se cassa le bras,* He broke his arm.

That is to say, *he broke the arm TO HIMSELF.*



rather serious, particularly for foreigners. I shall endeavour to make it vanish, or at least to make it less.

In order to succeed in this undertaking, let us say,

1. That the noun being preceded by the possessive pronoun, it may be either *subject* or *object* of the verb. If it is *subject* of the verb, *of it* or *of them* may generally be substituted for the possessive pronoun; and in that case, it is to be translated by *en*. Ex.

<i>Paris est une belle ville ; la</i>	Paris is a fine city ; its
<i>situation EN est agréable :</i>	situation is pleasant.

That is to say, *the situation* OF IT.

2. If the noun preceded by the possessive pronoun is *object* of the verb, and the possession of it does not belong to the subject of the verb, *of it* or *of them* may still be substituted for the pronoun; therefore it must be translated by *en*, except the possessor be also *object*, or a complement of the *object* of the verb. Ex.

<i>L'Angleterre est une très</i>	England is a very small
<i>petite île ; cependant tout</i>	island ; however every
<i>le monde EN admire les</i>	one admires <i>its</i> riches.
<i>richesses :</i>	

That is to say, *the riches* of it.

I have said *except the* POSSESSOR *be also* OBJECT *or the* COMPLEMENT OF THE OBJECT *of the verb* ; for in that case the possessive pronoun is translated literally by one of these pronouns *son, sa, ses, leur* or *leurs*. Ex.

<i>J'aime beaucoup la ville de</i>	I like London much ;
<i>Londres ; cependant je</i>	however I should wish
<i>voudrois la purger de ses</i>	to clear it of its thick
<i>épais brouillards, ou de</i>	fogs, or of some of its
<i>quelques-uns de ses épaïs</i>	thick fogs.
<i>brouillards :</i>	

I consider *de ses épaïs brouillards* as the complement of the *object* *quelques-uns*.

3. If the noun preceded by the possessive pronoun is *object*, and the possession of it belongs to the subject of the verb, the possessive pronoun must always be translated literally by the French corresponding pronoun *son, sa, ses, leur* or *leurs*. Ex.





—— (I am very partial to) a country<sup>2</sup> life<sup>1</sup>;  
*J'aime beaucoup la (de la campagne) vie, f.*  
 its enjoyments are great in the spring, summer  
*jouissance, f. dans printemps, m. été, m.*  
 and autumn. —— The river Loire sometimes<sup>2</sup>  
*automne, m. rivière, f. de Loire*  
 overflows<sup>3</sup> its banks. —— The Garonne is a most  
*sort de lit, m. sing. Garonne, f. très*  
 beautiful river; its bed is very deep.

*Observations.*—1. If a substantive is qualified by two adjectives expressing opposite qualities, these pronouns must be placed before each of them. Ex.

*Je lui ai montré mes bons et mes mauvais habits ;* I have shown him my good coats and my bad ones ;  
*mes habits bleus et mes habits noirs ;* my blue ones and my black ones.

If, on the contrary, those adjectives do not express opposite qualities, the pronouns are not to be repeated. Ex.

*Vos beaux et riches habits vous ont coûté bien de l'argent,* Your handsome and rich coats have cost you much money.

This observation can offer no difficulty, as the same repetition takes place in English, whenever it must take place in French.

2. The letter *o* in *notre* and *votre*, when these pronouns are followed by a noun, never takes the circumflex accent ; when they are not followed by a noun, it always takes it.

*Possessive Pronouns that are never joined to a Noun.*

The possessive pronouns that are never joined to a noun are the following :

Masculine.		Feminine.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Le mien, les miens ;</i>		<i>La mienne, les miennes,</i>	mine.
<i>Le tien, les tiens ;</i>		<i>La tienne, les tiennes,</i>	thine.
<i>Le sien, les siens ;</i>		<i>La sienne, les siennes,</i>	his or hers.
<i>Le nôtre, les nôtres ;</i>		<i>La nôtre, les nôtres,</i>	ours.
<i>Le vôtre, les vôtres ;</i>		<i>La vôtre, les vôtres,</i>	yours.
<i>Le leur, les leurs ;</i>		<i>La leur, les leurs,</i>	theirs.

In the pronouns *le nôtre, le vôtre, la nôtre, la vôtre, les nôtres, les vôtres*, the letter *o* is always marked with the circumflex accent; but it never takes it when *notre* and *votre* are not preceded by the article. Ex. *Voici notre livre; voilà le vôtre*. These pronouns always relate to a noun expressed before. They take the place of it; and agree with it in gender and number. They therefore might very properly be called *possessive relative pronouns*. Ex.

<i>Voilà votre livre; voici</i>	LE	There is your book; here
<i>mien;</i>		is mine.

That is to say, here is MY BOOK.

RULE 4.—When any of these pronouns is used after the verb *ÊTRE*, to be, signifying *to belong to*, it must be rendered in French by the corresponding *personal pronoun*, which is to be preceded by the preposition *à*, except when the verb *être* has the indefinite pronoun *ce* for its nominative. In this case the personal pronoun must be translated literally. Ex.

<i>Ce livre est</i>	A MOI,	This book is mine; that is
		to say, <i>belongs to me</i> .
<i>A qui est ce livre?</i>		Whose book is this?
<i>Il est</i>	A MOI, ou c'est LE	It is mine.
MIEN;		

Observations.—1. *Ce* pointing out neither gender nor number, (for we say, *c'est le mien, c'est la mienne, ce sont les miens, ce sont les miennes*,) cannot be a proper representative of the noun that is understood; we want, therefore, in the last sentence, *c'est le mien*, the possessive adjective pronoun *le mien*, to take the place of the noun *livre*, and to point out its gender and number.

2. These modes of speaking *a—of mine, a—of thine, a—of his, a—of hers, a—of ours, a—of yours, a—of theirs*, (the dash takes the place of a substantive,) must be changed thus; *One of my, one of thy, one of his, &c.* which are to be translated literally, putting the substantive in the plural. Ex.

<i>Un de mes amis,</i>	A friend of mine; that is
	to say, <i>one of my friends</i> .
<i>Un de leurs parens,</i>	A relation of theirs; that
	is to say, <i>one of their relations</i> .

## XERCISE.

Your daughter is handsomer than mine, but mine has  
*beau*  
 more wit than yours.—Her house is more convenient  
*esprit, m.* *commode*  
 than ours; but yours is not so well situate as theirs.—  
*situé*  
 This hat is mine, and not yours; but this sword is  
*non pas* *cette*  
 yours, and not his.—I lost a book of mine; and a  
*ai perdu*  
 friend of yours found it.—He sold me a knife;  
*a trouvé* *vendit* *couteau, m.*  
 but this knife was not his; a friend of his had lent it to  
*étoit* *prêté*  
 him.—Is that your brother's book? No: it is mine.  
*Est-celà*  
 —And these pens, whose are they? They are ours.  
*ces* *à qui* *Ce*

## PART III.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they point out in a precise manner the persons or things to which they are applied. They are,

## Singular.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Ce, cet,</i>	<i>Cette, this, that.</i>
<i>Celui, he, that;</i>	<i>Celle, she, that.</i>
<i>Celui-ci,</i>	<i>Celle-ci, this.</i>
<i>Celui-là,</i>	<i>Celle-là, that.</i>

## Plural.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Ces,</i>	<i>Ces, these, those.</i>
<i>Ceux,</i>	<i>Celles, they, these, those.</i>
<i>Ceux-ci,</i>	<i>Celles-ci, these.</i>
<i>Ceux-là,</i>	<i>Celles-là, those.</i>

*Ce qui, ce que*, what,\* meaning *that which, the thing which*;

\* I must observe, to do justice to the language, that *ce qui* and *ce que* as well as *what* in English, contain two different pronouns; the first, *ce*, that is *demonstrative*, and *qui* or *que* which are *relative*. The next sentence will prove it to evidence. Ex. What you say is true; that is to say, that is

*ceci*, this, meaning *this thing*; *cela*, that, meaning *that thing*.

These pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they relate, except *ce qui*, *ce que*; *ceci*, *cela*, which always are of the masculine gender, and in the singular.

RULE 1.—*Ce, cet, cette, ces*, are always followed by the noun which they point out. Ex.

CETTE MAISON *est bien haute*,      This house is very high.

*Cet* is never used but in the singular before nouns of the masculine gender beginning with a vowel or a silent *h*.  
Ex.

*Cet enfant est très foible*,      This child is very weak.  
*Cet homme est fort instruit*,      This man is well informed.

## EXERCISE.

This book has made a great noise in the world.—  
   *fait beaucoup dans*  
This history of England, written by Hume, is generally  
   *écrite en général*  
much admired.—That lady is my niece, and those two  
*fort estimée*  
children are her sons.—Do you<sup>s</sup> see<sup>t</sup> that man, that  
   *voyez*  
woman, those young ladies and that child who (are  
   *qui se*  
walking along) the river? They are foreigners.—  
*promènent le long de) rivière, f. étranger*  
Take this apricot and this orange; (I think they  
   *abricot, m. orange, f. Je les crois*  
are) good.—(No more) of these follies; I do not like  
   *plus sottise & aime*  
them.

true, or that thing is true which, or which thing you say. *Ce que vous dites est vrai; c'est à dire, cette chose est vraie, laquelle on laquelle chose vous dites.* Is it not evident that the first pronoun *ce*, THAT, points out the object to which we allude; and that the second *que*, WHICH, relates to that object? Let us, therefore, conclude, that in English *what*, and in French *ce qui* and *ce que*, contain two pronouns; and that the *first* is *demonstrative*, and the *second relative*. The learner, by not losing sight of this observation, will soon conquer the difficulty which arises from the translation of the corresponding English pronoun *what*.

**RULE 2.**—The particles *ci*, here, and *là*, there (*ci* is an abbreviation of *ici*), are often placed after the substantive following the pronoun *ce*, *cette*, this, that; *ces*, these, those; in order to point out with more precision the object or objects to which they are applied; or to express a preference. *Celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, this; *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, these; *celui-là*, *celle-là*, that; *ceux-là*, *celles-là*, those, are to be used whenever *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, instead of being followed by a substantive, take the place of it; and two or more objects are either compared with, or opposed to, one another. *Ci* and *là* are to be united to the noun or pronoun by a hyphen, as above. Ex.

<i>Jen'aime point cette pomme-ci,</i>	I do not like this apple.
<i>Je mangerai cette poire-là,</i>	I shall eat that pear.
<i>Je prendrai cette rose-ci; je</i> <i>la préfère à celles-là;</i>	I shall take this rose; I prefer it to those.

**Observation.**—The following words, the *former*, the *latter*, referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding part of a sentence, are often rendered in French by *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*, the former. *Celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, the latter: they agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they relate. Ex.

<i>Les Anglois et les Irlandois</i> <i>se battirent hier pendant</i> <i>deux heures; ceux-là fu-</i> <i>rent vainqueurs; et ceux-</i> <i>ci furent contraints</i> <i>d'abandonner le champ de</i> <i>bataille;</i>	The English and the Irish fought yesterday <i>for</i> * two hours; the former remained conquerors; and the latter were forced to give up the field of battle. <i>The former</i> ; that is to say, <i>those</i> : <i>the</i> <i>latter</i> ; that is to say, <i>these</i> .
--	---

## EXERCISE.

Learn	this lesson; it is not so difficult as that.—
<i>Apprenez</i>	<i>difficile</i>
I prefer this way	to that road.—This room is
<i>chemin, m.</i>	<i>route, f.</i>
much larger than that	parlour.—These candles are
<i>grand</i>	<i>salon, m.</i> <i>chandelle, f.</i>

\* Whenever *for* means *during*, it must be rendered in French by *pendant*, and not by *pour*.

better than those.—(There was) a great battle  
*Il y eut combat, m.*  
 between George and Stephen; the former had a broken<sup>s</sup>  
*entre Etienne eut le cassé*  
 nose<sup>t</sup>, and the latter lost a tooth.—In the  
*nez, m. perdit dent, f. Dans*  
 engagements which took place between the Austrians  
*bataille, f. qui eurent lieu Autrichien*  
 and the French, the former lost two thousand men,  
*François perdirent homme*  
 and the latter fifteen hundred.

**RULE 3.**—Whenever *this, that, these, those*, are used without pointing out any comparison or opposition, and they relate to a noun expressed before, they must be rendered in French by *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, without being followed by the particle *ci*, or *là*. Ex.

*La marine d'Angleterre et celle de France étoient autrefois les plus redoutables,*

The English and French navies were formerly the most formidable ones (that is to say, *the navy of England, and THAT of France*).

*J'ai vu votre jardin et celui de votre oncle,*

I have seen your garden and your uncle's (that is to say, and *that of your uncle*).

**Observation.**—Whenever the demonstrative pronoun *that* is suppressed in English, and replaced by the sign of the possessive case, it must be expressed in French, as in the following example and in the preceding one.

*Renvoyez moi mes livres et CEUX de mon frère,*

Send me back my books and my brother's (that is to say, and *THOSE of my brother*).

#### EXERCISE.

She brought her picture, and that of her husband.  
*a apporté portrait, m. mari*

— I have seen the king's palace, and that of the  
*palais, m.*

queen.—That gold<sup>2</sup> watch<sup>1</sup> which you showed  
*d'or montre, f. avez montrée*  
 me is not yours; it is that of your brother.—I have  
*c'est*  
 lost my buckles and those of your cousin.—Your  
*perdu cousin, m.*  
 books and those of your little sister are torn.—I know  
*petit sont déchiré connois*  
 this cap; (it is) that of your mother.—You have  
*bonnet, m. c'est*  
 torn my gown and my sister's.—I have found my  
*déchiré robe, f. trouvé*  
 hat and my brother's in the room.—The thieves  
*chambre, f. voleur, m.*  
 came by night into my father's house; they  
*entrèrent de nuit*  
 opened my room and my mother's, and stole  
*forcèrent la porte de volèrent*  
 my watch and my sister's.—You may, if you please,  
*pouvez voulez*  
 take your grammar and your brother's; but leave mine  
*laissez*  
 and my friend's.—Our oranges and Mr. Savage's  
*orange, f. Sauvage*  
 are the best that you can find.  
*on puisse trouver.*

RULE 4.—*He, she, they, him, her, them*, having no reference to any noun expressed before, and not being followed by any, but by one of these pronouns *who, whom, of whom, to whom, &c.* act as demonstrative pronouns, and must be translated by *celui, celle, ceux, celles*. Ex.

CELUI QUI aime Dieu aimera son prochain, et lui fera du bien ;

HE WHO loves God will love his neighbour, and do him good (*he, that is to say, that man, that person*).

## EXERCISE.

She who dines with us is my brother's wife.—He  
*dîne femme*  
 who supports idleness makes himself despicable.—She  
*encourage rend méprisable*

whom you saw at my brother's is not yet married.—  
*que vîtes chez encore marié*  
 You punish him who is not guilty.—Men commonly<sup>2</sup>  
*punissez coupable ordinairement*  
 hate<sup>1</sup> him whom they fear.——She whom you  
*haïssent que craignent*  
 hate is my best friend.——You have punished him who  
*haïssez amie, f. puni*  
 did not deserve it, and rewarded her who was guilty.——  
*méritoit récompensé*  
 We ought to pray for them who persecute us.——Of all  
*devons qui persécutent*  
 virtues, that which most<sup>2</sup> distinguishes<sup>1</sup> a Christian is  
*qui le plus distingue c'est*  
 charity.——This book and that which\* I lent you  
*que ai prêté*  
 are the two best.——Those who seem to be happy  
*qui paroissent être*  
 are not always so.  
*toujours*

RULE 4.—*Ce qui, ce que*, what; *ceci, this; cela*, that. Whenever *what* is used with the acceptation of *that which*, *that thing which*, it must be rendered in French by *ce qui* or *ce que*; by *ce qui* when *which* stands as subject to the following verb; and by *ce que* when *which* is object to that verb.† Ex.

\* The particle *là* is not to be added here to *celui*. The words *which I lent you* point out sufficiently the book of which it is spoken.

† Having observed that the pronouns *ce qui, ce que*, offer a serious difficulty to learners, I think the following observations may be useful. In order to know whether *what*, meaning *that which, the thing which*, is to be rendered by *ce qui* or by *ce que*, examine if the following verb has another word for its subject or not: if it has, render *what* by *ce que*; if it has not, render it by *ce qui*. Ex. *I understand what you say*: *say* is the verb which follows *what*—now look for its subject. The subject of a verb is that which does the action expressed by the verb. In this sentence, the action is that of *saying*. Well, ask this question, who says? What will be the answer? *You*. Then *you* is the subject of the verb. Therefore *what* must be translated by *ce que*; and the translation of the above sentence will be, *Jc comprends CE QUE vous dites*. In this sentence, *we know what will happen to you, will happen* is the verb that follows *what*; *to you* is its indirect object: then *which* must be its subject. You will, therefore, translate the sentence thus: *Nous savons CE QUI vous arrivera*. From these observations, it is easily perceived, that the pronoun *what*, meaning *that which, the thing which*, acts in a double capacity: in the first sentence, it stands as object of two verbs; in the second, as object to the first,



*Je comprends* CE QUE vous I understand *what* you say-  
*dites,*  
*Nous savons* CE QUI vous We know *what* will happen  
*arrivera,* to you.

When *this, that*, mean *this thing, that thing*, *this* must be rendered by *ceci*, and *that* by *cela*. Both are, as I said before, of the masculine gender. Ex.

CECI est bon; CELA est This is good; that is bad  
*mauvais;* (that is to say, *this thing*  
*is good; that thing is*  
*bad).*

## EXERCISE.

I know what has happened.—Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> what I  
*sais est arrivé* *savez*  
 think?—This pleases me; that frightens me.—May I  
*pense plait fait peur Puis-je*  
 know what causes your grief, and sadness?—  
*savoir cause chagrin, m. tristesse, f.*  
 Your father has (a good deal) of friendship for you; for  
*beaucoup car*  
 he 'never<sup>4</sup> refuses<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup> what you ask of him.—  
*ne-jamais refuse demandez à lui*  
 You seem much dejected; tell me what vexes<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>.  
*paraissent bien abattu dites-moi fâche*  
 —Go and tell my father what has passed here;  
*Allez à dire à s'est passé ici*  
 and do not forget what you have seen, and what you have  
*oubliez*  
 heard.—Give me this, and take that. I prefer this to  
*entendu prenez préfère*  
 that.

and *subject* to the second. Let us examine both sentences. The first sentence is this: *I understand what you say*. Who understands? *I*. Then *I* is *subject* of this verb. What do I understand? *That thing*, or *the thing*. The next verb is *say*. Who says? *You*. Then *you* is *subject* of the verb *say*. What do you say? *Which, which thing*. Then *which* is *object* of the verb. Therefore *what* acts as *object* of *understand*, and as *object* of *say*. (Look at OBSERVATION 3, on the Personal Pronouns, for the explanation given of the SUBJECT and OBJECT of the verbs, p. 71.) The second sentence is this: *We know what will happen to you*. Who knows? *We*. *We* is therefore *subject* of the verb. What do we know? *That thing, the thing*. Then *that thing, the thing*, is *object* of the verb. What will happen? *Which, which thing*. Then *which* is *subject* of *will happen*. Therefore in this sentence *what* acts as *object* of the verb *know*, and as *subject* to *will happen*.

## PART IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative pronouns are those which relate to nouns or pronouns either expressed or implied before. Of these, we have six, which are :

*Qui*, who, which, or that.

*Que*, whom, which, or that.

*Lequel*, which.

*Dont*, whose, of whom, or of which.

*Quoi*, what (meaning *the thing which*).

*Où, d'ou, par où*, where, to which, from which, through which.

## QUI.

*Observations.*—1. *Qui* belongs to both genders and numbers.

2. *Qui*, not being preceded by any preposition, may relate to both persons and things. Ex.

*L'homme QUI vous parloit,*      The man *who* was speaking to you.

*Les arbres QUI croissent dans ce pays, &c.*      The trees *which* grow in that country, &c.

3. *Qui* preceded by a preposition is used only with relation to persons or to things that are personified. Ex.

*Le roi, à qui vous devez votre fortune, votre prospérité, a droit à votre reconnaissance ;*      The king, to whom you owe your fortune, your prosperity, has a right to your gratitude.

*Ne cessons jamais de remercier le ciel, à qui nous devons tout notre bonheur ;*      Let us never fail to thank heaven, to which we are indebted for our happiness.

We could not say ; *le cheval À QUI vous donnez à boire*, the horse to which you give some drink ; *la table sur QUI*, &c. the table upon which, &c. : we must say, *le cheval AUQUEL*, &c. *la table sur laquelle*, &c. or it would be personifying *the table* and *the horse*.

4. Whenever *whom* is preceded by the preposition *of*, and followed by a personal pronoun, it is much better to translate *of whom* by *dont*, than by *de qui*. Whose (when it is not interrogative) signifies *of whom*, and, therefore, follows the same rule. Ex.

*Le prince dont vous sollicitez la protection,*      The prince whose protection you solicit, or of whom you, &c.

5. *Qui* is often and elegantly used to take the place of *celui qui*, he who, meaning *whoever*. Ex.

*QUI sert bien son pays mérite d'être heureux,*      HE WHO serves his country well deserves to be happy.

## QUE.

6. *Que*, whom, which, or that, always relates either to persons or things that are expressed; and cannot be but direct object of the verb that governs it. Ex.

*Le Dieu QUE j'adore est le Dieu des Chrétiens,*      The God whom I adore is the God of Christians.  
*Le bien QUE vous faites aux autres, sera tôt ou tard récompensé,*      The good which you do to others, will sooner or later be rewarded.

7. *Whom*, *which* and *that* are often suppressed in English; they are understood; but they must be expressed in French, and rendered by *que*. Ex.

*L'enfant QUE vous aimez tant,*      The child you love so much (that is to say, *the child WHOM you love so much*).

RULE 1.—*Qui*, when it is not preceded by a preposition, may relate to persons and things; when preceded by a preposition, it relates only to persons or to things personified. *Que* may relate to persons or things; it is always direct object of the verb; and, when understood in English, it must be expressed in French.

## EXERCISE.

I know a man who (is to go) and see the camp.—  
*connois                      doit aller                      camp, m.*  
 —I have read the letter you have sent me.\* —The  
*lu                                      envoyée*  
 man who sold me these pens is very cunning.—  
*a vendu                                      rusé*

\* See Rule 5, on the pronouns objects of the verb, page 81.

The lady of whom you speak is not handsome.——Miss

*dame* *parlez*

D\*\*\*, whom you love so much, is very ill.——The

*aimez . tant malade*

person to whom I wrote last<sup>2</sup> year<sup>1</sup> has  
*personne, f. écrivis passée année, f.*

answered me this morning.——He who was with you

*répondu matin, m. étoit*

related to me (every thing) that had passed.——She

*a raconté tout ce s'étoit passé*

will not hear of the lady whom he (is going) to

*veut entendre parler va*

marry.——Who was with you? It was a gentleman whose

*épouser étoit avec Ce monsieur*

name I know not.\*——Men generally<sup>2</sup> love<sup>1</sup> him who

*nom, m. sais généralement aiment*

flatters them. —— The man whom I sent to you was

*flatte ai envoyé*

honest.——You speak of the lady whose† husband has

*parlez mari a*

been so ill.

*été malade*

RULE 2.—These pronouns *qui* and *que*, as well as *dont*, must be repeated in French before each verb of which they are either subjects or objects, though most commonly expressed in English only before the first verb. Ex.

*Le Dieu QUE nous aimons*  
*et QUE nous adorons,*

The God *whom* we love  
and worship.

#### EXERCISE.

The man who caresses and flatters us is the most dan-  
*caresse plus*

gerous being I know.——The man whose manners

*être connoisse mœurs, pl. f.*

are innocent, and whose behaviour is blameless, is

*innocent conduite, f. irréprochable*

the man whom we ought to cherish and honour.——The

*devons chérir respecter*

\* Turn the sentence thus; OF WHOM I know not THE name.

† Say, OF WHOM the husband.

letters which you have written and shown to me\* were tolerably well written.—The woman to whom I have lent so much money, and spoken so often, is dead.

—Servants are men or women† whom we keep and reward for the services which they do us.—

He who lives (as a) good Christian cannot but die happy.‡

## LEQUEL and DONT.

*Lequel*, whom or which, relates to persons and things; and takes both genders and both numbers; therefore it is subject to the following variations.

Sing. mas.	Plur. mas.	
<i>Lequel,</i>	<i>Lesquels,</i>	Which or whom.
<i>Duquel or</i>	<i>Desquels or</i>	} Of which, of whom, or whose.
<i>dont,</i>	<i>dont,</i>	
<i>Auquel,</i>	<i>Auxquels,</i>	To which, or to whom.

Sing. fem.	Plur. fem.	
<i>Laquelle,</i>	<i>Lesquelles,</i>	Which, or whom.
<i>De laquelle</i>	<i>Desquelles</i>	} Of which, of whom, or whose.
<i>or dont,</i>	<i>or dont,</i>	
<i>A laquelle,</i>	<i>Auxquelles,</i>	To which, or to whom.

This pronoun relates to both persons and things. It is the only one of the relative pronouns that takes the article, which article is so closely united to it, that they both form but one single word. In *duquel*, *auquel*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, *auxquels* and *auxquelles*, which are contractions of *de le quel*, *à le quel*, *de les quels*, *à les quels*, *à les quelles*, the prepositions *à* and *de* being incorporated with the article, they form with the article and pronoun one single word.

RULE 3.—The pronouns *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, are never to be used either as subjects, or direct

\* Turn the sentence thus : *and which you me have shown.*

† Say, *are some men, or some women, &c.*

‡ See Observation 5, page 111.

objects of a verb, except in order to avoid obscurity. *Qui* or *que* must be used. Ex.

*Dieu qui a créé le ciel et la terre,*

God who has created heaven and earth.

*Les vertus QUE nous devons chérir,*

The virtues which we ought to love.

The following sentences would be very improper :

*Dieu LEQUEL a créé le ciel et la terre,*

*Les vertus LESQUELLES nous devons chérir.*

But in the following example :

*C'est un effet de la bonté de la divine Providence, LEQUEL attire l'admiration de tout le monde ;*

It is an effect of the goodness of divine Providence, which (effect) commands the admiration of all.

If we said *QUI attire*, instead of *LEQUEL attire*, the pronoun *qui* might be wrongly considered as relating to *Providence*, instead of relating to *effet*.

#### EXERCISE.

A Sovereign who fears God, who respects his laws,  
*Le craint loix*  
 and causes<sup>2</sup> them<sup>1</sup> (to be) respected; who, an enemy  
*fait les respect*  
 to war, loves peace and maintains it in his dominions;  
*de la guerre conserve état*  
 who always<sup>2</sup> has<sup>1</sup> the happiness of his people at heart,  
*son peuple à cœur*  
 should, if possible, be immortal.—God, who has  
*devroit s'il étoit possible immortel*  
 created us, who (every<sup>3</sup> day) grants<sup>2</sup> us<sup>1</sup> new benefits,  
*créés tous les jours accorde bienfait, m.*  
 commands us to love him.—O ye rich<sup>2</sup> men<sup>1</sup>! make  
*commande de O faites*  
 a proper<sup>2</sup> use<sup>1</sup> (of those) riches which God has  
*convenable usage, m. des*  
 granted you; and recollect that the poor, whom you  
*accordées souvenez-vous que*  
 despise, have a right to call upon you in their  
*méprisez droit de s'adresser à dans leurs*  
 distress.  
*besoins.*

**RULE 4.**—Whenever the pronoun *which*, relating to irrational beings or inanimate objects, is preceded by a preposition, it must be translated by *lequel, lesquels, laquelle, lesquelles*.\* Ex.

<i>Le cheval</i> AUQUEL vous donnez à boire,	The horse <i>to which</i> you give some drink.
<i>La fenêtre</i> sur LAQUELLE vous vous appuyez,	The window <i>upon which</i> you lean.

EXERCISE.

The trade to which you apply, and the commerce, m. vous vous appliquez  
 profession to which you are devoted, are very honour-  
 profession, f. dévoué  
 able.—(Is that) the horse for which you gave a  
 Est-ce là avez donné  
 hundred guineas?—Lying is a vice for which  
 Mensonge, m.  
 young people ought to have the greatest horror.—The  
 gens doivent horreur, f.  
 table upon which you write is broken. — The reasons  
 table, f. sur écrivez cassée, p. p. raison, f.  
 upon which you ground your system are satisfac-  
 appuyez système, m. satisfai-  
 tory.—Charity, the exercise (of which) is so often  
 sant pratique, f.  
 commanded in the Holy Scriptures, is one of the noblest  
 récommandé écriture  
 virtues.

DONT.

*Dont* is of both genders and both numbers; it takes the place of *duquel, desquels, de laquelle, desquelles*, of whom, of which, whose; and must come immediately after the substantive to which it relates. Ex.

\* *Observation.*—Of *which* and *whose* (the latter being equivalent to *of whom, of which*) are exceptions to this rule, as they often may be translated by *dont*. Indeed *dont* must be preferred to *duquel, de laquelle, &c.* whether it relates to persons or things, whenever it is to be followed by the noun which in English is preceded by *whose*. Ex.

<i>La dame</i> DONT vous admirez la beauté,	The lady <i>whose</i> beauty you admire.
<i>La Tamise</i> DONT le lit est, &c.	The Thames <i>whose</i> bed is, &c. or the Thames the bed of <i>which</i> is, &c.

<i>Les livres dont vous parlez,</i>	The books of which you speak.
<i>Les enfans, dont l'innocence est si précieuse, &amp;c.</i>	Children, whose innocence is so precious, &c.

## QUOI, OU, D'OU, PAR OU.

*Quoi* (relative pronoun), meaning *the thing which*, is always preceded by a preposition.\* Ex.

<i>Dites moi à quoi vous pensez,</i>	Tell me of what you are thinking.
<i>Je ne sais de quoi vous avez à vous plaindre,</i>	I do not know of what you have to complain.

*Où, d'où, par où*, where, in which, to which, from which, through which, always relate to inanimate objects, with reference to a physical or moral locality. Ex.

<i>Voilà la maison où je naquis,</i>	There is the house in which I was born.
<i>La nature est un livre éloquent, où nous trouvons les preuves les plus irréfragables de la toute-puissance de son auteur ;</i>	Nature is an eloquent book, in which we find the most irrefragable proofs of the omnipotence of its author.

## EXERCISE

*On the above Pronouns DONT, QUOI, OU, D'OU and PAR OU.*

The child of which you are speaking is my youngest son.——The sacred<sup>2</sup> religion,<sup>1</sup> the<sup>8</sup> fundamental<sup>10</sup> principles<sup>9</sup> (of which)<sup>3</sup> you<sup>4</sup> (so<sup>6</sup> boldly<sup>7</sup>) attack,<sup>5</sup> *principe* *saint religion, f. fondamentaux* *avec tant d'audace attaquez* has been sealed (by the) blood of its divine founder.—— *a été scellée du fondateur* Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> of what your<sup>2</sup> sister<sup>3</sup> complains<sup>1</sup>?—— *se plaint* Ask him for what he calls you.——Could you *Demandez-lui pour appelle Pourriez*

\* *What* is sometimes used to convey an exclamation; and, as such, it must be rendered in French by *quoi!* Ex. What! you dare answer me thus? *Quoi! vous osez me répondre ainsi?*



tell me of what he is guilty?—(There is) nothing for  
*dire coupable Il n'y a à*  
 which he is not fit.—The town to which he is gone  
*quoi soit ne propre allé*  
 is precisely the same place through which we went  
*précisément même place, f. par passâmes*  
 in (coming up) to London.—(This is) the door through  
*venant Voici*  
 which the thieves went into the house.—The prison  
*voleur entrèrent dans*  
 in which they used to shut up the prisoners  
*on avoit coutume de renfermer prisonnier*  
 has been demolished.  
*a été détruite*

## PART V.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *interrogative*, because they are used to ask questions.—We have five of them, which are *qui*, *quoi*, *que*; *quel* and *lequel*. The last two vary according to the gender and number of the nouns to which they relate.

## QUI.

*Singular and Plural.*

*Qui?* who, whom?

*De qui?* of whom, or from whom?

*A qui?* to whom?

## QUOI.

*Observation.*—This pronoun is always preceded by a preposition. Ex.

*De quoi?* of or from what?

*A quoi?* to what?

*Sur quoi?* on what?

## QUEL, &amp;c.

*Singular.*

Masc.

Fem.

*Quel,* *Quelle,* what.

*De quel,* *De quelle,* of or from what.

*A quel,* *A quelle,* to what.

*Plural.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Quels,</i>	<i>Quelles, what.</i>
<i>De quels,</i>	<i>De quelles, of or from what.</i>
<i>A quels,</i>	<i>A quelles, to what.</i>

LEQUEL, &amp;c.

*Singular.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Lequel,</i>	<i>Laquelle, which.</i>
<i>Duquel,</i>	<i>De laquelle, of or from which.</i>
<i>Auquel,</i>	<i>A laquelle, to which.</i>

*Plural.*

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Lesquels,</i>	<i>Lesquelles, which.</i>
<i>Desquels,</i>	<i>Desquelles, of or from which.</i>
<i>Auxquels,</i>	<i>Auxquelles, to which.</i>

RULE 1.—*Qui*, who, whom? (*interrogative pronoun*) can never be applied but to persons. Indeed it is equivalent to *quelle personne?* what person?—*Quoi?* and *que?* always have a reference to things; they cannot be applied to persons. They are equivalent to *quelle chose?* What thing? *Qui*, *quoi* and *que* never relate to any antecedent. They present to the mind a mere vague and indeterminate idea. Ex.

<i>Qui est là ?</i>	Who is there ?
<i>De quoi parlez-vous ?</i>	Of what are you speaking ?
<i>Que voulez-vous ?</i>	What do you want ?

## EXERCISE

*On the Interrogative Pronouns QUI ? QUE ? and QUOI ?*

Whom should you choose for your bosom<sup>2</sup> friend<sup>1</sup> ?  
*devez choisir de confiance*

The<sup>3</sup> most<sup>4</sup> virtuous<sup>5</sup> being<sup>2</sup> you know.\* — Several  
*être connoissiez Plusieurs*

\* Say, that you know, *que vous connoissiez*. That *que*, being commanded by a superlative relative, governs the following verb in the subjunctive mood.

people are invited to dinner at\* your father's.—  
*personne invit  es chez*  
 Who are they?—Who was the first king of France?  
*fut*  
 Pharamond, (according to) the opinion of the most respect-  
*suivant*  
 able historians.†—Who can give credit to a young  
*peut ajouter foi, f.*  
 man who does not speak the truth?—Of whom were<sup>2</sup>  
*dit v  rit  , f.*  
 you<sup>2</sup> speaking<sup>1</sup> when I came?—To whom did you lend  
*parliez vins avez pr  t  *  
 my slate?—Whom do you<sup>2</sup> seek<sup>1</sup>?—Who told it  
*ardoise, f. cherchez a dit*  
 to you?—From whom do you<sup>3</sup> know<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>?—What<sup>2</sup>  
*savez*  
 are<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> doing<sup>2</sup>?—What do you<sup>2</sup> say<sup>1</sup>?—What do  
*faites dites*  
 you ask of me?  
*demandez*

RULE 2.—1. *Quel, quelle, &c.* what? This pronoun is always followed by the noun to which it relates, or by the pronoun which takes its place, and agrees with it in gender and number. Ex.

*Quelles sont les raisons que vous avez    all  guer contre ce que je dis?*

*De grace, dites-moi: quelles sont elles?*

What are the reasons you have to allege against what I say?

Pray, tell me: what are they?

2. *Lequel, &c.* is generally used whenever there is a comparison, a choice or opposition expressed; and the pronoun agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates. Ex.

\* When speaking of their relations to those persons to whom we owe or wish to show some respect, we prefix in French one of these words, *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle; Messieurs, Mesdames, Mesdemoiselles*, to the pronoun *vous* or *vos*. Ex.

*MONSIEUR votre p  re est-il en ville?*  
*Comment se portent MESSIEURS vos fr  res?*

Is your father in town?  
 How are your brothers?

† Say, of the historians the most respectable.

<i>Une de vos sœurs est mariée ;</i>	One of your sisters is mar-
<i>laquelle est-ce ?</i>	ried ; which of them ?
<i>Laquelle de ces dames pré-</i>	Which of those ladies do
<i>férez-vous ?</i>	you prefer ?

## EXERCISE.

One of your cousins is arrived from the continent ;  
*cousin, m. arrivé continent, m.*  
 which is it?—An aunt of yours was ill last<sup>2</sup>  
*est-ce étoit malade dernière*  
 week<sup>1</sup> ; \* which was it?— I have heard that two  
*semaine, f. ouï dire*  
 horses of yours were lost ; tell me which.—My brother  
*étoient perdus dites*  
 writes to me that two of your sisters (are going) to  
*écrit vont*  
 learn French ; which are they ?  
*apprendre le François*

## PART VI.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *indefinite*, because they only serve to denote persons and things in a *vague* and *indeterminate* manner. Some of them are used as *adjectives*, being always joined to a substantive ; others are sometimes used as *pronouns*, without being joined to a substantive ; and sometimes as *adjectives* qualifying a substantive, either expressed or understood.

The indefinite pronouns are :

<i>Aucun, aucune,</i>	None, no one, not one, not any.
<i>Autre,</i>	Other, any other.
<i>Autrui,</i>	Other, other people.
<i>Chacun,</i>	Every one, every body.
<i>Chacun, chacune,</i>	Every one, each.
<i>Chaque,</i>	Every, each.
<i>L'un, l'autre,</i>	One another, each other.
<i>Les uns—les autres, }</i>	Some—others.
<i>L'un et l'autre,</i>	Some—some.
<i>L'un ou l'autre,</i>	Both.
<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	Either.
	Neither.

\* See on Rule 4, Observation 2, page 102.

<i>Nul,</i>	No one, nobody.
<i>Nul, nulle,</i>	None, not one.
<i>Pas un, pas une,</i>	None, not one.
<i>Personne,</i>	Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.
<i>La plupart de, des,</i>	Most.
<i>Plusieurs,</i>	Many, several.
<i>Quelconque,</i>	Whatever.
<i>Quelque,</i>	Some, any.
<i>Quelque chose,</i>	Something, anything.
<i>Quelque-que,</i>	<i>Whosoever</i> , whatsoever,
<i>Quel que, mas. }</i>	whatever, however,
<i>Quelle que, fem. }</i>	howsoever, though, &c.
<i>Qui que ce soit qui, or }</i>	Whoever, whosoever, no-
<i>que, }</i>	body whatever.
<i>Quoi que,</i>	
<i>Quoi que ce soit que, }</i>	Whatever, whatsoever.
<i>Tout ce qui, or que, }</i>	
<i>Quelqu'un,</i>	Some one, somebody.
<i>Quelqu'un, quelqu'une,</i>	Some, any.
<i>Quiconque,</i>	Whoever, any body.
<i>Qui que ce soit, or fût,</i>	Whoever, nobody in the world, nobody at all, any body whatever, no man living, let him be who he will, or be who he may, &c.
<i>Quoique ce soit, or fût,</i>	Nothing in the world, nothing whatever.
<i>Rien,</i>	Nothing, anything.
<i>Tel, telle,</i>	Such a one, such.
<i>Tel qui, mas. }</i>	Such as, he, she, they,
<i>Telle qui, fem. }</i>	who or that, &c.
<i>Tout,</i>	Every, every thing.
<i>Tout-que,</i>	As—as; although, however, &c.

## AUCUN.

RULE 1.—The pronoun *aucun*, *aucune*, is only used in the singular (except when it precedes nouns that admit only the plural), and it always relates to a substantive either expressed or understood, with which it agrees in gender. It is always accompanied by the negation *ne*, which is placed before the verb to which *aucun* stands either as *subject* or *object*; except when the sentence is *interroga-*

*tive* or expresses a *doubt* ; because then the pronoun ceases to be negative. Ex.

AUCUN de vos amis NE s'est  
encore avisé de vous con-  
tredire,

Est-il AUCUN de vous qui  
voulût le souffrir ?

Il n'a versé aucuns pleurs,

Not one of your friends has  
yet thought of contra-  
dicting you.

Is there any of you who  
would suffer it ?

He has shed no tears.

## EXERCISE.

Not one of the books which you saw me buying  
pleases me.—Of all the apples which you gave me  
none is yet fit to eat.—Is there any of you who  
applies to study as much as he can ?\*—Among  
all the ladies you know,† is there any one who would  
have married him ?—Philip is certainly a  
very wicked man, for none of his friends speaks well of  
him.—Do you know any news ? No, Sir ; I know  
none.—I was in trouble ; and none of my friends  
relieved me.

*avez vu acheter*  
*plait pomme, f. avez données*  
*encore bon à manger Y-a-t-il*  
*s'applique étude, f. peut De*  
*dame connoissez y en a-t-il eût*  
*voulu épouser Philippe certainement*  
*méchant car parle*  
*savez nouvelle, f. n'en sais*  
*étois dans embarras*  
*a secours*

RULE 2.—NUL, no one, nobody ; NUL, NULLE, not one ; PERSONNE, nobody. *Nul*, meaning *no one, nobody*, and *personne*, nobody, no one, are never accompanied by a substantive ; therefore they never partake of the nature of an adjective. *Nul* can only be used as subject of the verb.

*Nul, nulle, and pas un, pas une*, not one, always act as adjectives, and agree in gender with the substantive to which they relate. All these pronouns, being negative, require the negation *ne* to be placed before the verb (see Rule 1, page 121) ; yet *personne* does not command that

\* See Rule 12, on the pronouns *le, la, les*.

† Say, of all the ladies WHOM you know, &c.

negation in sentences implying *doubt* or *interrogation*, because in such sentences it is not negative. Ex.

*Nul ne peut se vanter d'être  
agréable à Dieu,*

No one can flatter himself  
that he is agreeable to  
God.

*Personne ne le croit,  
Nul homme n'est exempt du  
péché originel,*

No one believes him.  
No man is free from origi-  
nal sin.

*Personne s'est-il jamais ex-  
primé avec plus de grace  
que Burke?*

Did ever any body express  
himself with more grace  
than Burke?

## EXERCISE.

No one in this world is free from fault.—No one likes  
*en exempt de défaut*  
to (keep company with) bad people, except (bad people)  
*à fréquenter méchants*  
themselves.——No one can pretend to be per-  
*eux-mêmes peut prétendre à être par-*  
fectly happy in this land of misery.——All the  
*faitement dans terre, f. misère, f.*  
sailors perished at sea; not one escaped.——The  
*matelot ont péri sur mer, f. pas un a échappé*  
soldiers are all returned; not one has remained behind.—  
*soldat revenu est resté derrière*  
Nobody can boast of being without imperfections.——  
*se vanter d'être sans*  
As nobody speaks to you, you ought not to speak to  
*Comme parle devez parler*  
any body.——Did<sup>2</sup> ever<sup>3</sup> (any body)<sup>1</sup> know in what  
*A-t-il personne connu en*  
happiness consists?  
*bonheur, m. consiste*

*Autre*, any other, another.

RULE 3.—AUTRE, another, any other, is considered as a pronoun whenever it is not joined to a substantive, or accompanied by the pronoun *en*. It is generally preceded by *tout* or *un*. When it is joined to a substantive, or accompanied by the pronoun *en*, it is an adjective. It relates to persons and things. *Autrui*, others, other people, relates to persons only, and is always preceded by the preposition *de*, of, or *à*, to. Ex.

*Un autre que moi, or tout  
autre que moi, vous parle-  
roit-il avec autant de  
franchise?*

*Cette plume n'est pas bonne;  
donnez lui EN une autre;  
Ne prenez pas le bien d'au-  
trui,*

Would any other speak to  
you with so much frank-  
ness as I do?

This pen is not good; give  
him another.

Do not take other people's  
property.

## EXERCISE.

Your brother has lost his books; shall I give him  
others? \* — I doubt whether any other could act with  
so much simplicity as you do. — As you broke my  
penknife, you (will give) me another. — Other people's  
opinions are not the rule of mine. — Do not  
speak ill of other people, if you will have nobody  
speak ill of you. — Always<sup>2</sup> remember<sup>1</sup> that  
principle of natural<sup>2</sup> law<sup>1</sup>; (do not do) to others  
what you (would not wish) that (they should do) to you.  
— What are other people's troubles, if (we compare them)  
with ours?

*Chacun, every one, every body.*

*Chacun, chacune, each, every one.*

*Chaque, each, every.*

**RULE 4.**—1. *Chacun*, every one, every body, being  
taken in a general and indefinite sense, implies men as  
well as women; it is equivalent to *every person, every  
body*. It applies only to persons. As it never is accom-

\* In this sentence and others like it, whenever there is a noun under-  
stood, after *another* or *others*, the pronoun *en* must take its place and precede  
the verb which governs the word *others* or *another*. *lui en donnerai-je  
d'autres?*



panied by a substantive, it is invariable. It admits of no plural, and commands the masculine gender. Ex.

*Chacun se croit prudent et sage,* Every one thinks himself prudent and wise.  
*Chacun à son tour,* Every one in his turn.

2. *Chacun, chacune*, each, every one, is always used as an adjective, and relates to a noun or pronoun that precedes or follows. It expresses individuality and distribution; therefore, it admits of no plural; but agrees in gender with the noun to which it relates. It applies to persons and things, and is followed by the preposition *de* whenever it precedes them. Ex.

*Chacune de ces femmes est très attachée à son mari,* Each of those ladies is very much attached to her husband.

*Chacun DE vous et DE ces Messieurs,* Each of you and of those gentlemen.

*Les juges ont prononcé chacun suivant le cri de sa conscience,* The judges have decided each of them according to the dictates of his conscience.

3. *Chaque*, each, every. It is an adjective expressive of distribution or partition; it belongs to both genders; it is used only in the singular; it always precedes the substantive which it qualifies, and cannot be separated from it by any preposition. Ex.

*Chaque âge a ses plaisirs,* Every age has its pleasures.  
*Chaque passion parle un différent langage,* Every passion speaks a different language.

## EXERCISE.

Every one thinks of (his own) interest.——Give to  
*pense à ses intérêts*  
 every one what belongs to him.——Each language  
*appartient*  
 has its peculiar<sup>2</sup> idioms<sup>1</sup>.——Every virtue has its  
*particulier idiome, m.*  
 reward, and each vice has its punishment.——Let  
*récompense, f.* *châtiment, m.* Que  
 every soldier keep his post, to avoid any  
*se tienne à poste, m. pour éviter tout*

surprise from the enemy.—Every one thinks  
*surprise, f. de la part de l'ennemi* *pense*  
 and acts for himself.—Do not speak all at once, but  
*agit soi* *à la fois*  
 each in his turn.—England expects that every  
*à* *s'attend à ce que*  
 man (will do) his duty in case of danger.—Trees  
*fera* *devoir, m. en* *Arbre, m.*  
 bear their fruits each in their season.—Let us  
*portent* *dans sa saison*  
 give to every one what belongs to him.—Let  
*rendons* *appartient* *Que*  
 every one meddle with his own business.  
*se mêle de* *propre affaires, pl.*

*L'un, l'autre*, one another, each other.

RULE 5.—*L'un l'autre*, one another, each other, takes both genders and both numbers: its feminine is *l'une l'autre*; its plural *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*; it relates to persons and things; and when they are under the government of a preposition, that preposition is not to be placed in French before *l'un*, *l'une*; *les uns*, *les unes*; as it is in English; but before *l'autre*, or *les autres*. Ex.

*Ils se haïssent les uns les autres,* They hate each other.

*Ils parlent mal l'un DE l'autre,* They speak ill of one another; that is to say, the one OF the other.

#### EXERCISE.

Fire and water destroy one another.—My sisters  
*se détruisent*  
 can not bear each other.—Love one another,\*  
*peuvent se souffrir* *Aimez-vous*  
 said our Lord to his disciples.—The seasons  
*dit Seigneur disciple* *saison, f.*  
 follow one another† without interruption.—Thieves  
*se suivent* *sans* *Voleur*

\* Observe that the number of our Lord's disciples was not limited to two. Therefore you cannot translate *one another* by *l'un l'autre*, which would be expressive of two only; but by *les uns les autres*.

† See note\*.

always<sup>2</sup> mistrust<sup>1</sup> one another.——They do  
*se défient de\** *se rendent*  
 justice to one another.——It is rare to hear two  
*rare de entendre*  
 authors speak well of one another.—Multiplication  
*auteur dire du bien* *Multiplication, f.*  
 teaches to multiply two numbers by each other.—  
*enseigne à multiplier* *nombre, m. par*  
 The columns were close against one another.  
*colonne, f. étoient serré contre*

*L'un et l'autre*, both; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither of them.

*L'un et l'autre*, both, expresses the union of several objects. The words *l'un et l'autre* admit of both genders and both numbers. The feminine is *l'une et l'autre*. The plural masculine, *les uns et les autres*; the plural feminine, *les unes et les autres*. They relate to persons and to things. When they are not joined to a substantive, they are pronouns; when they are joined to a substantive in the singular, they are adjectives.

*Observation.*—Both is not to be expressed in French, when it precedes two nouns, two pronouns, two verbs, &c. *Ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither of them, is the reverse of *l'un et l'autre*, and applies, like the latter, to persons and things.

**RULE 6.**—*L'un et l'autre* governs the verb in the plural,† and when *l'un* is preceded by a preposition, that preposition must be repeated before *l'autre*. Ex.

\* *Se défier* governs its object with the assistance of the preposition *de*; turn therefore the sentence thus: *mistrust always the ones of the others*.

† It is rather surprising to see grammarians and good writers defending different opinions with respect to the number in which the verb, to which *l'un et l'autre* stands as subject, is to be put. We should have thought that two different subjects concurring most evidently in the action expressed by the verb, the plurality of those subjects which perform that action would at once have banished from all minds any idea of *simple unity*, and commanded, without any opposition, the verb to be put in the plural. Yet several good writers pretend, that when *l'un et l'autre* precedes the verb, the singular or plural may be indifferently used. We even read in the dictionary of the French Academy the following sentences: *L'un et l'autre y a manqué*, *l'un et l'autre y ont manqué* (let us say, *à sa parole*). The one and the other (both) has violated it; the one and the other (both) have violated it. *L'un et l'autre est bon*; *l'un et l'autre sont bons*. The one and the other (both) is good; the one and the other (both) are good. I should like to know what those gentlemen would think of this sentence: *Le père et le fils a manqué à sa parole*; *l'un et l'autre est coupable*. The father and son has violated his word; the one and the other is guilty. They would, undoubtedly, pass the heaviest condemnation on the first mem-

*L'un et l'autre ont raison,  
Ils ont tort l'un et l'autre,*

*Je rends justice à l'un et à  
l'autre,*

*Le frère et la sœur sont  
morts,*

*Ni l'un ni l'autre, neither of them.\**

RULE 7.—1. Whenever both subjects concur in the action expressed by the verb, that verb being under the influence of a plurality of agents, it must be put in the plural. Ex.

*Ni la cour ni la prospérité  
n'ont pu le gâter,*

*Ni l'une ni l'autre ne purent  
le corrompre,*

*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne furent  
ébranlés de l'approche de  
la mort,*

Both are in the right.  
They are both of them in  
the wrong.

I do justice to both; that  
is to say, to the one and  
to the other.

BOTH the brother and sis-  
ter are dead.

Neither the court nor  
prosperity could corrupt  
him.

Neither of them could  
corrupt him.

Neither of them was moved  
by the approach of death.

2. If, on the contrary, only one of the subjects does the action expressed by the verb, that verb is influenced only by one single subject, and it must be put in the singular. Ex.

*Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon  
père,*

*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera  
nommé premier ministre,*

Neither of them is my fa-  
ther.

Neither of them will be  
appointed prime mi-  
nister.

ber. Why not then on the second? In the first member, *le père et le fils* act jointly, forming a plurality, upon the verb *manquer*: in the second, *l'un*, which takes the place of *le père*, and *l'autre*, which takes that of *le fils*, act jointly and form a plurality on the verb *être*. How is it, then, that no one will allow the first verb to be in the singular, yet the Academy will not object to the second being in that number. Through respect to that learned body, and those writers to whom I have alluded, I shall merely say, that I do not see any solid foundation for their opinion; and as they admit both the singular and plural as equally good, I shall advise the learner to follow the above rule.

\* Opinions differ with respect to this pronoun as much as they do with respect to *l'un et l'autre*. The rule I give seems to me the safest as grounded on solid reasoning. Yet we read in the dictionary of the Academy, edition of 1762, *Ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir*; and in the edition of 1798, *Ni l'un ni l'autre n'a fait son devoir*: neither of them has done his duty.

*Observations.*—1. The above rule is applicable to substantives united by the conjunction *ni* repeated as it is in the pronoun *ni l'un ni l'autre*, when they are subjects of a verb. Ex.

*Ni la grandeur ni l'or ne nous rendent heureux,*      Neither rank nor riches make us happy.

2. Whenever *ni l'un ni l'autre* is governed by a preposition, that preposition is to be placed after each of the conjunctions *ni*. Ex.

*Je n'ai parlé ni à l'un ni à l'autre,*      I have spoken to neither of them; that is to say, I have spoken neither to the one nor to the other.

3. This pronoun being negative, it requires the negation *ne* to be placed before the verb to which it stands either as subject or as object. See the above examples.

## EXERCISE.

Both serve to the same purpose.—My father and mother set off last<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup> for the country; but (both of them) are already returned; and both intend to stay in town all the winter.—I called on your cousins, and I heard that both had been married a week. —Honour your father and mother, and endeavour to please both.—Do you<sup>2</sup> speak<sup>1</sup> of my brother or sister.—I speak of both. — Apples and pears are good fruits; but peaches are preferable to both.\* —I wrote to both; but neither

*servent même usage, m.*  
*partirent campagne, f.*  
*sont déjà revenus se proposer*  
*de rester en hiver, m. ai passé chez*  
*cousine, f. ai appris que s'étoient mariées*  
*a week.*  
*il y avoit une semaine, f. Respectez*  
*tâchez de plaire à*  
*parlez parle*  
*Pomme, f. poire, f. pêches, f.*  
*préférable ai écrit*

\* Observe that both *apples* and *pears* are in the plural; therefore you must translate *to both* as if there were *to the ones and to the others*.

of them answered my letters.——Yesterday<sup>2</sup> I  
*a répondu à*  
 expected<sup>1</sup> my two best friends; but neither of them  
*attendois*

came.——I will give it to neither of them.——Do you<sup>2</sup>  
*vinrent donnerai*

prefer<sup>1</sup> currants to cherries? I like neither of them.\*—  
*groseille, f. cerise, f. aime*

Both religion and virtue are the bonds of civil<sup>2</sup> society<sup>1</sup>.  
*lien, m. société, f.*

——Neither of them has done his duty.†——Neither  
*devoir, m.*

kindness nor rigour moved him.——Neither of those  
*douceur, f. rigueur, f. ébranlèrent ces*

ladies is my mother.——Have you heard from  
*reçu des nouvelles de*

your nephew and your niece since their departure? No,  
*neveu nièce depuis départ Non*

Sir: I correspond with neither of them.——Mr. Pitt

spoke both correctly and elegantly. I both love and  
*parloît*  
 esteem him.

*Quelque-que*, whatever, however.

**RULE 8.**—*Quelque-que*. *Quelque* joined to a noun followed by *que* is *declinable* before a *substantive*, even when that substantive is immediately preceded by an adjective. *Quelque* agrees only in number with the substantive. It is *indeclinable* before an *adjective*, if that adjective is not immediately followed by the substantive it qualifies. It governs the verb in the subjunctive mood. Ex.

*Quelques fautes que vous  
 ayez faites, on vous par-  
 donnera ;*

*Quelque élégamment qu'il  
 parle,*

*Quelque grandes que soient  
 vos fautes, on vous par-  
 donnera ;*

Whatever faults you may  
 have committed, they  
 will forgive you.

However elegantly he may  
 speak.

However great your faults  
 may be, they will forgive  
 you.

\* See the note \*, page 129.

† Say, *neither of them have done their duty.*

*Observation.*—The dash that separates *quelque* from *que*, marks the place that is to be given to the *substantive* or *adjective* that follows *whatever* or *however*.

## EXERCISE.

Whatever efforts people make to hide the truth, it  
*effort, m. on fasse pour voiler*  
 (is discovered) sooner or later.——Whatever services  
*se découvre tôt tard service, m.*  
 you may have done to your country, it will reward  
*avez rendus patrie, f. récompensera*  
 you for them.——Whatever capacity a man may  
*——té, f. puisse*  
 have, he ought not to boast.——However equitable  
*doit se vanter*  
 your offers be,\* I do not believe they will be accepted.  
*offre, f. soient crois soient acceptées*  
 ——Though† kings be ever so powerful, they die  
*soient puissant meurent*  
 (as well as) the meanest of their subjects.——However  
*comme vil sujet, m.*  
 learned those ladies may be, they sometimes<sup>2</sup> mistake<sup>1</sup>.  
*savant quelquefois se trompent*  
 ——However elegantly he may write, his style is  
*——écrive style, m.*  
 not pleasing.  
*agréable*

*Quel que, quelle que, whatever.*

**RULE 9.**—*Quel que, quelle que*, must be thus divided, when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun; and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates. It likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood. Ex.

*Quelle que soit votre faute,      Whatever your fault may*  
*on vous pardonnera,              be, they will forgive you.*

\* This is the construction to be given to those sentences in which *quelque*, however, is followed by an *adjective*. Place *quelque* first, then the *adjective*, then *que*, then the *verb*, and after it, its *subject*, &c. *However equitable that may be your offers, &c.*

† Turn the sentence thus: *However powerful that may be the kings, &c.*

## EXERCISE.

Whatever the enemy be\* whose malice<sup>3</sup> you<sup>1</sup>  
*ennemi, m. malice, f.*  
 dread<sup>2</sup>, you ought to rely on your inno-  
*appréhendez devez vous reposer sur*  
 cence.—Laws condemn all criminals, whoever they  
*condamnent criminel*  
 may be.—Whatever your intentions may be, I  
*puissent intention, f.*  
 think that you (are in the wrong.)—Whatever the  
*crois avez tort*  
 reasons be which you (may allege), they are not  
*raison, f. alléguiez*  
 sufficient.—Whatever these books be, send them to me.  
*suffisant livre*  
 —Whatever her fortune be, he says he never will marry  
*fortune, f. dit épousera*  
 her.†

*Quoi que, quoi que ce soit qui or que*, whatever; *qui que ce soit qui or que*, whoever, whosoever, whomever, &c.

*Quoi que, quoi que ce soit qui or que*, meaning *whatever thing that*; *quelque chose qui or que*, relate to things only; and are always of the masculine gender. *Quoi que ce soit* may be used with or without a negation. When used with a negation, it means *nothing*.

*Qui que ce soit qui or que* relates to persons only. It may be used, as the above pronoun, with or without a negation. When it is used with a negation, it means *nobody, not one person*.

**RULE 10.**—All these pronouns govern the following verb in the subjunctive mood; and, whenever the second member of the sentence which contains *qui que ce soit*, begins with a verb upon which that pronoun acts in English as *subject*, the personal pronoun *il* must be put in French before that verb. Ex.

\* Turn this sentence thus: *Whatever be the enemy of whom you dread the malice*, &c. and take it as a rule, in all sentences like this, to place the verb immediately after *quelque*, whatever, and its subject immediately after, &c.

† *He says THAT he*, &c.



*Quoi que ce soit qu'il vous dise, ne le croyez pas, Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera puni ;*

Whatever he may say to you, do not believe him. Whoever will deceive me, shall be punished.

**EXERCISE.**

Whatever may happen to you, never murmur against  
*puisse arriver* *murmurez contre*  
 Divine Providence; for whatever we may suffer, we  
*car* *souffrions*  
 deserve it.—Whatever I do, you always blame me.—  
*méritons* *fasse* *blâmez*  
 Who is the man who has stolen his money? I know not;  
*Qui* *volé* *sais*  
 but whoever he (may be), and whatever he (may say), if  
*quel qu' il* *soit* *dise*  
 my father catch him, he shall be punished.—In  
*attrappe* *à*  
 whatever your master employs you, do it heartily.  
*emploie* *faites* *de bon cœur*  
 —Whatever you may say, your brothers shall be  
*disiez* *seront*  
 punished, if they deserve it.—Whoever despises the  
*méritent* *méprise*  
 poor is himself despicable.—Whoever speaks to you,  
*lui-même méprisable*  
 do not answer.—Whoever (may presume to ask) you  
*répondez* *ose* *faire*  
 any questions concerning that affair, pretend not  
*quelque question, f. touchant* *feignez*  
 to know anything about it.\*—Of whomever you speak,  
*de savoir rien* *parliez*  
 always speak the truth.—To whomever you apply,  
*dites* *vous vous adressiez*  
 every body (will tell) you the same thing.—With  
*tout le monde dira* *même chose, f.* *Avec*  
 whomever you be, always behave well.  
*soyez* *comportez-vous*

\* *Feignez de n'en rien savoir.* Rien being a negative pronoun, it takes the place of *pas* or *point*; and so do all negative pronouns and negative adverbs.

Observations upon *Qui que ce soit, qui que ce fût, quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, when attended by the negation *ne*.

1. These expressions, when attended by the negation *ne*, are Englished different ways; such as, *nobody, no one, no man living, nobody whatever; nothing, nothing at all, nothing whatever*.

2. *Qui que ce soit, qui que ce fût*, are not to be used indiscriminately. I say the same of *quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*. Their different applications offer, when they are objects of the verb, a certain difficulty. If proper attention be paid to the following rule, the difficulty will vanish.

RULE 11.—*Qui que ce soit* and *quoi que ce soit* are to be used whenever the verb to which the pronoun is joined is either in the *present, future, imperative, preterit indefinite or future past*. When the verb is in any of the other tenses, *qui que ce fût* and *quoi que ce fût* must be used. Ex.

*Je ne vois qui que ce soit,*  
*Je ne croirai qui que ce soit,*

I see nobody whatever.  
I shall believe no man living.

*Ne parlez mal de qui que ce soit,*

Speak ill of nobody whatever.

*Je n'ai parlé à qui que ce soit de ce que vous me dites hier,*

I have spoken to no one of what you told me yesterday.

*Je n'aurai vu qui que ce soit, quand vous reviendrez;*

I shall have seen nobody whatever when you return.

*Il ne m'a parlé de quoi que ce soit,*

He has spoken to me of nothing whatever.

*Il ne fit de mal à qui que ce fût,*

He did no harm to any body whatever.

*Je ne m'occupois de quoi que ce fût,*

I applied to nothing at all.

*Si j'étois roi usurpateur, je ne me ferois à qui que ce fût;*

Were I a king and a usurper, I should not trust to any man living.

## EXERCISE.

I spoke to nobody whatever.——Charity bids us  
*ai parlé* *ordonne*  
 (to speak ill) of nobody, and to do harm to no  
*de médire* *personne* *de faire de mal*  
 man living.——Never speak to any body whatever of  
*parlez*  
 what I have told you.——He acquainted nobody in the  
*ai dit* *fit part*  
 world with his projects.——My brother was so honest,  
*de* *projet, m.* *étoit*  
 that he mistrusted nobody at all.——Cromwell  
*se défioit de*  
 would trust his life to nobody whatever.——My  
*voulut confier* *vie, f.*  
 brother enjoys (so good a state of health), that  
*jouit d'une si bonne* *santé, f.*  
 (for these) three years he (has never complained).——  
*depuis* *ne s'est jamais plaint*  
 He is so lazy that he applies to nothing whatever.——  
*s'applique*  
 You may go and take a walk in the garden,  
*pouvez aller* *vous promener dans*  
 but do not touch any thing whatever.——Whoever  
*touchez à* *Quiconque*  
 believes every thing which (he is told) is often deceived.  
*croit tout ce qu' on lui dit* *trompé*  
 He (is ordered) to stop every one that (will go)  
*a ordre de arrêter quiconque* *passera*  
 that way.  
*par-là*

*Tout ce qui, tout ce que, whatever.*

**RULE 12.**—When *whatever* can be turned into *all that which, every thing that or which*, it must be translated into French by *tout ce qui* or *tout ce que*,\* and may be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence, according to its situation in English. The verb following must be put in the indicative mood. Ex.

*Il fera toujours tout ce qu'il*      He will always do what-  
*vous plaira,*      ever you please.

\* By *tout ce qui* if, in *every thing which*, the pronoun *which* is subject of the following verb; and by *tout ce que*, if it is not.

## EXERCISE.

In whatever you do be guided by honesty  
*Dans faites soyez guidé honnêteté*  
 and probity ; and in whatever you say, never deviate  
*dites vous écarter*  
 from the path of truth.——Whatever is pleasing is  
*sentier, m. agréable*  
 not always useful.——Tell me whatever you think of me,  
*utile Dites pensez*  
 and I (will tell) you whatever I think of you.——Never  
*dirai*  
 speak of whatever has passed between us both.——She  
*s'est passé entre deux*  
 is so curious that she will know whatever I do.—What-  
*curieux veut savoir fais*  
 ever glitters is not gold.——I (will pay) you to-morrow  
*luit n'est pas or, m. paierai*  
 whatever I owe you.  
*dois*

*Tout-que*, although, though, however, &c.  
*Tout*, quite, entirely, completely.

RULE 13.—*Tout-que*.—*Tout*, preceding an adjective immediately followed by *que*, is declinable only before adjectives used in the feminine gender and beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated. *Tout* must be repeated before every adjective. The verb following is to be put in the indicative mood.\*

*Tout* (adverb), meaning *quite, completely*, follows the same rule, when placed before an adjective. The *dash* which separates *tout* from *que* points out the place to be given to the *adjective*. Ex.

<i>Tout savants qu'ils sont, ils</i>	Learned as they are, they
<i>se trompent quelquefois,</i>	sometimes mistake.
<i>Toute savante qu'elle est, elle</i>	Learned as she is, she
<i>se trompe quelquefois,</i>	sometimes mistakes.

\* Give to the sentences applied to this rule the following construction : Place *tout* first ; then the *adjective*, then *que*, then the *verb*, and after it its *subject*, except it be a personal pronoun ; for, in that case, it must precede the verb.

## EXERCISE.

Although my sister is ugly, she gets friends every-  
 where.—*laid se fait par-*  
 Amiable as she is, she does not please me at  
 tout *Aimable en plait du*  
 all.—Though they are rich, they give nothing to the  
 tout *donnent*  
 poor.—Although your mother is young, she appears  
 pauvre *paroit*  
 old.—Generous as he is, he has not given me one  
 âgé *a donné*  
 farthing.—Although his aunt is angry with him, she  
 liard, m. *tante fâché contre*  
 will forgive him his faults, great as they are.—  
*pardonnera lui faute, f.*  
 However young, amiable, handsome, and rich my friend's  
*beau*  
 sisters are, they were not married the last time I saw  
 étoient *fois, f. vis*  
 them.\*—Hope, deceitful as it is, serves, at least,  
*Espérance, f. trompeur sert au moins*  
 to lead us to the end of life through a pleasing<sup>2</sup>  
*à conduire fin, f. par agréable*  
 path<sup>1</sup>.—That young person is quite ashamed of  
*chemin, m. personne, f. honteuse de*  
 having expressed herself as she has.  
*être exprimée se comme l'a fait*

*Quelque, quelqu'un, quelqu'une, some, any.*

*Quelqu'un, somebody.*

RULE 14.—*Quelque* is always joined to a substantive, with which it agrees in number only. *Quelqu'un, quelqu'une*, some, any, always relates to a substantive either expressed before, or understood immediately after the pronoun itself; and it must agree in gender and number with that substantive. The feminine of *quelqu'un* is *quelqu'une*; the plural masculine is *quelques-uns*, and the plural feminine is *quelques-unes*. *Quelqu'un*, somebody, is indeclinable, it takes neither gender nor number: it means *some person*. Ex.

\* *The last time THAT I, &c.*

*Quelques astronomes n'ont-ils pas cru, que la lune est habitée? Oui, quelques-uns l'ont cru. Quelqu'un me l'a dit.*

Have not some astronomers thought that the moon is inhabited? Yes, some have thought so. Somebody has told it me.

## EXERCISE.

When he comes to see us, he has always some  
*Quand vient voir*  
 tale to tell us.—He promised to bring me some  
*conte, m. à faire a promis de*  
 books.—Have you heard any news?—Somebody  
*appris nouvelle, f.*  
 knocks at the door; go and open it.—Is there  
*frappe à allez ouvrir Y a-t-il*  
 any of these ladies who has found my colour<sup>2</sup> - box<sup>1</sup>?  
*dame, f. ait trouvé à couleurs, f.*  
 —Have you any (raspberry-trees) in your garden? I  
*des framboisier, m.*  
 have some.\*—Has he any vines? Yes, he has some.†  
*A-t-il des vigne, f. Oui*

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner.

<i>Je ne sais qui,</i>	I know not who, whom.
<i>Je ne sais quoi,</i>	I know not what.
<i>Je ne sais quel, quelle, &amp;c.</i>	I know not which or what.

*Je ne sais qui* is only said of persons, and signifies a person we do not know. *Je ne sais quoi* is only said of things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named or defined. *Je ne sais quel* is said speaking of both persons and things. Lastly, we sometimes put *un* before *je ne sais qui*, and indifferently *un* or *le* before *je ne sais quoi*. *Je ne sais qui* and *je ne sais quoi* are invariable. In *je ne sais quel* the pronoun *quel* takes the gender and number of the following noun. Ex.

\* Say, I have some of them: J'EN AI QUELQUES-UNS.

† Read the above note\*.

<i>Il parle de je ne sais quoi,</i>	He speaks of I know not what.
<i>Je vis je ne sais quel homme, quelle femme,</i>	I saw I know not what man, what woman.
<i>Il parle d'un je ne sais qui,</i>	He speaks of I know not whom.
<i>J'ai lu une comédie intitulée —Le je ne sais quoi,</i>	I have read a play which has for its title—I know not what.

## EXERCISE.

When I paid a visit to my friend, I addressed myself to I know not whom.——He (keeps company with) I know not whom, and that displeases her.——

Whilst she (was speaking) to him, she was accosted by Pendant qu'elle parloit fut abordée par I know not whom.——He complains of I know not what.\*

——When I (went in), I saw I know not what man, what woman, what pictures, what figures.——She speaks to I know not whom.——(There is) in that I know not what that pleases me.

*Observation.*—Before I conclude this article and pass to the verbs, it may be proper to throw some light on a little difficulty relative to the words *one, ones*, which I shall call an *adjective pronoun* and not a numeral adjective, the nature of which is to be confined to *unity*, and consequently to exclude *plurality*.

## ONE, ONES.

**RULE 15.**—These words are not to be translated when they come immediately after an adjective. Ex.

\* *What*, meaning *what thing*, must be translated by *quoi*.





that esteems her more than I do? — Attention, cares,  
*estime* *soin, m.*  
 credit, money, I have put every thing in use. — They  
*mis en usage, m.*  
 are happy; but we are not so. — Every body thinks that  
*heureux* *croit*  
 I am the mother of that child; I assure you I am not.\* —

Ladies, are you the companions of Miss le Noir?  
*Mesdames êtes compagne, f. Mademoiselle*  
 Yes, we are. — That dictionary costs me three guineas;  
*coûte*

but I owe much to it. — Whatever (may be) your  
*dois beaucoup lui soient*  
 troubles, you ought to write to me more frequently. —  
*peine, f. devriez écrire souvent*

I (will lend) you the book which she has sent me. —  
*prêterai a envoyé*

Believe me; he is very ill. — I (shall be) very glad to  
*Croyez malade serai aise de*  
 go there with you; for I have something to tell him.†  
*aller y avec car à dire*

— I love your sister, and I owe her respect. — Give  
*aime lui respect, m.*

me my hat and cloak. — I have dined with your  
*chapeau, m. mantelet, m. diné*

father and mother. — They<sup>1</sup> often<sup>4</sup> procure<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup>  
*souvent procurent*

that pleasure. — If it be not an indiscretion on my  
*Si ce est indiscretion, f. de*

part, pray tell me what passed between you and  
*part, f. de grace dites s'est passé entre*

them. — They have sent you good apples. Yes;  
*ont envoyé pomme, f.*

there were some good ones and some bad ones. — Write  
*il y en avoit Ecrivez*

to me, do not write to her. — Carry some to your  
*Portez*

sister. — I (will do) whatever you please. — The  
*ferai plaira*

\* See Rule 11 on the pronouns *le, la, les*, page 88.

† The person is always the indirect object to the verb *dire*. Therefore translate *him* as if it were *to him*, *LUI*.

Thames is a very fine river; it divides London into two  
*Tamise, f. rivière, f. divise en*

parts.——London is the capital of England, as  
*partie, f. capitale, f. comme*

Paris is that of France; (it is) a fine city; but some of  
*c'est ville, f.*

its streets are very inconvenient and narrow.——Brest is  
*ses rue, f. incommode étroit*

a fine sea - port; but its entrance is difficult and  
*de mer, f. port, m. entrée, f. difficile*

dangerous.——Brother, these books are mine, and not  
*eux non pas*

yours.——Your exercise is better than mine; but it  
*thème, m. mieux fait*

is not so well done as your sister's.——Do you<sup>2</sup> think<sup>1</sup> of  
*bien fait pensez à*

me? Yes, I do.\*——You do not know what vexes me.——  
*pense fâche*

I will not accept of any of the terms which they  
*veux accepter condition, f.*

offer me.——Whom ought we to worship? God, who  
*offrent devons adorer Dieu*

is the father of them that love him, and the protector of  
*aiment*

those that fear him.——Of all those who contend  
*craignent disputent*

against religion, some do it because it perplexes  
*contre les uns font parceque embarrasse*

them; others, because they wish to have the glory of  
*les autres veulent*

perplexing its defenders.——Those trees are well  
*embarrasser défenseur, m. arbre, m.*

exposed to the sun, nevertheless their fruits are not  
*exposé soleil, m. cependant leurs*

good.——I believe your uncle is arrived.†——His  
*crois oncle arrivé*

ability is not so great as yours.——Two rivals are  
*habileté, f. grand rival, † m.*

generally enemies of one another.——Sister, who gave  
*a donné*

\* Translate *I do* as if it were *I think to you*.

† *I believe THAT your, &c.*

‡ Nouns ending in *al* form generally their plural in *aux*.

you that letter? Our uncle's servant.——What does he  
*lettre, f. domestique, m.*  
 write to you? That his library is at our service; and  
*écrit bibliothèque, f.*  
 I assure you that he has a very good one.\*—His letters  
*en a très*  
 please me (so much) that I wish to increase their  
*plaisent tant veux augmenter*  
 number.—Both my father and aunt are now at Rome;  
*sont à présent*  
 the former writes once a week; the latter scarcely<sup>2</sup>  
*écrit une fois, f. à peine*  
 writes<sup>1</sup> to me twice a year.——He that wants  
*deux fois manque de*  
 virtue wants (all things).——That lady pleases you;  
*de tout, m. dame plait*  
 for you<sup>1</sup> are<sup>3</sup> always<sup>4</sup> speaking<sup>3</sup> of her<sup>2</sup>.——The beauty  
*car beauté, f.*  
 of the mind creates admiration; that of the soul  
*esprit, m. donne l'âme, f.*  
 gains esteem; and that of the body love.——Most  
*donne l'estime, f. corps, m. l'amour, m.*  
 friends are more attached to our fortune than they are to  
*attaché que-ne*  
 our person.—Whoever is without virtue, seldom<sup>2</sup> values<sup>1</sup>  
*sans rarement estime*  
 men; and whoever is too good, values them (too much).  
*trop trop*  
 ——It is she who told me that this house is not yours.  
*Ce a dit maison, f.*  
 ——You believe that Mrs. D. is in your interests;  
*croyez dans intérêt, m.*  
 and I believe nothing of it.——Ambition (tramples upon)  
*crois ne-rien foule aux pieds*  
 wisdom, honour, probity; and on their ruins it lays the  
*sur ruine, f. élève*  
 foundation of its greatness.——Whatever her intention  
*fondement, m. grandeur, f.*  
 may be, I do <sup>2</sup>not<sup>6</sup> love<sup>3</sup> her<sup>3</sup> the less<sup>7</sup> (for it<sup>4</sup>).——I  
*soit aime en*  
 assure you that I have answered both her letter and her  
*assure répondu à à*

\* Say, he of it has one very good—[LEN A UNE, &c.]

brother's.—Nobody in the world has complained of your conduct.—When you read the history of the Roman emperors, you will find one (of them) whose name\* was Nero.—The study of geography is absolutely necessary to him who has (a taste) for history.—He that sold us this clock did not cheat us.—What do you<sup>2</sup> think<sup>1</sup> of it?—Whoever cheats me shall repent (of it).—Every body thinks† we (shall have) peace.—When I (went in), the members of the assembly were seated every one in his place.—I, who did not know that they were reconciled, was much surprised to see them together.—England owes her riches to her naval<sup>2</sup> strength<sup>1</sup> and to the encouragement she gives to her commerce.‡—We speak of what has happened to him.—Well! if he spend (other people's) money, he does not spend yours.—My house is (like others), it has its beauties (as well as) its inconveniences.—She who (was speaking) to you is not yet married.—Her father, mother, brothers, sisters, uncles, and aunts; in short, all her relations are dead, and have left her a considerable<sup>2</sup> fortune<sup>1</sup>.

\* Say, of whom the name, &c.

† Say, thinks THAT we, &c.

‡ Say, and to the encouragement WHICH she, &c.

Those gentlemen have fine horses; but mine are finer  
*cheval, m. sont*  
 than theirs.—Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> any of those ladies?

Yes; I know some of them.—Though they are young  
*connoissez*  
*connois*  
 and handsome, they have (a great deal) of modesty and  
*out beaucoup*  
 virtue. Yes, niece; but they are both rich and proud.—

Desire him to bring them here.—(Is that) the gown  
*nièce orgueilleux*  
*Priez de amener ici Est-ce là robe, f.*  
 for which you gave five guineas?—If I had been  
*pour avez donné eusse été*  
 in your place, I (would have) preferred the white one to  
*à place aurois préféré*  
 the black one.—(How many<sup>1</sup>) books<sup>3</sup> (are<sup>2</sup> there) in  
*Combien de livres y-a-t-il dans*  
 that library?—(There are) three thousand seven  
*bibliothèque Il y en a*  
 hundred and twenty-seven in the library; fifty-two upon

the table; and nineteen in my room.—Whose house is  
 this? \* It belongs to I know not whom.—(There is)  
*appartient Il-y-a*

I know not what in the colour which pleases much.—  
*dans couleur, f. plait*

To what (does he apply himself?)—This apple, and that  
*s'applique-t-il*

he gave you, are very good.—Give me (either of  
*donna Donnez l'une ou*  
 them).—I will send you some thither.—I cannot  
*l'autre enverrai ne peux pas*

sell it to you for so<sup>2</sup> small<sup>3</sup> a<sup>1</sup> sum<sup>4</sup>.—I prefer the  
*vendre pour somme, f. préfère*  
 beauty of the mind to that of the body.—Some love  
*aiment*

one thing, some another.—She says she hates that man;†  
*dit hait*  
 many think she loves him.—He whom nobody pleases  
*aime à*

\* Say, to whom is this house?

† Say, she says THAT she, &c., many think THAT she, &c.

is more unhappy than he who pleases nobody.——I  
*malheureux* *à*

was near your sister when that happened to her.——  
*étois auprès de* *quand* *arriva*

Both his father and mother died on the same day.——  
*moururent*

As covetous as he is, he gave me a guinea.——There  
*avare* *a donné* *Il-y-a*

are many people whom we esteem, because we do not  
*bien, adv.* *gens* *estimons parceque* *en*

know them.——Whatever has happened to you, I am  
*connoissons* *soit arrivé*

very sorry for it.——He would do it in spite of any body  
*fâché* *voulut faire en dépit*

whatever.——Learning is preferable to fortune, and  
*Science, f.* *fortune, f.*

virtue to both.——Some philosophers have thought  
*philosophe, m.* *ont* *cru*

that the fixed stars are (so many) suns.——See with  
*fixe étoile, f.* *sont autant de soleil* *Voyez*

what care, attention and perseverance every animal  
*tous les animaux*

(rears up) its young ones.——(Here are) two gram-  
*élèvent leurs petit* *Voici*

mars; which do you<sup>2</sup> prefer? I prefer this to that.——

Both are very good.——He believes nothing of what you  
*croit* *ne-rien*

told him.——You blame him who does not deserve  
*avez dit* *blâmez* *en* *mérite*

it.——Friend, to whom did you speak? I spoke to  
*avez* *parlé* *ai parlé*

nobody.

#### CHAP. IV.—OF VERBS.

The *verb* is a word generally used to convey affirmation. It expresses the state of its subject, or the action spoken of; which action is done, received or suffered by the subject of the verb. Ex.

*Je suis heureux,*  
*Je punis les méchants,*  
*Il est puni par son père,*

I am happy.  
 I punish the wicked.  
 He is punished by his father.

In the first example, I affirm that my state is that of happiness; in the second, *I*, which is the subject of the verb *punish*, does the action that is received by the wicked; and in the third, *he*, which is the subject of *is punished*, receives the action done by *his father*. There are six sorts of verbs, which are

<i>Les verbes auxiliaires,</i>	Auxiliary.
<i>Les verbes actifs,</i>	Active.
<i>Les verbes passifs,</i>	Passive.
<i>Les verbes neutres,</i>	Neuter.
<i>Les verbes réfléchis,</i>	Reflected.
<i>Les verbes impersonnels,</i>	Impersonal.

Some of them are *regular*, some are *irregular*, and some are *defective*.

A verb is considered as *regular* when it takes in all its tenses and moods all the terminations or forms which belong to one of the four conjugations.

It is *irregular* when in some of the tenses it takes terminations or forms different from those which characterize the conjugation to which it belongs.

A verb is *defective* when it has not all the regular tenses, or even when one of its tenses has not the usual number of persons.

There are two *auxiliary verbs*, which are *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. They are used to conjugate the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verb* is that which expresses an action done by its subject and received by its object.

We may always put after the active verb these words : *quelqu'un*, somebody ; *quelque chose*, something. Ex. *J'aime la vertu*, I love virtue ; *Il cherche son livre*, he looks for his book ; I may say, *J'aime quelqu'un* or *quelque chose* ; *Il cherche quelqu'un* or *quelque chose*. The *active verb* may have two objects, one of them *direct*, the other *indirect*. The *direct object* is so called, because it is governed directly by the verb ; that is to say, without the assistance of any preposition expressed or understood. The *indirect object* is governed indirectly by the verb ; that is to say, with the assistance of a preposition expressed or understood.—(See on the Personal Pronouns, Observation 3, page 71.)

The *passive verb* is that which expresses an action

received or suffered by the subject of the verb and done by another; it may always be followed by one of these prepositions *de* or *par*, by. Ex.

*Les écoliers paresseux seront  
punis par leurs maîtres,  
Les gens vertueux sont es-  
timés de tout le monde,*

Lazy scholars will be pu-  
nished by their masters.  
Virtuous people are es-  
teemed by every body.

The *neuter verb* is that which either expresses no action, or expresses an action that either remains in him who does it, or goes beyond him *with the assistance of a preposition*. Ex.

*Il dort,  
Il marche,  
Vous nuisez à ma réputation,*

He sleeps,  
He walks,  
You do injury to my repu-  
tation.

The *reflected verb* expresses an action that returns to, or is reflected upon, him who does it. It always takes a double pronoun of the same person; and is invariably preceded in the present of the infinitive by the pronoun *se*, oneself. Ex.

*Elle se loue,*

She praises herself.

The *impersonal verbs* are those which are never used but in the third person singular. The pronoun *il*, which precedes them, never takes the place of any noun. Ex.

*Il faut,*

It is necessary.

*Il pleut,*

It rains.

*Il convient,*

It is proper.

#### CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflections or terminations, according to their *moods, tenses, persons* and *numbers*.

#### -MOODS.

*Mood* or *mode*, in the sense in which it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the manner of affirming or denoting, by different inflections.

There are in the French language four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by their inflections, or some other difference. They are,



<i>L'infinitif,</i>	The infinitive.
<i>L'indicatif,</i>	The indicative.
<i>L'impératif,</i>	The imperative.
<i>Le subjonctif ou conjonctif,</i>	The subjunctive or conjunctive.

#### OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner; that is, without affirmation, and without any relation as to time, number or person. Ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chanter,</i>	To sing.
<i>Danser,</i>	To dance.

#### OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it not only *indicates* affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise time, number and person; without being preceded or governed by either conjunction or verb. Ex.

<i>J'écris une lettre,</i>	I write a letter.
<i>Il chante une chanson,</i>	He sings a song.

*Écris* and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood by comparing the little that has been said with what is to be observed with respect to the subjunctive mood.

#### OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name which has been given to this mood is derived from a Latin word which signifies *to command*; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding*, *entreating*, *praying*, *exhorting*; and sometimes *forbidding*. Ex.

<i>Aimez Dieu,</i>	Love God.
<i>Servez-le fidèlement,</i>	Serve him faithfully.
<i>Ne méprisez pas les avis que je vous donne,</i>	Do not despise the advice which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking in the last example is but an exhortation, as if I had said,

*Je vous prie, de ne pas mé-  
priser mes avis,*

I entreat you not to de-  
spise my advice.

This mood has no first person in the singular, because it is impossible for a man to give command to himself; and if it has the first person plural, it is because we speak as much to others as to ourselves; as when we say,

*Évitons tout ce qui pour-  
roit offenser les autres,*

Let us avoid every thing  
that might offend others.

The second person singular and the first and second persons plural admit of no pronouns before them; as to the third in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*. This person should be, in my opinion, confined to the present of the subjunctive mood; for when I say, *qu'il vienne*, there is an ellipsis, which is this; *je veux, j'ordonne, or je com-  
mande*.

#### OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR CONJUNCTIVE.

The *subjunctive* or *conjunctive* mood may be defined thus: a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verb without any affirmation. In fact, the subjunctive never affirms; it is always preceded by, and subject to a conjunction; and if it should be in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used but to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

*Je travaille afin que vous  
vous reposiez,*

I work that you may rest,

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work; and what follows only expresses the end which I propose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

*Je désire que vous fassiez  
votre devoir,*

I wish that you may do  
your duty.

I affirm that I wish; but it is clear that there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*; since I do not say that you do, that you have done, that you will do your duty; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.

TENSES.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses* in the verbs; viz.

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. five in the infinitive mood; three of them are simple, the two others compound.

In the simple tenses, the verb is expressed in one word.

Ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with one of the auxiliary verbs *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle past. Ex.

<i>Avoir parlé,</i>	To have spoken.
<i>Ayant chanté,</i>	Having sung.
<i>Être aimé,</i>	To be loved.
<i>Étant aimé,</i>	Being loved.

SIMPLE TENSES.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe actif,</i>	The participle active.
<i>Le participe passé,</i>	The participle past.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérît,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le participe passé ou composé,</i>	The participle past or compound.

There are ten tenses in the indicative mood; five are simple and five compound.

SIMPLE TENSES.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérît défini,</i>	The preterite definite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel présent,</i>	The conditional present.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

<i>Le prétérit indéfini,</i>	The preterite indefinite.
<i>Le prétérit antérieur défini,</i>	The preterite anterior definite.
<i>Le plusqueparfait,</i>	The preterpluperfect.
<i>Le futur passé ou composé,</i>	The future past or compound.
<i>Le conditionnel passé,</i>	The conditional past.

N. B. The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses; two are simple and two compound.

## SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.

## COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérit,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le plusqueparfait,</i>	The preterpluperfect.

Before I proceed any further on the conjugations, I think it proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, the precision of which partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. I shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learner.

## TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Simple Tenses.*

## Present.

This tense is used when the state, action or impression mentioned by the verb is *existing, doing or happening* at the very time we are speaking. Ex.

<i>Je me PORTE bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur EST malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous PROMENONS,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous ÉCRIVEZ,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils JOUENT,</i>	<i>They are playing, &amp;c.</i>

RULE 1.—The present is also used:

1. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually* do, are accustomed to do, or can do. Ex.

<i>Nous DÎNONS toujours à</i>	We always dine at two
<i>deux heures,</i>	o'clock.
<i>Elle ÉTUDIE l'histoire,</i>	She studies history.
<i>Vous PARLEZ François,</i>	You speak French.
<i>LIT-IL l'Anglois ?</i>	Does he read English ?

2. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future. Ex.

<i>Je PARS ce soir pour la</i>	I shall set out this evening
<i>campagne,</i>	for the country.
<i>Que FAITES vous demain ?</i>	What will you do to-mor-
	row ?

Instead of

<i>Je PARTIRAI ce soir pour</i>	I shall set out this evening
<i>la campagne,</i>	for the country.
<i>Que FEREZ vous demain ?</i>	What will you do to-mor-
	row ?

3. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite definite or preterite indefinite, especially in *orations* or *set discourses*, and in poetry, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers. Ex.

<i>Les armées étoient en présence ; on en vint aux mains. Aussitôt une nuée de traits</i>	The armies were in sight ; the engagement began.
<i>OBSCURCIT l'atmosphère et COUVRE les combattans ; on N'ENTEND plus que les cris des mourans ;</i>	Immediately a crowd of arrows darkens the air and covers the combatants ; nothing is heard but the cries of the dying.

4. This tense is used instead of the *future* when the verb is preceded by *si*, if, expressing a condition. Ex.

<i>Si il vient, je partirai,</i>	If he come, I shall go ; that is to say, <i>if he will come.</i>
----------------------------------	--

## Imperfect.

RULE 2.—1. This tense is used to express an action *present* or *doing* at the time an action *that is past* took place; as when I say,

*Mon frère APPRENOIT sa leçon quand vous arrivâtes,*

*My brother was learning his lesson when you arrived.*

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place; therefore this tense is but imperfectly past, and imperfectly present.

2. The *imperfect* is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit* or *actions reiterated* at a time which is not defined. Ex.

*Quand j'ÉTOIS à Londres, j'ALLOIS souvent voir mes amis,*

*When I was in London, I often went to see my friends; that is to say, I often used to go, or I frequently went, &c.*

3. The *imperfect* is likewise used when we speak of the *character* or of some *inherent* and *distinctive qualities* of persons or things no longer existing. It is also used after the English conjunction *if*, instead of the conditional, though the verb be preceded by *should* or *would*. Ex.

*Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, ÉTOIT le plus fin politique de son temps,*

*Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, was the deepest politician of his time.*

*César AVOIT je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physionomie,*

*Cæsar had something noble in his physiognomy.*

*Carthage FAISAIT un prodigieux commerce par le moyen de ses vaisseaux, qui ALLOIENT jusqu'aux Indes,*

*Carthage carried on a prodigious trade by the means of her ships, which went as far as the Indies.*

*Palmire et Persépolis ÉTOIENT de grandes et belles villes,*

*Palmyra and Persepolis were large and fine cities.*

S'il VENOIT je le paierois,

If he would come, or if he came, I would pay him.

George Second *ÉTOIT* d'une taille plutôt petite que moyenne ; il AVOIT les yeux très saillans, le nez grand, et le teint fleuri ; il *ÉTOIT* doux, modéré et humain, sobre et régulier dans sa manière de vivre ; il se PLAISOIT dans la pompe, et dans l'appareil militaire ; et *ÉTOIT* naturellement brave ; il AIMOIT la guerre comme soldat ; il l'*ÉTUDIOIT* comme une science ; et il AVOIT, sur ce sujet, une correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produits ;

George the Second was below the middle size of men ; he *had* remarkably prominent eyes, a high nose, and a fair complexion ; he *was* mild, moderate, and humane ; in his way of living, sober and regular ; he *delighted* in military pomp and parade, and *was* naturally brave ; he *loved* war as a soldier ; he *studied* it as a science ; and *had*, on this account, a settled correspondence with some of the greatest generals that Germany ever produced.

### Preterite Definite.

RULE 3.—1. This tense is used to express an action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirely elapsed, that nothing more remains of the time in which that action was doing. The time *entirely* elapsed must be a *century*, a *year*, a *month*, a *week* or a *day*. Ex.

Je fus malade HIER pendant deux heures,

I was ill yesterday for two hours.

La DERNIÈRE FOIS que nous ALLÂMES le voir, nous EÛMES un accueil favorable,

The last time we went to see him, we *had* a favourable reception.

Vous ÉCRIVÎTES à votre frère, ILYA HUIT JOURS, Ils ESSUYÈRENT de grandes pertes l'ANNÉE PASSÉE,

You wrote to your brother eight days ago.

They underwent great losses last year.

2. The preterite definite is also used when we speak of

transient virtues or vices of persons that no longer exist.  
Ex.

*César FUT cruel envers Ci-  
céron,*

*Cæsar was cruel towards  
Cicero.*

*Future.*

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come. Ex.

*Je vous VERRAI demain à  
Londres,*

*I shall see you to-morrow  
in London.*

*Mon frère vous ÉCRIRA la  
semaine prochaine,*

*My brother will write to  
you next week.*

*Observations.*—1. In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly, by the verb *aller* or *s'en aller* to go, immediately followed by an infinitive. Ex.

*JE VAIS OR JE M'EN VAIS  
écrire à ma tante,*

*I am going to write to my  
aunt.*

*JE VAIS OR JE M'EN VAIS  
partir,*

*I am going to set out.*

Which sentences signify,

*Je lui ÉCRIRAI à l'instant,*

*I will write to her imme-  
diately.*

*Je PARTIRAI dans l'instant,*

*I will set out instantly.*

2. When we wish to express that we intend to do a thing, that it is probable we shall do it, we often and elegantly make use of the verb *devoir* in the present of the indicative mood, immediately followed by the verb expressive of the future action in the present of the infinitive; no preposition precedes it. This is the only instance in which the verb *devoir* does not imply *obligation* or *necessity*. Ex.

*Le roi DOIT PARTIR pour  
Cheltenham vers le mi-  
lieu du mois de Juillet, et  
ne DOIT REVENIR qu'à la  
fin du mois d'Août,*

*The king is to set out for  
Cheltenham about the  
middle of July; and is  
not to return till the lat-  
ter end of August.*

That is,

*On pense que le roi PAR-  
TIRA, &c. et qu'il ne RE-  
VIENDRA, &c.*

*It is supposed that the  
king will set out, &c. and  
will not return till, &c.*



*Conditional Present.*

The *conditional* expresses an affirmation depending upon a condition. Ex.

<i>Je LIROIS si j'avois des livres,</i>	<i>I would read if I had books.</i>
<i>Vous AURIEZ la fièvre si vous mangiez de ce fruit,</i>	<i>You would have a fever if you were to eat of that fruit.</i>
<i>Je SEROIS mortifié s'il perdait son procès,</i>	<i>I should be mortified if he lost his law-suit.</i>

*Observation.*—It is sometimes used instead of the future, after the conjunction *que*. Ex.

<i>Il a promis QU'il VIENDROIT,</i>	<i>He has promised to come, or that he will come.</i>
-------------------------------------	---

COMPOUND TENSES.

*Preterite Indefinite.*

**RULE 4.**—1. The *preterite indefinite* is used to express an action past in an indeterminate time, but not very far distant from the time in which we speak. Thus we must say,

<i>J'AI VU Mademoiselle votre sœur, et je lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>I have seen your sister, and spoken to her.</i>
<i>Le Roi de Prusse A CONQUIS la Silésie,</i>	<i>The King of Prussia has conquered Silesia.</i>
<i>Cela S'EST PASSÉ avantageusement pour votre cousin,</i>	<i>That has passed advantageously for your cousin.</i>

In the above sentences, the actions are certainly past; but the time when they passed is neither determined nor specified.

2. The *preterite indefinite* is used to express a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse. Ex.

<i>Les fruits ONT très-bien RÉUSSI cette année,</i>	<i>Fruits have succeeded very well this year.</i>
<i>Nous n'AVONS pas EU beaucoup de neige cet hiver,</i>	<i>We have not had much snow this winter.</i>

*Il a* PLU *toute cette semaine,*  
*tout ce mois;*

*Nous AVONS VU* *d'étranges*  
*choses dans ce siècle,*

*It has rained* all this week,  
all this month.

*We have seen* strange things  
this century.

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter,* &c. are times which still last, and are not yet elapsed.

*Observations.*—1. To express an action recently passed, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de*, and by the verb expressing the action. This verb must be put in the infinitive mood. Ex.

*Je VIENS DE le voir passer,*  
*Le roi VIENT d'arriver,*  
*Elle VIENT D'EXPIRER,*

*I have just seen* him go by.  
*The king is but just arrived.*  
*She is but just dead.*

2. The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne*, and followed by *que de*; the verb expressing the action comes next, and must be put in the present of the infinitive mood. Ex.

*Il NE FAIT QUE d'arriver,*  
*Je NE FAIS QUE DE sortir,*

*He is but just arrived.*  
*I have but just gone out.*

This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would convey the idea of a continuation or of a frequent reiteration of the action. Ex.

*Vous ne faites que sortir,*  
*Elle ne fait que jouer et*  
*danser,*

*You do nothing but go out.*  
*She does nothing but play*  
*and dance.*

That is to say, *you are incessantly going out; she is incessantly playing and dancing.*

### *Preterite Anterior Definite.*

**RULE 5.**—This tense is used to express an action past, or done before another, which is likewise past. For this reason, it is also called *anterior*. It is named *definite*, not only on account of its being a compound of the preterite definite of the verb *avoir*, but because it expresses an action done at a time determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of our attention. Thus when we say,

*Quand ils EURENT ACHÉVÉ*  
*de jouer, ils se mirent à*  
*chanter;*

*When they had done play-*  
*ing, they began singing,*

we mean at first to convey that they *began singing*; and that it was not till they had *done playing*: in which case, the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, they *began singing*; and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

*Observation.*—This tense is hardly ever used except after the following conjunctions:

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	} As soon as,	<i>Après que,</i>	After,
<i>D'abord que,</i>		<i>Lorsque,</i>	} When,
<i>Dès que,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	

which never precede a preterpluperfect, unless the verb expresses a custom or habit.

**RULE 6.**—We must also use the preterite anterior definite when the adverb *bientôt*, soon, precedes or follows the verb *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished. Ex.

<i>L'affaire fut BIENTÔT faite,</i>	The business was <i>soon</i> over.
<i>J'eus BIENTÔT fini de manger,</i>	I had <i>soon</i> done eating.

### *Preterpluperfect.*

**RULE 7.**—The preterpluperfect is used, as well as the above tense, to express an action past before another which is past also; but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks; and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the preterpluperfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As when we say,

<i>Nous AVIONS DÎNÉ lorsqu'il arriva,</i>	We <i>had dined</i> when he arrived,
---	--------------------------------------

our principal object is to express the action of *dining* as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is past also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former; for, we do not mean to say that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive.

*Observation.*—This tense is used instead of the *conditional past*, when this conditional is preceded by *si*, if, expressing a condition. Ex.

*Je sortirois avec vous, si j'avois dîné,* I would go with you, if I had dined.

*Future Past, or Compound.*

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction: what is meant by it is, not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action will happen, or even before it will happen. Ex.

*Jc SERAI PARTI quand vous reviendrez,* I shall be gone when you come back.  
*Quand vous AUREZ FINI vos affaires, vous viendrez me trouver,—* When you have done your business, you shall come to me.

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone*, which is a future time with respect to the present we speak in, will be a past time with respect to the time when you will or purpose to arrive, &c.

*Conditional Past.*

The conditional past expresses that a thing would have been done in a time past, if the condition on which it depended had been fulfilled. Ex.

*Je vous AUROIS ÉCRIT il y a un mois, si j'eusse su votre adresse;* I would have written to you a month ago, if I had known your direction.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive expresses no affirmation, but generally depends upon a verb that does express it.

The *present* and the *future* are expressed in the subjunctive by the same tense; that is to say, by the *present*. The meaning alone of the sentence distinguishes them. Ex.

*Vous avez l'air malade, quoique vous vous PORTIEZ bien;* You look ill, though you are well.  
*Je suis désolé de vous voir si indisposé; Adieu! je désire que vous vous PORTIEZ mieux;* I am sorry to see you so much indisposed; adieu! I wish you better.

In the first example, the verb *portiez*, which is in the present of the subjunctive, expresses the present state of the person; in the second sentence, the same verb, which is in the same tense, expresses the future.

**RULE 8.—1.** When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express by the second verb an action past, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood. Ex.

*Je souhaite que vous RÉUS-*  
*SISSIEZ dans votre entre-*  
*prise,*

I wish you may succeed in  
your undertaking.

*J'attendrai qu'il VIENNE,*

I will wait till he come.

**2.** When the verb which is before the conjunction is in some of the past tenses, or in the conditional, and we wish not to designate by the second verb a past time more distant than the first verb's, we must put this second verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive. Ex.

*Alexandre ordonna que tous*  
*ses sujets l'ADORASSENT*  
*comme un dieu,*

Alexander ordered that all  
his subjects should wor-  
ship him as a god.

*Je voulois que vous ÉCRI-*  
*VISSIEZ à votre sœur,*

I wished you to write to  
your sister.

*Il souhaiteroit que vous*  
*PRISSIEZ des mesures plus*  
*convenables,*

He would wish you to take  
more becoming mea-  
sures.

**3.** The preterite of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction; and this tense is generally the *present, preterite, indefinite or future* of the indicative. Ex.

*Je doute qu'aucun philo-*  
*sophe AIT jamais bien*  
*CONNU l'union de l'âme*  
*avec le corps,*

I doubt whether any phi-  
losopher *has* ever well  
*understood* the union of  
the soul with the body.

*Il a fallu que j'AIE CON-*  
*SULTÉ tous les médecins,*

I was obliged to *consult* all  
the physicians.

*Je me garderai bien d'y*  
*aller que je n'AIE REÇU*  
*quelque assurance d'être*  
*bien accueilli,*

I shall by no means go thi-  
ther till I *have received*  
some assurances of being  
welcome.

4. After the *imperfect*, *preterite*, *preterpluperfect* of the *indicative*, or one of the two *conditionals*, we use the *preterpluperfect* of the *subjunctive* mood; likewise after the *conjunction if* when it precedes a compound tense. Ex.

*J'ignoreis que vous* EUSSIEZ  
EMBRASSE cette profes-  
sion-là,

I did not know you *had*  
embraced that profession.

*Vous n'aviez pas cru que je*  
FUSSE ARRIVÉ avant  
vous,

You did not believe I  
*should have arrived* before  
you.

*Nous aurions été fâchés que*  
vous vous FUSSIEZ  
ADRESSÉ à d'autres qu'à  
nous,

We should have been sorry  
if you *had applied* to any  
others but us.

*J'aurais agi de la même ma-*  
nière, si j'eusse été à vo-  
tre place;

I should have acted in the  
same manner, had I been  
in your place.

### Numbers and Persons.

A tense contains both numbers; the *singular* and the *plural*.

That there are three persons has already been observed under the personal pronouns; we have only to remark that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its subject; therefore the verb must agree with that subject in *number* and *person*. Ex.

*Je fais*, I do.

*Nous faisons*, we do.

*Tu fais*, thou dost.

*Vous faites*, you or ye do.

*Il fait*, he does.

*Ils font*, they do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that when we speak to one person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular. Ex.

*Vous êtes marié*, and not  
*mariés*,

You are married.

*Vous étiez général de l'ar-*  
mée, and not *généraux*,

You were general of the  
army.

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux*, if we speak to more than one.

When the verb has two or more nouns or pronouns as its subjects, it must be put in the plural, though all these subjects be in the singular; because two or more nouns in

the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives. Ex.

*Mon frère et ma sœur SONT partis,*      My brother and sister are gone.

This has already been mentioned on the adjectives.

**RULE 9.**—If the verb has for its *subjects* one pronoun of the *first person* and one of the *second*, the pronoun *nous* must be added to them, and the verb is to be put in the *first person plural*; and if one of the *subjects* is of the *second person*, and the other of the *third*, the pronoun *vous* must follow them; and the verb is to be put in the *second person plural*. Ex.

*Vous et moi, NOUS PARTIRONS demain;*      You and I shall set off to-morrow.  
*Vous et votre frère, VOUS me l'AVEZ promis;*      You and your brother have promised it to me.

**Observations.**—1. The person spoken *to* is always to come first, the person spoken *of* comes next, and the person who speaks is placed the last.

2. In sentences in which the above pronouns, instead of being subjects of the following verb, are governed by *c'est, c'étoit, ce sera, &c.* and followed by the pronoun *qui*, this pronoun takes the place of the additional pronouns mentioned in the above rule; yet the verb is still put in the person which would be commanded by the additional pronoun. Ex.

*C'est vous et moi qui l'avons fait,*      It is you and I who have done it.  
*Ce n'est ni vous ni ma sœur qui l'avez dit,*      It is neither you nor my sister who said it.

#### OF THE NUMBER OF CONJUGATIONS.

There are four conjugations in the French language. They are distinguished by the termination of the present of the infinitive.

- The first ends in *er*, as *donn-er*, to give.
- The second in *ir*, as *pun-ir*, to punish.
- The third in *avoir*, as *rec-avoir*, to receive.
- The fourth in *re*, as *rend-re*, to render.

The learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, on account of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences, and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *avoir*, to have.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	Preterite.
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had.
Participle active.	Participle past.
<i>Ayant</i> , having.	<i>Ayant eu</i> , having had.
Participle past.	
<i>Eu</i> , had.	

*Indicative Mood.*

Present, Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'ai</i> , I have.	<i>Nous avons</i> , we have.
<i>Tu as</i> , thou hast.	<i>Vous avez</i> , you or ye have.
<i>Il a</i> , he has.	<i>Ils ont</i> , } they have.
<i>Elle a</i> , she has.	<i>Elles ont</i> , }

Imperfect, Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'avois</i> , I had.	<i>Nous avions</i> , we had.
<i>Tu avois</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous aviez</i> , you had.
<i>Il avoit</i> , he had.	<i>Ils avoient</i> , they had.

Pret. defin. Sing.	Plural.
<i>Jeus</i> , I had.	<i>Nous eûmes</i> , we had.
<i>Tu eus</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous eûtes</i> , you had.
<i>Il eut</i> , he had.	<i>Ils eurent</i> , they had.

*Future, Singular.*

*J'aurai*, I shall or will have.  
*Tu auras*, thou wilt, &c. have.  
*Il aura*, he will, &c. have.

*Plural.*

*Nous aurons*, we shall, &c. have.  
*Vous aurez*, you will, &c. have.  
*Ils auront*, they will, &c. have.

*Conditional Present, Singular.*

*J'aurois*, I should or would have.  
*Tu aurois*, thou wouldst, &c. have.  
*Il auroit*, he would, &c. have.



Plural.

*Nous aurions*, we should, &c. have.

*Vous auriez*, you would, &c. have.

*Ils auroient*, they would, &c. have.

Compound Tenses.

They are formed by adding the participle past *eu*, had, to the preceding. Ex.

Pret. Indefinite.

*J'ai eu*, I have had, &c.

Pret. ant. def.

*J'eus eu*, &c. I had had, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

*J'avois eu*, &c. I had had, &c.

Future past.

*J'aurai eu*, &c. I will, or shall have had, &c.

Cond. past.

*J'aurois eu*, &c. I would, or should have had, &c.

Imperative Mood.

Present, Singular.

*Aie*, have thou.

*Qu'il ait*, let him have.

*Qu'elle ait*, let her have.

Plural.

*Ayons*, let us have.

*Ayez*, have ye, or you.

*Qu'ils or qu'elles aient*, let them have.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present, Singular.

*Que j'aie*, that I have, or may have.

*tu aies*, thou mayst have.

*Qu'il ait*, he may have.

Plural.

*Que nous ayons*, that we may have.

*vous ayez*, you may have.

*Qu'ils aient*, they may have.

## Imperfect, Singular.

*Que j'eusse,* that I might have, or had.  
*tu eusses,* thou mightst have.  
*Qu'il eût,* he might have.

## Plural.

*Que nous eussions,* that we might have.  
*vous eussiez,* you might have.  
*Qu'ils eussent,* they might have.

## Compound Tenses.

They are formed by adding the participle past *eu*, had, to the preceding. Ex.

## Preterite.

*Que j'aie eu, &c.* that I may have had.

## Preterpluperfect.

*Que j'eusse eu, &c.* that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation. Ex.

*Je n'ai pas,* I have not ;  
*Nous n'avons pas,* We have not ;

always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *être*, to be.

## Infinitive Mood.

## Present.

*Être*, to be.

Participle active.

*Étant*, being.

Participle past.

*Été*, been.

## Preterite.

*Avoir été*, to have been.

Participle past.

*Ayant été*, having been.

## Indicative Mood.

## Present, Singular.

*Je suis*, I am.

*Tu es*, thou art.

*Il est*, he is.

## Plural.

*Nous sommes*, we are.

*Vous êtes*, you are.

*Ils sont*, they are.

Imperfect, Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'étois</i> , I was.	<i>Nous étions</i> , we were.
<i>Tu étois</i> , thou wast.	<i>Vous étiez</i> , you were.
<i>Il étoit</i> , he was.	<i>Ils étoient</i> , they were.

Pret. defin. Sing.	Plural.
<i>Je fus</i> , I was.	<i>Nous fûmes</i> , we were.
<i>Tu fus</i> , thou wast.	<i>Vous fûtes</i> , you were.
<i>Il fut</i> , he was.	<i>Ils furent</i> , they were.

Future, Singular.

<i>Je serai</i> , I shall or will be.
<i>Tu seras</i> , thou wilt, &c. be.
<i>Il sera</i> , he will, &c. be.

Plural.

<i>Nous serons</i> , we shall, &c. be.
<i>Vous serez</i> , you will, &c. be.
<i>Ils seront</i> , they will, &c. be.

Conditional Present, Singular.

<i>Je serois</i> , I would or should be.
<i>Tu serois</i> , thou wouldst, &c. be.
<i>Il seroit</i> , he would, &c. be.

Plural.

<i>Nous serions</i> , we should, &c. be.
<i>Vous seriez</i> , you would, &c. be.
<i>Ils seroient</i> , they would, &c. be.

Compound Tenses.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir*. Ex.

Pret. indef.

*J'ai été*, &c. I have been, &c.

Pret. anterior definite.

*J'eus été*, &c. I had been, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

*J'avois été*, &c. I had been, &c.

Future past.

*J'aurai été*, &c. I shall or will have been, &c.

Conditional past.

*J'aurois été*, &c. I should or would have been, &c.

*Imperative Mood.*

Present, Singular.

*Sois*, be thou.*Qu'il soit*, let him be.

Plural.

*Soyons*, let us be.*Soyez*, be ye.*Qu'ils soient*, let them be.*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present, Singular.

*Que je sois*, that I be, or may be.*tu sois*, thou mayst be.*il soit*, he may be.

Plural.

*Que nous soyons*, that we may be.*vous soyez*, you may be.*ils soient*, they may be.

Imperfect, Singular.

*Que je fusse*, that I might be, or were.*tu fusses*, thou mightst be.*il fût*, he might be.

Plural.

*Que nous fussions*, that we might be.*vous fussiez*, you might be.*ils fussent*, they might be.*Compound Tenses.*

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*. Ex.

Preterite.

*Que j'aie été*, that I may have been, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

*Que j'eusse été*, that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation. Ex.

*Je ne suis pas,*

I am not.

*Nous ne sommes pas,*

We are not.

Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are only auxiliaries when they are joined with the participle past of another verb; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *neuter verb*; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one*, which signifies *to possess*.

*Observations.*—1. In the following exercises the learner must carefully recollect that, whenever the word *some* or *any* is either *expressed* or *understood* before a substantive, it must be expressed in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive; yet if the substantive is preceded by an adjective, the article is to be omitted, and the preposition *de* or *d'* alone is placed before the adjective. (See Rule 11 on the Article, page 22.)

2. Whenever the verb *avoir* is used *negatively*, the verb is placed between the two parts of the negation *ne-pas*, or *ne-point*, in the simple tenses; and if the verb is in a compound tense, the auxiliary verb is placed between these two parts of the negation, and the participle follows *pas* or *point*. The same rule applies to all verbs.

3. The learner must recollect that whenever the verb *avoir* is used *negatively*, the following substantive, if not attended by the article, must be preceded by the preposition *de*, or by *d'* if the noun begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute. Ex.

<i>Je n'ai pas de frères,</i>	I have no brothers.
<i>Vous n'avez pas eu de patience,</i>	You have had no patience.
<i>Ils n'ont point d'amis,</i>	They have no friends.

4. Every verb must agree with its *subject* in *person* and *number*. After collective nouns, such as *foule*, crowd, *infinité*, infinity, *nombre*, number, *la plupart*, most, &c. when followed by the preposition *of*, the verb must agree with the noun that is under the government of that preposition. Ex.

<i>La plupart de ses amis l'ont abandonné,</i>	Most of his friends have forsaken him.
--	--

## EXERCISE

On the Verbs AVOIR, to have, and ÊTRE, to be.  
(Read the Observations 1, 2, and 3, page 169.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I have a book.——I am happy.——He has  
*heureux*, adj.

a hat which is too big.——We have no\*  
*trop*, adv. *grand*, adj.

money.——We are not ambitious.——You have a  
*argent*, m. *ambitieux*, adj.

sword.——You are very proud.——Those girls have  
*orgueilleux*, adj.

modesty; † they are virtuous.——Thou art too lazy.  
*modestie*, f. *vertueux*, adj.

IMP. I had a friend.——I was grateful.——My sister  
*reconnoissant*, adj.

had no\* work, she was lazy.——We had a  
*ouvrage*, m.  *paresseux*, adj.

holiday, we are very glad of it.——You had com-  
*congé*, m. *aise*, adj. *com-*

pany, but you were not ready.——Your brothers  
*pagnie*, f. *mais*, c. *prêt*, adj.

had learning, they were loved by every body.  
*savoir*, m. *aimé*, p.p. *de*

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse I was  
*Dès que*, c. *de bonne*

merry;——My cousin had a little garden, he was  
*humeur* *cousin*, m.

ingenious.——As soon as we had bread we were  
*adroit*, adj. *pain*, m.

satisfied.——You had fine weather, you were pleased.——  
*raassasié*, p.p. *tems*, m. *content*, adj.

Your friends had beautiful flowers; they were very

careful of them.——Thou hadst no friends.  
*soigneux*, adj.

FUT. I shall have discretion; I shall be prudent.——  
*discrétion*, f.

Miss White shall have a bird; it will be very  
*oiseau*, m.

\* See Observation 3, page 169.

† See Observation 1, page 169.

tame.——We shall have no books, we shall not be  
*apprivoisé*, adj.

learned.——You shall have pens and paper; you will be  
*savant*, adj.

busy.——The English will have a good admiral; they  
*occupé*, adj. *amiral*, m.

will be victorious.——Thou shalt be punished.  
*victorieux*, adj.

COND. PRES. You would have a pretty dog.——I  
*joli*, adj. *chien*, m.

would not be troublesome.——Mr. Thomas would have  
*importun*, adj.

good wine; it would be a delicious thing.——We  
*ce délicieux*, adj. *chose*, f.

would have a dictionary: we would not be negligent.——

You would have good officers; you would be invincible.——  
*invincible*, adj.

If these ladies were better received, they would be  
*reçues*

thankful.

*reconnoissant*, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience and be indulgent.——Let her have a  
gown; let her be happy.——Let us have at least some  
*au moins*, adv.

gratitude; let us be diligent.——Let them have  
*reconnoissance*, f.

partridges; let them be merry.——Have resignation in  
*perdrix*, f. *joyeux*, adj. *résignation*, f.

thy troubles.

*peine*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches.——That I may be  
charitable.——That he may have scholars.——That he  
may be attentive.——That we may have a good house.  
*attentif*, adj.

——That we may be well lodged.——That you may  
*bien*, adv. *logé*, p. p.

have your money ; that you may be paid.——That they  
*argent, m.* *payé, p. p.*  
 may have apples ; that that may be ripe.——That thou  
*mûr, adj.*  
 mayst be wise.

*sage*  
 IMP. That I might have generosity.——That I might  
*générosité, f.*  
 not be poor.——That he might have no pleasure.——  
*pauvre, adj.* *plaisir, m.*  
 That he might be uneasy.——That we might have our  
*inquiet, adj.*  
 share.——That we might not be deceived.——That you  
*part, f.* *trompé, p. p.*  
 might have a couple of fowls.——That you might be  
*couple, f.*  
 pleased.——That they might have no pension.——That  
*content, adj.*  
 they might not be rewarded.  
*récompensé, p. p.*

*Promiscuous Exercises upon the Compound Tenses.*

I have had (a great deal) of trouble ; I have not been  
*peine, f.*  
 rewarded.——Your brother would have had leave,  
*permission, f.*  
 if he had been diligent.——If you had\* married him,  
*épousé, p. p.*  
 you would have had a tyrant instead of a husband ;  
*tyran, m. au lieu, p. mari, m.*  
 you never would have been happy.——If we had  
*ne jamais*  
 fought, we should not have been conquered.——  
*combattu, p. p. vaincu, p. p.*  
 Thomas has had two holidays, because he has been very  
*congé, m. parcequë, c.*  
 studious.——If your friend had had a better watch,  
*studieux, adj. montre, f.*  
 he would not have been cheated.——Your uncle and my  
*trompé, p. p.*

\* Read the third part of Rule 2, on the Tenses, p. 154.



brother have been wet. ——— You would have killed  
*mouillé, p. p.* *tué, p. p.*  
a hare, if you had had a gun.  
*lièvre, m.* *fusil, m.*

After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative. Ex.

*Singular.*

*Affirmatively.*

<i>Ai-je ?</i>	have I ?	<i>Suis-je ?</i>	am I ?
<i>A-t-il ?</i>	has he ?	<i>Est-il ?</i>	is he ?
<i>Mon frère a-t-il ?</i>	has my brother ?		
<i>Sa fille est-elle ?</i>	is her daughter ?		

*Negatively.*

<i>N'ai-je pas ?</i>	have I not ?	<i>Ne suis-je pas ?</i>	am I not ?
<i>N'a-t-il pas ?</i>	has he not ?	<i>N'est-il pas ?</i>	is he not ?
<i>Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ?</i>	has not my sister ?		
<i>Votre cousin n'est-il pas ?</i>	is not your cousin ?		

*Plural.*

*Affirmatively.*

<i>Avons-nous ?</i>	have we ?	<i>Sommes-nous ?</i>	are we ?
<i>Avez-vous ?</i>	have you ?	<i>Etes-vous ?</i>	are you ?
<i>Ont-ils ?</i>	have they ?	<i>Sont-ils ?</i>	are they ?
<i>Vos frères ont-ils ?</i>	have your brothers ? &c.		
<i>Ses filles sont-elles ?</i>	are his daughters ? &c.		

*Negatively.*

<i>N'avons-nous pas ?</i>	have we not ?
<i>N'avez-vous pas ?</i>	have you not ?
<i>N'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have they not ?
<i>Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have not his children ?
<i>Ne sommes-nous pas ?</i>	are we not ?
<i>N'êtes-vous pas ?</i>	are you not ?
<i>Ne sont-ils pas ?</i>	are they not ?
<i>Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?</i>	are not my sisters ? &c.

RULE 10.—It must be observed, that when there is in interrogative sentences a noun standing as nominative to the verb, the pronouns, *il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French

immediately after the verb, according to the person and number; and when the verb terminates with a vowel, a *-t-* is to be added in the third person singular between the verb and the pronoun. Then the noun begins the phrase. Ex.

*Votre oncle A-T-IL des enfants?*

Has your uncle any children? that is to say, Your uncle has *he* any children?

*Mon cousin aura-T-IL congé?*

Will my cousin have a holiday? that is to say, My cousin will *he* have a holiday?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of other verbs. Ex.

*Votre frère joue-T-IL du violon?*

Does your brother play on the violin?

*Sa sœur dînera-T-ELLE ici aujourd'hui?*

Will her sister dine here to-day?

But if the sentence begins with *que* interrogative, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and that *noun* is to be put after the verb, provided that noun is not followed by any other words expressive of the complement of the action of the verb. Ex.

*QUE fait votre sœur?*

*What is your sister doing?*

*Que VOTRE SŒUR dit-ELLE de nouveau?\**

*What news does your sister give?*

*Observations.*—1. When in French, we make a general interrogation concerning a sudden *pain, misfortune, accident*, &c. we say,

*Qu'est-ce que c'est?*

*What is the matter?*

2. But if we speak *to or of a person*, in consequence of some misfortune, accident, grief, &c. that affect that same person, we must use the verb *avoir*, suppress the verb *to be*, as well as these words *the matter with*, and follow Rule 9. Ex.

\* In this sentence *de nouveau* being the complement of the action of the verb *dit*, the pronoun must be expressed after the verb, and the noun to be placed before it.

Qu'avez-vous ?	What is the matter with you ?
Qu'a-t-il ?	What is the matter with him ?
Qu'aviez-vous ?	What was the matter with you ?
Qu'avoit votre sœur ?	What was the matter with your sister ?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood. As for the compounds, he has only to remark, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have. Ex.

Ai-je EU ?	Have I <i>had</i> ?
N'ai-je pas EU ?	Have I not <i>had</i> ?
Ai-je ÉTÉ ?	Have I <i>been</i> ?
N'ai-je pas ÉTÉ ?	Have I not <i>been</i> ?

*Promiscuous Exercises on the preceding Rules.*

Have I my books ?——Am I not unhappy to have  
*malheureux de*  
lost his friendship ?——Has he no money ?——Is my  
*perdu amitié, f.*  
sister arrived ?——Has not your father a great deal of  
*arrivé*  
friendship for you ?——What is the matter \* with you ?  
——Have not your parents sent you all the money  
*envoyé*  
which you wanted ? †——Have we not a garden ?——Are  
*dont avoir besoin*  
we not very happy ?——Have you a good gun ?——Are  
you dexterous ?——Have not my brother and sister a  
*adroit*  
beautiful coach ?——Are not Paul and Thomas two  
pretty children ?——Are your brothers arrived ?——Are  
*joli arrivés*

\* See the last Observation, Part 2.

† Say, of which you had want.

you not glad to see them?—What is the matter with  
*de voir*  
 him?—Have<sup>3</sup> they<sup>4</sup> 'not<sup>4</sup> spoken<sup>5</sup> (to him<sup>2</sup>?)—Had  
*parlé*  
 you not a little dog?—Was not your paper very good?  
 —Are not the English ladies generally handsomer  
*généralement*  
 than the French?—Shall you have occasion for your  
*besoin de*  
 dictionary?—Shall I not have the pleasure to see<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>  
*de*  
 to-morrow?—Were you not in the room?—Shall we  
*demain* *chambre, f.*  
 not have leave?—Will they not be angry?—Will you  
*fâché*  
 not have a better watch?—If France were as rich ~~in~~ as  
*Si* *étoit*  
 England, would it not be the best country in the world?  
*ce* *pays, m.*  
 —Will you not be ashamed?—Has not your friend  
*honteux*  
 had bad weather?—What was the matter with him  
*mauvais tems*  
 this morning?—Had not our admiral better seamen  
*ce* *matelot, m.*  
 than yours?—Has he not been victorious?—Is not  
*victorieux*  
 your hat too large?—Is not your sister older than  
*trop grand* *agé*  
 mine?—Are you not happier than if you were married?  
*marié*  
 —Shall not John have a holiday if he be diligent? \*—  
*Jean*  
 Has not your cousin more money than you?—Was not  
 your wine very dear?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it is  
 to know these two verbs perfectly well, because, inde-  
 pendently of being constantly used, the compound tenses  
 of all the others are formed with them. When well

\* See Part 4 of Rule 1, page 153.

acquainted with them, he will only have to add the participle past to any of their tenses. Ex.

<i>J'ai aimé,</i>	I have loved, or did love.
<i>Je n'ai pas chanté,</i>	I have not sung, or did not sing.
<i>Ai-je parlé?</i>	Have I spoken, or did I speak?
<i>N'ai-je pas étudié?</i>	Have I not studied, or did I not study?
<i>Avez-vous dansé?</i>	Have you danced? or did you dance?
<i>N'avez-vous pas écrit?</i>	Have you not written? or did you not write?
<i>Je suis puni,</i>	I am punished.
<i>Je ne suis pas attendu,</i>	I am not expected.
<i>Suis-je aimé?</i>	Am I loved?
<i>Ne suis-je pas perdu?</i>	Am I not undone?
<i>Êtes-vous marié?</i>	Are you married?
<i>N'êtes-vous pas convaincu?</i>	Are you not convinced?

*Observation on the Verb ÊTRE, to be.*

When in English the verb *to be* immediately precedes any noun, signifying *hunger, thirst, cold, heat, or fear*, it must be rendered in French by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its *substantive*. The same rule is to be applied to the adjective *old*, when it is preceded by the adverb *how*, or by the word *year* or *years*. Ex.

<i>Quel ÂGE AVEZ-vous? J'AI sept ans,</i>	How old are you? I am seven years old.
<i>AVEZ-vous faim? Non ; mais j'AI SOIF,</i>	Are you hungry? No; but I am thirsty, &c.

That is to say, *what age have you? I have seven years. Have you hunger?*

EXERCISE.

How old is your daughter? She is eleven years old.—  
*fille an*  
 My son will be eleven years old (in the) month of  
*fil au mois, m.*  
 April.—I was very hungry when I arrived.—Were  
*Avril, m. grand' quand suis arrivé*

you not very thirsty?—He is not afraid.—You will soon <sup>grand'</sup> be warm.—Are you not cold?—How old are <sup>peur, f.</sup> *bientôt* <sup>chaud, m.</sup> *chaud*, m. <sup>froid, m.</sup> *froid*, m. these two young children? The one is four years old, <sup>ces</sup> *ces* <sup>enfant, m.</sup> *enfant*, m. and the other is not yet \* three.—Was not my sister <sup>encore</sup> *encore* more than ten years old when she died? † <sup>quand</sup> *quand* <sup>mourut</sup> *mourut*

*Observations that claim particular Attention.*

1. All verbs ending in the present of the infinitive in *ger* or *cer*, as *manger*, to eat; *commencer*, to begin; require, for the softening of their sound, that an *e* be added to the *g*, and a *cedilla* to the *c*, when the *g* or *c* is immediately followed by *a* or *o*. Ex. *Je mangeai*, I eat; *je mangeois*, I was eating; *nous commençâmes*, we began; *nous commençons*, we begin.

2. Verbs ending in *eler* or *eter* in the infinitive, require another *l* and another *t* to be added whenever those letters are to be followed by an *e* mute. As in *appeler*, to call; *jeter*, to throw: therefore we write *j'appelle*, *je jette*, &c.

3. The verbs *tenir*, to hold; *venir*, to come; *prendre*, to take; and their compounds, such as *appartenir*, to belong to; *convenir*, to agree; *entreprendre*, to undertake; double the *n*, whenever it is followed by an *e* mute. Ex. *Que je tienne*, that I may hold; *que tu viennes*, that thou mayest come; *qu'ils prennent*, that they may take.

4. All verbs ending in the present of the infinitive in *yer*, such as *aboyer*, to bark; *envoyer*, to send; *payer*, to pay, &c.; change *y* into *i* whenever it is to be followed by an *e* mute. Ex. *Le chien aboie*, the dog barks; *ils envoient*, they send; *je paierai*, I shall pay, &c.

5. All verbs whose participle active ends in *yant*, such as, *asseoir*, to sit down, *asseyant*; *croire*, to believe, *croyant*; *fuir*, to flee, *fuyant*, &c. take the following terminations in the *first* and *second persons plural* of the *imperfect* of the *indicative*, and of the *present* of the *subjunctive*—*yions*, *yiez*. Ex. *Nous nous asseyions*, we sit down; *vous croyiez*, you believed; *que nous nous asseyions*, that we may sit down; *que vous croyiez*, that you may believe, &c.

\* Say, *n'en a pas encore trois*.

† Say, *my sister had she not MORE THAN* (plus de) *ten years*, &c.

6. All verbs ending in the present of the infinitive in *ier*, as *crier*, to cry; *étudier*, to study, &c. must double the *i* in the *first* and *second persons plural* of the *imperfect* of the indicative, and of the *present* of the *subjunctive*; the first *i* belonging to the root of the verb, and the second to the terminations. Ex. *Prier*, to pray; *nous pri-ions*, we were praying; *étudier*, to study; *que vous étudi-iez*, that you may study, &c.

*Observation 7, do and did.*

1. I beg of the learners to observe that in interrogative sentences *do* and *did* are constantly used, and placed before the verb when it is in the *present*, *imperfect*, and *preterite indefinite*. These words are used as mere signs to point out the tense; to assist in asking questions, and often too in affirmative sentences. In such instances, being mere signs, they are not to be translated into French. Therefore, if we have to translate the following sentences, *Do you love her? DID you see my father? What do they ask? We do not command.* Let us turn the sentences thus: *Her love you? L'aimez-vous? Saw you my father? Vites-vous mon père? What ask they? Que demandent-ils? We command not. Nous ne commandons pas.*

2. The learner, having conjugated a verb *affirmatively* and *negatively*, ought to conjugate two others, with an *interrogation affirmative* and *negative*, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he attempts to translate the exercises; carefully observing that the pronoun subject to the verb must come after it, and that *do* and *did*, that precede it, are not to be translated. Ex.

*Interrogatively Affirmatively,*

<i>Manges-tu?</i>	Dost thou eat? That is to say, eatest thou?
<i>Mange-t-il?</i>	Does he eat? That is to say, eats he?
<i>Parlons-nous?</i>	Do we speak? &c. That is to say, eat we? &c.

*Negatively.*

<i>Ne parlé-je pas?</i>	Do I not speak?
<i>Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas?</i>	Does not my sister sing?

## Observation 8.

Some verbs do not admit the pronoun *Je* after them; such as, *servir*, to serve; *courir*, to run, &c. In such cases, instead of saying, *Sers-je?* do I serve? *Cours-je?* do I run? we must say, *est-ce que je sers?* *est-ce que je cours?*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	Parl-er, to speak.
Participle active.	ant, speaking.
Participle past.	é, m. é e, f. spoken.

*Compound Tenses.*

Preterite.	Avoir parlé, to have spoken.
Part. past.	Ayant parlé, having spoken.

*Indicative Mood.*

## Present, Singular.

<i>Je</i>	parl-e, I speak, do speak, or am speaking.*
<i>Tu</i>	es, thou speakest.
<i>Il</i>	e, he speaks.

## Plural.

<i>Nous</i>	ons, we speak.
<i>Vous</i>	ez, you speak.
<i>Ils</i>	ent, they speak.

## Imperfect, Singular.

<i>Je</i>	parl-ois, I was speaking, spoke, or did speak.
<i>Tu</i>	ois, thou wast speaking, &c.
<i>Il</i>	oit, he was speaking, &c.

\* When in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the continuation of the action, the auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense as the auxiliary that is suppressed:

<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking;	<i>Je priais</i> , I was desiring;
<i>Vous parlez</i> , you are speaking;	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we were singing;
<i>Nous danserons</i> , we shall be dancing;	<i>Ils écriraient</i> , they would be writing;

and not *je suis parlant*, *vous êtes parlant*, *j'étais priant*, &c. *nous serons dansant*, *ils seroient écrivant*, &c.



Plural.

*Nous* parl-ions, we were speaking, &c.  
*Vous*       iez, you were speaking, &c.  
*Ils*       oient, they were speaking, &c.

Preterite, Singular.

*Je* parl-ai, I spoke, or did speak.  
*Tu*       as, thou spokest.  
*Il*       a, he spoke.

Plural.

*Nous* parl-âmes, we spoke.  
*Vous*       âtes, you spoke.  
*Ils*       èrent, they spoke.

Future, Singular.

*Je* parl-erai, I shall or will speak.  
*Tu*       eras, thou shalt or wilt speak.  
*Il*       era, he shall or will speak.

Plural.

*Nous* parl-erons, we shall or will speak.  
*Vous*       erez, you shall or will speak.  
*Ils*       eront, they shall or will speak.

Conditional Present, Singular.

*Je* parl-erois, I should or would speak.  
*Tu*       erois, thou shouldst, &c. speak.  
*Il*       eroit, he should, &c. speak.

Plural.

*Nous* parl-erions, we should, &c. speak.  
*Vous*       eriez, you should, &c. speak.  
*Ils*       eroient, they should, &c. speak.

Compound Tenses.

Pret. indefinite.   *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken.  
 Preterpluperfect. *J'avois parlé*, I had spoken.  
 Pret. ant. definite. *J'eus parlé*, I had spoken.  
 Future past.       *J'aurai parlé*, I shall or will have spoken.  
 Conditional past. *J'aurois parlé*, I should or would have spoken.

*Imperative Mood.*

Present, Singular.

Parl-*e*, speak thou.Qu'il *e*, let him speak.

Plural.

parl-*ons*, let us speak.*ez*, speak ye.Qu'ils *ent*, let them speak.*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present, Singular.

Que *je* parl-*e*, that I may speak, or I speak.*tu* *es*, thou mayst speak.*il* *e*, he may speak.

Plural.

Que *nous* parl-*ions*, that we may speak.*vous* *iez*, you may speak.*ils* *ent*, they may speak.

Imperfect, Singular.

Que *je* parl-*asse*, that I might speak, or I spoke.*tu* *asses*, thou mightst speak.*il* *ât*, he might speak.

Plural.

Que *nous* parl-*assions*, that we might speak.*vous* *assiez*, you might speak.*ils* *assent*, they might speak.*Compound Tenses.*Preterite. Que *j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.Preterpluper. Que *j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted: viz.

*Aller*, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.

*Envoyer* is only irregular in the future and conditional present; as, instead of saying, *j'enverrai*, I will send, &c.

*j'envoierois*, I would send, &c. according to this conjugation, we say,

Future.

Singular.

Plural.

*J'enverrai*, I will send.

*Nous enverrons*.

*Tu enverras*.

*Vous enverrez*.

*Il enverra*.

*Ils enverront*.

Conditional Present.

Singular.

Plural.

*J'enverrois*, I would send.

*Nous enverrions*.

*Tu enverrois*.

*Vous enverriez*.

*Il enverroit*.

*Ils enverroient*.

**PUER** (*sentir mauvais*). This verb is only used in the infinitive mood, present tense, imperfect, future of the indicative, and conditional present. Formerly, this verb was irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood; as *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*; custom has, however, reformed the abuse, and will have it, *Je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*.

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle past of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively. Ex.

Affirmatively.

*J'ai dansé*, I have danced, or I did dance.

Negatively.

*Je n'ai pas parlé*, I have not spoken, or I did not speak.

Interrogatively-affirmatively.

*Avez-vous chanté?* Have you sung, or did you sing?

Interrogatively-negatively.

*N'a-t-il pas mangé?* Has he not eaten, or did he not eat?

Observe, that we make use of

*Mener*,

To take, to carry,

*Amener*,

To bring,

*Emmener*,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given

the faculty of walking, if they be not deprived of it through illness or accident : in all other cases we make use of

*Porter,*  
*Apporter,*  
*Emporter,*

To carry, to take,  
To bring,  
To carry, or take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

*Observation.*—It must be necessarily observed here, previously to the learner translating the following exercises, that the *English auxiliary verbs*, *have, am, do, did, will, shall, can, let, may, would, could, should, might*, and often *ought*, are most commonly used, in that language, to avoid the repetition of a preceding verb, or in answer to a question or foregoing sentence ; to avoid the repetition of that verb, and often of one pronoun, or more than one ; but in French, the verb, expressed in the first member, or part of the sentence, must always be repeated, as well as the pronouns which it may govern. Ex.

*Je vous prie de porter demain cette lettre à Mr.D.,*

I beg of you to carry that letter to-morrow to Mr. D.

*Je la lui porterai avec plaisir,*

I will with pleasure ; *carry it to him*, understood.

*Vous ne pourriez pas apprendre cette leçon en dix jours,*

You could not learn that lesson in ten days.

*Il me semble que je pourrois l'apprendre,*

It seems to me as if I could ; *learn it*, understood.

*Attendez-vous vos sœurs aujourd'hui ?*

Do you expect your sisters to-day ?

*Oui, nous les attendons ;*

Yes, we do ; *expect them*, understood.

*Votre frère écrit-il à Mr. votre père ?*

Is your brother writing to your father ?

*Oui, il lui écrit à présent ;*

Yes, he is now ; *writing to him*, understood.

*Apprenez-vous le François ?*

Are you learning French ?

*Oui, je l'apprends ;*

Yes, I am ; *learning it*, understood.

*Avez-vous acheté les livres dont vous m'avez parlé ?*

Have you bought the books which you mentioned to me ?

*Non, je ne les ai pas encore  
achetés,*

*Ne devraient-ils pas faire  
savoir à leur père que leur  
frère est dans la détresse?*

*Certainement, ils devraient  
le lui faire savoir ;*

*No, I have not yet; bought  
them, understood.*

*Ought they not to let their  
father know that their  
brother is in distress?*

*Certainly, they ought; to  
let him know it, under-  
stood.*

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

*Indicative Mood.*

**PRES.** I play sometimes; but I ne-  
ver *jou-er, v. quelquefois, adv. mais, c. ne ja-*  
*win.*—How much does your brother  
*mais, adv. gagn-er, v. Combien, adv.*  
give\* for his board?—We do not command;  
*donn-er, v. pension, f. command-er, v.*  
we entreat.—You always borrow; you  
*prier, v. toujours, adv. emprunt-er, v.*  
never lend.—You are always speaking† when  
*prét-er, v. quand, adv.*  
I write.—Why do you not grant  
*écris, v. Pourquoi, adv. accord-er, v.*  
him that favour?—What do‡ they ask you?  
*grâce, f. demand-er, v.*

**IMP.** I was desiring them to sing a song.—She  
*pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.*  
was not speaking to you.—Were we not joking?—  
*badin-er, v.*  
Were you not scolding them when I came?—Yes, I  
*grond-er, v. vins, v.*  
was.—They were eating fish.  
*mang-er, v. poisson, m.*

**PRET.** I spoke to them (a long while).—Did not  
*long-tems, adv.*  
the king forgive them? No, he did not.—We  
*roi, m. pardonn-er, v. leur*  
wept for joy when we found her.—Why  
*pleur-er, v. de joie, f. trouv-er, v.*

\* See Rule 10, page 173.

† See note\*, page 180.

‡ See Observation 7, on *do* and *did*, Part 1, page 179.

did you not play on Friday last? ——— They  
*Vendredi, m. dernier, adj.*  
 fastened the man to a tree, and then robbed  
*li-er, v. arbre, m. ensuite, adv. vol-er, v.*  
 him of his watch, gold ring, and all the money he  
*lui ∞ montre, f. bague, f.*  
 had in his pocket. ——— The<sup>2</sup> soldiers<sup>3</sup> first<sup>1</sup> pillaged<sup>4</sup>  
*poche, f. d'abord pill-er, v.*  
 the town, and then slaughtered without pity the  
*ensuite égorg-er, v. pitié, f.*  
 (old men) women and children.  
*vieillard, m.*

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time I go  
*achet-er, v. fois, f. irai, v.*  
 to London. ——— Will not your father send you to  
*envoyer, v.*  
 school this winter? ——— What shall we give him? ———  
*école, f. -hiver, m.*  
 Will you not take the children to the play? ———  
*men-er, v. enfant, m. comédie, f.*  
 They will empty the bottle if you do not take it  
*vid-er, v. bouteille, f. ∞ emport-er, v.*  
 away.

COND. PRES. I would lend them money if they  
*prêt-er, v.*  
 were not so idle. ——— Would not your mother  
*paresseux, adj.*  
 despise such<sup>2</sup> a<sup>1</sup> conduct? ——— Why should we  
*mépris-er, v. tel, adj. conduite, f.*  
 send them thither? ——— I am sure you would marry  
*sûr, adj. épous-er, v.*  
 her, if she were rich. ——— Would they not pay us,  
*riche, adj. payer, v.*  
 if they had money?

### Imperative Mood.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to me. ———  
*Brider, v. cheval, m. amen-er, v.*  
 Give a chair to that lady. ——— Let her not (come up,)  
*chaise, f. dame, f. mont-er, v.*  
 for I am engaged. ——— Let us carry those peaches to  
*occupé, p. p. pêche, f.*

Mrs. D.——Do not neglect your affairs.——  
*néglig-er, v. affaire, f.*  
 I promise that I will not.——Let them hunt.  
*promets, v. chasser, v.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRES. That I may help you.——Though\* he  
*aid-er, v. Quoique, c.*  
 do not approve of my plan.——Provided\* we  
*approuv-er, v. plan, m. Pourvu que, c.*  
 avoid their company.——That you may try  
*évit-er, v. compagnie, f. éprouv-er, v.*  
 that gun.——That they may not command.

IMP. That I might change my opinion.——That  
*chang-er, v. opinion, f.*  
 he might eat an apple.——That we might not fall  
*ponime, f. tomb-er, v.*  
 into their hands.——That you might encourage  
*dans, p. main, f. encourag-er, v.*  
 the industrious.——That they might exercise their  
*industrieux, adj. exerc-er, v.*  
 talents.  
*talent, m.*

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound Tenses.*

I have forgotten to bring your penknife.——He has  
*oubl-er, v. de canif, m.*  
 not yet spoken to us.——Has she brought her work  
*encore, adv.*  
 with her? Yes, she has.——Have we not gained our  
*gagn-er, v.*  
 cause?——Why have you not yet begun your  
*commenc-er, v.*  
 exercise?——You had taken the mustard away.——  
*thème, m. moutarde, f.*  
 You would have judged more favourably of  
*juger, v. favorablement, adv.*  
 him.——Stay here till\* we have dined.——  
*Rester, v. ici, adv. jusqu'à ce que, c. dîn-er, v.*

\* These conjunctions require the subjunctive mood, as will be seen hereafter.

—Could we not have assisted that family?—They  
*aid-er, v. famille, f.*  
 have broken all the panes of glass in their  
*casser, v. carreau, m. vitre, f. de, p.*  
 windows, because they had not illuminated  
*fenêtre, f. parceque, c. illumin-er, v.*  
 as it had been ordered.—I shall have dined  
*comme, adv. ordonn-er, v.*  
 soon.—We would have sent them to prison,  
*bientôt, adv. envoy-er, v. en prison, f.*  
 if they had resisted.—That we may have denied the  
*résist-er, v. ni-er, v.*  
 fact.—Had you not imitated their manners?—They  
*fail, m. imit-er, v. manière, f.*  
 had not executed his commands.—Had I not  
*exécut-er, v. commandement, m.*  
 lighted the fire?—They would have taken him to  
*allum-er, v. feu, m. mené*  
 the concert, if I had not hindered them (from it).—  
*empêch-er, v.*  
 We have accepted of his offers.—Have you?  
*accept-er, v. offre, f.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. Pun-ir, to punish.  
 Participle active. *issant, punishing.*  
 Participle past. *i, m. ie, f. punished.*

*Compound Tenses.*

Preterite. *Avoir puni, to have punished.*  
 Part. past. *Ayant puni, having punished.*

*Indicative Mood.*

## Present, Singular.

*Je pun-is, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing.*  
*Tu is.*  
*Il it.*

## Plural.

*Nous issons, we punish, &c.*  
*Vous issez.*  
*Ils issent.*



Imperfect, Singular.

*Je pun-issois*, I did punish, or I was punishing, &c.

*Tu issais.*

*Il issoit.*

Plural.

*Nous issions*, we did punish, &c.

*Vous issiez.*

*Ils issoient.*

Preterite, Singular.

*Je pun-is*, I punished, or I did punish.

*Tu is.*

*Il it.*

Plural.

*Nous îmes*, we punished, &c.

*Vous îtes.*

*Ils irent.*

Future, Singular.

*Je pun-irai*, I shall or will punish.

*Tu iras.*

*Il ira.*

Plural.

*Nous irons*, we shall or will punish.

*Vous irez.*

*Ils iront.*

Conditional Present, Singular.

*Je pun-irois*, I should or would punish.

*Tu irois.*

*Il iroit.*

Plural:

*Nous irions*, we should, &c. punish.

*Vous iriez.*

*Ils iroient.*

Compound Tenses.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.

Pret. ant. def. *J'eus puni*, I had punished.

Preterpluperf. *J'avois puni*, I had punished.

Future past. *J'aurai puni*, I shall, &c. have punished.

Cond. past. *J'aurois puni*, I should, &c. have punished.

*Imperative Mood.*

Present, Singular.

Pun-is, punish thou.

Qu'il isse, let him punish.

Plural.

issons, let us punish.

issez, punish ye.

Qu'ils issent, let them punish.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present, Singular.

Que je pun-isse, that I may punish, or I punish.

tu isses.

il isse.

Plural.

nous issions, that we may punish.

vous issiez.

ils issent.

Imperfect, Singular.

Que je pun-isse, that I might punish, or I punished.

tu isses.

ilût.

Plural.

nous issions, that we might punish.

vous issiez.

ils issent.

*Compound Tenses.*

Preterite. Que j'aie puni, that I may have punished.

Preterplu. Que j'eusse puni, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about two hundred regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular :

*Acquérir*, to acquire.*Assaillir*, to assault.*Bouillir*, to boil.*Courir*, to run.*Cueillir*, to gather.*Dormir*, to sleep.*Faillir*, to fail.*Fuir*, to flee, to avoid.*Mentir*, to lie.*Mourir*, to die.*Offrir*, to offer.*Ouvrir*, to open.

*Partir*, to set out.

*Se repentir*, to repent.

*Sentir*, to smell.

*Servir*, to serve.

*Sortir*, to go out.

*Souffrir*, to suffer.

*Tenir*, to hold.

*Venir*, to come.

*Vêtir*, to clothe.

And their compounds.

EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRES. I always finish my work before  
*toujours*, adv. *fin-ir*, v. *ouvrage*, m. *avant*, p.  
the others.—Your friend does not succeed in  
*ami*, m. *réuss-ir*, v. *dans*, p.  
his undertaking.—Do we not furnish arms  
*entreprise*, f. *fourn-ir*, v. *arme*, f.  
against ourselves?—Why do you hate him?—  
*contre*, p. *nous-mêmes* *ha-ir*, v.  
They cure the diseases of the body and not  
*guér-ir*, v. *maladie*, f. *corps*, m.  
those of the mind.

IMP. I was building my house when you  
*bât-ir*, v. *maison*, f. *quand*, adv.  
demolished yours.—Was he not enjoying a good  
*démol-ir*, v. *jou-ir de*, v.  
estate?—We hated him, because he did not act  
*bien*, m. *parceque*, c. *ag-ir*, v.  
kindly towards us.—On what were you  
*honnêtement*, adv. *envers*, p. *Sur*, p.  
reflecting?—The mountains were resounding with  
*réfléch-ir*, v. *montagne*, f. *retent-ir*, v. *de*  
their cries.  
*cri*, m.

PRET. I warranted them very good.—Did not  
*garant-ir*, v.  
your master accomplish his promise?—We (leaped  
*accompl-ir*, v. *promesse*, f. *franchir*, v.  
over) the ditch, and seized the guilty.—Why  
*fossé*, m. *sais-ir*, v. *coupable*, adj.  
did you not applaud that pretty actress?—  
*applaud-ir*, v. *à* *joli*, adj. *actrice*, f.

I did\* with all my might.——Did not the soldiers  
*de, p. forces, f. soldat, m.*

obey the commands of their general?

*obé-ir, v. au commandement, m.*

-FUT. When shall I banish all these thoughts  
*bann-ir, v. tout, adj. pensée, f.*

from my mind?——This plant will soon blossom if  
*plante, f. fleur-ir, v.*

you water it often.——We shall warn your  
*arroser, v. souvent, adv. avert-ir, v.*

relations of it.——Shall you not enjoy, as  
*parent, m. jou-ir, de comme, adv.*

we do, the pure<sup>2</sup> pleasures<sup>1</sup> of the country?——Her  
*pur, adj.*

children will bless her for it.  
*bén-ir, v.*

COND. PRES. I would choose this cloth, if I  
*chois-ir, v. drap, m.*

were in your place.——Would he not blush if he acted  
*roug-ir, v.*

so?——We would not punish them, if they were dili-  
*ainsi, adv.*

gent.——Would you not act with less severity?—  
*avec, p. moins, adv. sévérité, f.*

They would furnish us with arms and troops, if we  
*troupe, f.*

wanted any.  
*avoir besoin, v. en.*

### Imperative Mood.

Do not fill the glasses.——Let him enjoy the  
*rempl-ir, v. verre, m. du*

fruit of his labours.——Well! let him,† I do not  
*travail, m. Eh bien, int.*

hinder him from it.——Let us reflect on what we  
*empêcher, v.*

have to do.——Let them define the question.  
*à faire, v. défin-ir, v.*

\* I did applaud (to) her, *Je lui applaudis, &c.*

† Let him enjoy them, *qu'il en jouisse, &c.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRES. That I may not perish.——I wish he  
pér-ir, v. souhaiter, v.  
 may succeed.——That we may not (bear hardships).  
réuss-ir, v. pât-ir, v.  
 ——That you may not hate us.——Provided they do not  
 (grow tall).  
*grand-ir, v.*

IMP. That I might refresh my memory.——  
rafraîch-ir, v. mémoire, f.  
 That she might not roast the meat.——That we might  
rôt-ir, v.  
 (become younger).——That you might punish the idle.  
rajeun-ir, v.  
 ——That they might not (grow old).  
vieill-ir, v.

*Compound Tenses.*

I have filled my cellar with good wine.——Has  
rempl-ir, v. cave, f. de  
 he not leaped over the ditch?——We had finished our  
 work.——They would have seized him.——We should  
ouvrage, m.  
 have perished without any assistance.——When shall I  
sans, p. secours, m.  
 have built my house?——I have (very much)  
bât-ir, v. beaucoup, adv.  
 weakened his courage.——Though they have  
affoibl-ir, v. Quoique, c. subj.  
 adorned their gardens to dazzle the vulgar,  
embell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblou-ir, v. vulgaire, m.  
 they have not succeeded.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	Rec-evoir, to receive.
Part. active.	evant, receiving.
Part. past.	*u, m. ue, f. received.

\* Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in c, require for the softening of their sound, that a cedilla be added to the c (ç) whenever it is followed by o or u.

*Compound Tenses.*

Preterite. *Avoir reçu*, to have received.

Part. past. *Ayant reçu*, having received.

*Indicative Mood.*

## Present, Singular.

*Je* reç-ois, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving.

*Tu* ois.

*Il* oit.

## Plural.

*Nous* evons, we receive, &c.

*Vous* evez.

*Ils* oivent.

## Imperfect, Singular.

*Je* rec-evois, I did receive, or I was receiving.

*Tu* evois.

*Il* evoit.

## Plural.

*Nous* evions, we did receive, &c.

*Vous* eviez.

*Ils* evoient.

## Preterite, Singular.

*Je* reç-us, I received, or I did receive.

*Tu* us.

*Il* ut.

## Plural.

*Nous* ûmes, we received, &c.

*Vous* ûtes.

*Ils* urent.

## Future, Singular.

*Je* rec-evrai, I shall or will receive.

*Tu* evras.

*Il* evra.

## Plural.

*Nous* evrons, we shall or will receive.

*Vous* evrez.

*Ils* evront.

Conditional Present, Singular.

*Je* rec-*evrois*, I should or would receive.

*Tu* *evrois*.

*Il* *evroit*.

Plural.

*Nous* *evrions*, we should, &c. receive.

*Vous* *evriez*.

*Ils* *evroient*.

Compound Tenses.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.

Pret. ant. def. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.

Preterpluperf. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.

Future past. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.

Cond. past. *J'aurois reçu*, I should, &c. have received.

Imperative Mood.

Present, Singular.

Reç-*ois*, receive thou.

*Qu'il* *oive*, let him receive.

Plural.

*evons*, let us receive.

*eviez*, receive ye.

*Qu'ils* *oivent*, let them receive.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present, Singular.

*Que je* reç-*oive*, that I may receive, or I receive.

*tu* *oives*.

*il* *oive*.

Plural.

*nous* *evions*, that we may receive.

*vous* *eviez*.

*ils* *oivent*.

Imperfect, Singular.

*Que je* reç-*usse*, that I might receive, or I received.

*tu* *usses*.

*il* *ût*.

## Plural.

*Que nous reç-ussions*, that we might receive.

*vous ussiez.*

*ils ussent.*

## Compound Tenses.

Preterite. *Que j'aie reçu*, that I may have received.

Preterplu. *Que j'eusse reçu*, that I might have received.

*Recevoir des nouvelles de* To hear from somebody.  
*quelqu'un,*

After the same manner are conjugated seven verbs only; the following are irregular:

*Asseoir*, to sit down.

*Déchoir*, to decay.

*Falloir* (verb impersonal),  
to be needful.

*Mouvoir*, to move.

*Pleuvoir* (v. imp.), to rain.

*Pouvoir*, to be able.

*Savoir*, to know.

*Valoir*, to be worth.

*Voir*, to see.

*Vouloir*, to be willing.

And their compounds.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## Indicative Mood.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his con-  
*conc-evoir*, v. *espérance*, f. *con-*  
duct.——I am to write to your brother to-morrow,  
*duite*, f. \* *écrire*, v.

to let<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> know that your father is arrived.—  
*pour faire*, v. *lui savoir*, v.

A commander ought to be intrepid in the midst  
*commandant*, m. *d-evoir*, v. *au milieu*, m.

of dangers.——He is to go and breakfast  
*aller*, v. *déjeuner*, v.

at my uncle's next<sup>2</sup> Sunday<sup>1</sup>, and he is to come  
*chez*, p. *venir*, v.

and sup with us.——We sometimes<sup>2</sup> entertain<sup>1</sup>  
*souper*, v. *quelquefois*, adv.

\* When the verb *to be* is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the same tenses of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être*. Ex.

*Je dois aller au parc,*  
*Nous devons lui écrire,*

I am to go to the park.  
We were to write to him.



a hatred for (persons who) deserve our  
*de la haine, f. des personnes qui mériter, v.*  
 friendship.—Do you not perceive a mountain  
*amitié, f. apperc-evoir, v.*

beyond that tree? Yes, I do.—We are to  
*derrière, p.*

remit him the value in goods or in  
*remettre, v. lui valeur, f. en, p. marchandise, f.*  
 money.—Are you not to dine with my father and

mother to-morrow? —Men commonly owe  
*demain, adv. d-evoir, v.*

their virtues or their vices to education (as much as) to  
*autant que, c.*

nature.—Are these young ladies to go to the  
*aller, v.*

ball? No, they are not.

*bal, m.*

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she  
*guinée, f.*

died.—Was not your brother to receive that money  
*mourut, v.*

last<sup>d</sup> Thursday? —We received his tiresome

*Jeudi, m. ennuyant, adj.*

visits, because we were obliged to it.—Were you not  
*obliger, v.*

(to let) them know it sooner? —They were not to  
*faire, v. leur savoir, v.*

stay above six weeks.

*rester, v. plus, adv.*

PRET. I received yesterday, with (a great deal)  
*bien, adv.*

of pleasure, the books you sent me.—As soon as  
*envoyer, v.*

we perceived the danger, we warned him of it.—They  
*avertir, v.*

heard yesterday from your brother.\*

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of you,  
*conc-evoir mauvais, adj.*

if you do not avoid Mr. R.'s company.—We shall  
*éviter, v.*

\* Turn the sentence thus: *They received yesterday some news from, &c.*

owe him nothing more after this month.——I hope  
*après, p.*  
 you will receive all my letters during my absence, and  
*pendant, p.*  
 that they will hear from their father in (a short  
*dans, p. peu, adv.*  
 time).

*Observations on SHOULD\* and OUGHT.*

COND. PRES. I should answer your brother's  
*répondre, v. à*  
 letter, but I have not time.——Ought not your sister to  
*tems, m.*  
 give<sup>1</sup> your<sup>3</sup> mother<sup>4</sup> an account<sup>2</sup> of<sup>5</sup> all<sup>6</sup> her<sup>7</sup>  
*rendre, v. à votre* *compte, m.*  
 actions<sup>8</sup>?——She would soon perceive the danger, if  
*bientôt, adv.*  
 she knew the consequences of it.——Children should  
*savoit, v.*  
 (every<sup>2</sup> day) learn<sup>1</sup> something by heart.——  
*tous les jours apprendre, v.* *cœur, m.*  
 You should not despise the advice that he gives you.  
*mépriser, v.* *avis, m.*  
 ——Should they, after what they have done,  
*après, p.* *fait, p. p.*  
 expect to receive favours?——Grammar, geography,  
*s'attendre, v. à*  
 history, music, are sciences and arts which ladies should  
 never neglect.

\* When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned into *ought*, it is rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir*. Ex.

<i>Je devrois aller le voir,</i>	<i>I should, or ought to go and see him.</i>
<i>Vous devriez le secourir dans sa misère, &amp;c.</i>	<i>You should, or ought to help him in his misery, &amp;c.</i>

The word *should*, or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle past, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle past turned into the present of the infinitive mood. Ex.

<i>J'aurais dû l'obliger à rester ici,</i>	<i>I should or ought to have obliged him to stay here.</i>
<i>Nous aurions dû revenir plutôt,</i>	<i>We should or ought to have come back sooner.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

Receive this small present as a token of my friendship.  
*marque, f.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRES. and IMP. Though I perceive ships  
*Quoique, c. vaisseau, m.*  
(afar off), I cannot distinguish them.——He  
*de loin, adv. ne saurois, v.*  
wrote to us by the first post, *that\** we might  
*écrivit, v. ordinaire, m. afin que*  
receive his orders (in proper time).  
*à tems, adv.*

*Compound Tenses.*

I have not yet received his answer.——You  
*encore, adv. réponse, f.*  
should have (been making) your theme this morning  
*faire, v. matin, m.*  
instead of playing.——He has entertained the hope of  
*au lieu, p. de jouer*  
living here all his life.——She ought to have  
*vivre, v. ici, adv. vie, f.*  
thanked him for the good advice he gave her.——  
*remercier, v. de, p. lui*  
When did you hear from your sister? † We have not  
heard from her since her departure.——Your uncle  
*depuis, p. départ, m. oncle, m.*  
should not have obliged him to pay one-half of the  
*à la moitié, f.*  
expenses.——We should have owed him one hundred  
*frais, m. pl.*  
livres.——I beg your pardon, ‡ I ought not to  
*livre, f. demander, v.*  
have made you wait so long.——Ought  
*faire, v. attendre, v. si long-tems, adv.*  
not we to have employed our time better than (we  
*employer, v. nous*

\* *That*, meaning in order that, must always be translated by *afin que*.

† See the note \* at the end of page 197.

‡ Say, *I to you beg pardon, &c.*

did)                      the<sup>1</sup> last<sup>3</sup> three<sup>2</sup> months<sup>4</sup>      we were in  
*ne l'avons fait*                      *que nous*  
 France?

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.                      Vend-*re*, to sell.  
 Part. active.                      *ant*, selling.  
 Part. past.                      *u*, m. *ue*, f. sold.

*Indicative Mood.*

## Present, Singular.

*Je* vend-*s*, I sell, I do sell, *or* am selling.  
*Tu* vend-*s*.  
*Il* vend.

## Plural.

*Nous*      *ons*, we sell, &c.  
*Vous*      *ez*.  
*Ils*      *ent*.

## Imperfect, Singular.

*Je* vend-*ois*, I did sell, *or* was selling.  
*Tu*      *ois*.  
*Il*      *oit*.

## Plural.

*Nous*      *ions*, we did sell, &c.  
*Vous*      *iez*.  
*Ils*      *oient*.

## Preterite, Singular.

*Je* vend-*is*, I sold, *or* did sell.  
*Tu*      *is*.  
*Il*      *it*.

## Plural.

*Nous*      *îmes*, we sold, &c.  
*Vous*      *îtes*.  
*Ils*      *irent*.

## Future, Singular.

*Je* vend-*rai*, I shall *or* will sell.  
*Tu*      *ras*.  
*Il*      *ra*.

Plural.

*Nous* vend-rons, we shall or will sell.

*Vous* rez.

*Ils* ront.

Conditional Present, Singular.

*Je* vend-rois, I should or would sell.

*Tu* rois.

*Il* roit.

Plural.

*Nous* rions, we should, &c.

*Vous* riez.

*Ils* roient.

Compound Tenses.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai vendu*, I have sold.

Preterpluperf. *J'avois vendu*, I had sold.

Pret. ant. def. *J'eus vendu*, I had sold.

Future past. *J'aurai vendu*, I shall, &c. have sold.

Cond. past. *J'aurois vendu*, I should, &c. have sold.

Imperative Mood.

Present, Singular.

Vend-s, sell thou.

*Qu'il* e, let him sell.

Plural.

ons, let us sell.

ez, sell ye.

*Qu'ils* ent, let them sell.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present, Singular.

*Que je* vend-e, that I may sell, or I sell.

*tu* es.

*il* e.

Plural.

*nous* ions.

*vous* iez.

*ils* ent.

## Imperfect, Singular.

*Que je vend-isse*, that I might sell, or I sold.

*tu isses.*  
*il ôt.*

## Plural.

*nous issions.*  
*vous issiez.*  
*ils issent.*

## Compound Tenses.

Preterite. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.

Preterplu. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about forty verbs.  
The following are irregular.

*Absoudre*, to absolve.

*Battre*, to beat.

*Boire*, to drink.

*Circoncire*, to circumcise.

*Conclure*, to conclude.

*Conduire*, to conduct.

And all the verbs ending  
in *uire*.

*Confire*, to preserve.

*Connoître*, to know.

And all those ending in  
*ôître*.

*Coudre*, to sew.

*Craindre*, to fear.

And all those ending in  
*indre*.

*Croire*, to believe.

*Dire*, to tell.

*Ecrire*, to write.

*Faire*, to make, to do.

*Frïre*, to fry.

*Lire*, to read.

*Mettre*, to put.

*Moudre*, to grind.

*Naître*, to be born.

*Pâître*, to graze, to feed.

*Plaire*, to please.

*Prendre*, to take.

*Rire*, to laugh.

*Suffire*, to suffice, to be  
sufficient.

*Suivre*, to follow.

*Se taire*, to hold one's  
tongue.

*Traire*, to milk.

*Vaincre*, to conquer.

*Vivre*, to live.

And their compounds.

*Observation.*—Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* after the *p* in the third person singular of the present tense indicative mood. Ex. *Je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt*: the rest are conjugated as *vendre*.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRES. I do not mean to wrong him.—  
*prétend-re, v. faire tort, v. lui, pro.*  
 Is your mother coming down?—We expect  
*descend-re, v. attend-re, v.*  
 our friend Mr. A.—Do not you forbid her to  
*défend-re, v. de*  
 go there?—They sell bad fruit.  
*aller, v. mauvais, adj.*

IMP. Did I not interrupt him, while he  
*interromp-re, v. pendant-que, c.*  
 was answering them?—She was melting into  
*répond-re, v. leur fond-re, v. en, p.*  
 tears, when you arrived.—Were we not losing  
*larme, f. arriver, v. perd-re, v.*  
 our time?—You were not spreading your nets.—  
*tems, m. étend-re, v. filet, m.*  
 Did they corrupt our manners?  
*corromp-re, v. mœurs, f. pl.*

PRET. (As soon as) I had received my money, I  
*Dès que, c.*  
 returned them what they had lent me.—Did he  
*rend-re, v. leur prêter, v.*  
 not hear you?—We (waited for) them a  
*entend-re, v. attend-re, v. les*  
 month.—(For how much) did you sell it them?—  
*mois, m. Combien, adv.*  
 They spilled all the wine.  
*répand-re, v.*

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the) month  
*tond-re, v. troupeau, m. au*  
 of May.—If you do not take care,\* the dog  
*Mai, m. ne prenez, v. garde, f.*  
 will bite you.—Shall we not lose, if we play?—  
*mord-re, v.*  
 You will melt it, if you put it into the fire.  
*fond-re, v. mettez, v. dans, p.*

\* After the conjunction *si*, meaning *unless*, we suppress *pas* and *point*.

No, I will not.—They<sup>1</sup> shall<sup>3</sup> not<sup>2</sup> hear<sup>3</sup>  
*entend-re parler<sup>5</sup>, v.*  
 of<sup>6</sup> me<sup>7</sup> (any<sup>4</sup> more).  
*plus, adv.*

COND. PRES. Should I not do him the justice  
*rend-re, v.*  
 he deserves?—Would he not interrupt you?—We  
*mériter, v.*  
 would defend them if we could.—Why would you  
*défend-re, v. pouvions, v.*  
 not answer, if I were speaking to you?—Your  
*répond-re, v.*  
 hens would (lay eggs) every day, if they were not so  
*poule, f. pond-re, v. tous les jours*  
 fat.  
*gras, adj.*

### Imperative Mood.

Give<sup>1</sup> God<sup>3</sup> thanks<sup>2</sup>.—Let her not come  
*Rend-re, v. Dieu, m. grâce, f.*  
 down.—Let us (give in) our accounts faithfully. —  
*rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèlement, adv.*  
 Do not lose my book.—Let them hear the voice of  
*voix, f.*  
 the Lord.  
*Seigneur, m.*

### Subjunctive Mood.

PRES. and IMP. Speak loud, that\* I may hear  
*haut, adv.*  
 what you say.—She plays upon the harpsichord,  
*dites, v. clavecin, m.*  
 though you forbid her to do it.—He wrote  
*quoique, c. de faire, v. écrivit, v.*  
 to us, that we might not expect him.

### Compound Tenses.

I have lost my book; have you found it?—  
*perd-re, v. trouver, v.*  
 She has broken her fan.—Have you not inter-  
*romp-re, v. éventail, m.*  
 rupted me several times?—I had not then  
*alors, adv.*

\* That is to say, in order that, AFIN QUE.



answered his letter.——If they (had gone) there,  
*étoient allés, v. y*  
 would they not have lost their time? Yes, they would.

——He says he would have sold us very good wine.——  
*dit, v.*

Had you not forbidden her to speak?——That they might  
*lui de*  
 have waited (for us.)  
*nous*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE REGULAR VERBS  
 OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRES. I love attentive scholars, but I punish  
*attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.*  
 severely laziness and inattention.——Your  
*sévèrement, adv. paresse, f.*  
 brother does not receive this news with pleasure.—  
*nouvelle, f.*  
 Do we not expect your mother to-day?——We hope  
*espérer, v.*  
 (that) you will succeed in your undertaking.——

Why do you not fulfil your promise?——  
*Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v. promesse, f.*  
 Are you to expect the least favour from your parents  
*Devez grâce, f.*  
 and friends?——They perceive the danger, and  
*appercevoir, v.*  
 they do not endeavour to shun it.  
*tâcher, v. de éviter, v.*

IMP. I was speaking of your aunt when you (came in),  
*tante, f. entrer, v.*  
 and was doing her the justice she deserves.——Mr. N.  
*rendre, v. mériter, v.*  
 did not act towards your son with much tenderness.  
*agir, v. fils, m. tendresse, f.*  
 ——Mr. P. and I were answering your letters when  
*à*  
 you arrived.——You undoubtedly entertained great  
*arriver, v. sans doute, adv.*

hopes from his last *voyage.*——They were  
*dernier*, adj.  
 spending their money in trifles, instead of  
*dépenser*, v. *en*, p. *bagatelle*, f. *au lieu de*, ad.  
 buying books.  
*acheter*, v.

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven hundred and seventy-nine.——Your father received yesterday agreeable news.——She burst into tears after your cousin was gone.——We sent him a great deal of money unknown to your mother.——Why did you not finish your work sooner?——(As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran away).  
*fondre*, v. *en* *après que*, c.  
*fut parti*, p. p.  
*à l'insçu*, p. de  
*Dès que*, c.  
*prirent la fuite*

FUT. I will (give in) my accounts (at the) beginning of next<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup>.——My friend Mrs. R. will dine with me next<sup>2</sup> Wednesday<sup>1</sup>.——We shall seize the first opportunity to thank him for his kindnesses.——You will soon entertain a better opinion of him.——Will not your sister (come down stairs) to-day?  
*rendre* *au*  
*prochain*, adj. *semaine*, f.  
*Mercredi*, m. *saisir*, v.  
*occasion*, f. *pour remercier*, v. *de* *bonté*, f.  
*bientôt*, adv. *concevoir*  
*descendre*, v.

COND. PRES. I would lay two guineas your uncle is not yet arrived.——If my father were rich, he would rebuild his country<sup>2</sup>-house<sup>1</sup>.——Should we not express our gratitude toward those who do us good?——If you would, you could render  
*gager*, v.  
*encore arriver*, v.  
*rebâtir*, v. *maison de* *Devoir*, v.  
*exprimer*, v. *reconnoissance*, f. *envers*  
*font*, v. *bien*, m. *vouliez*, v. *pourriez rendre*, v.

great services to your country.——I am certain (that)  
*pays, m.*  
 they would reward you, if you deserved it.  
*récompenser, v. mériter, v.*

*Imperative Mood.*

Discharge with equity the duties of your  
*Remplir, v. équité, f. devoir, m.*  
 office.——Let him receive the punishment due to  
*charge, f. punition, f. dû, p. p.*  
 his crime.——Let us give God thanks for the good  
*rendre, v. à grâce, f. de*  
 news we received yesterday.——Imitate the great actions  
*hier, adv.*  
 of your ancestors.——Let them enjoy the fruit of  
*ancêtres, m. jouir, v. du*  
 their labours.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRES. Write to me by the first post, that  
*Ecrivez, v. ordinaire, m. afin que, c.*  
 I may receive your letter before my departure from  
*avant, p. départ, m.*  
 London.——Though he hear what you say,  
*Quoique, c. entendre, v. dites, v.*  
 yet\* he does not understand you.——She is never  
*comprendre, v.*  
 pleased, though we obey her in (every thing).——  
*content, adj. lui en, p. tout.*  
 I will tell it to you, provided you do not speak  
*dirai, v. pourvu que, c.*  
 of it to your sister.——He will pay them, provided they  
*les*  
 wait a little longer.  
*attendre, v. un peu-plus long-tems, adv.*  
 IMP. I wrote to your father (some time ago)  
*écrivis, v. il y a quelque tems*  
 that he might engage Mr. W. to come and spend  
*afin que, c. à passer, v.*  
 the holidays with us.——That she might reflect on  
*vacance, f. pl.*

\* Yet, meaning however, is to be rendered into French by *cependant* or *néanmoins*.

her own conduct, and not on that of others.——  
*propre*, adj.  
 He would not come to see us, lest we should  
*voulut*, v. *de peur que*, c.  
 perceive his bad designs.——Your uncle desired  
*ordonner*, v.  
 that you might sell his two horses to Mr. B.——I  
 should be very sorry if they fell into bad hands.  
*que*, c. *tomber*, v. *en de*

*Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound Tenses.*

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not  
*m'a*  
 yet (given me any answer).——Have I not  
*encore*, adv. *répondu*  
 faithfully executed your orders?——Has your sister  
 succeeded in her undertaking? Yes, she has, and I have  
*reussi*  
 congratulated her (upon it).——We have not yet  
*féliciter*, v. *en*  
 received any remittance from America.——Mrs. N.  
*de remise*, f.  
 told me you had already sold half of your  
*déjà*, adv. *moitié*, f.  
 goods.——Why did you not pay those poor  
*marchandise*, f.  
 people?——He would have been punished, if I had  
*gens*, m. et f. pl.  
 not defended his right.——They have sold him four  
*cause*, f. *lui*  
 dozen of handkerchiefs at an exorbitant<sup>2</sup> price<sup>1</sup>, but they  
*mouchoir*, m. à *prix*, m.  
 have warranted them fine and well worked.——We  
*garantir*, v. *travailler*, v.  
 thought you would have brought your brother with you.  
*croyions*, v. *amener*  
 ——Have we not been obliged to (wait for) Miss A.?  
*de attendre*, v.  
 ——If you had trusted them with your goods, they  
*confier*, v. *leur* *en*

would have stolen the greatest part of them.—It  
*partie, f.* *Ce, pro.*  
 is for that reason my father has not (thought fit) to  
*juger, v. à-propos*  
 send them to you.—Mr. D. had represented to him  
 all the danger of it.—Mrs. F. has gained her cause,  
*gagner, v.*  
 but she has lost all her wealth.—Had I not  
*perdre, v.* *bien, m.*  
 finished my work when she came in?—You  
*ouvrage, m.* *entrer, v.*  
 would have received your money (a month ago), if the  
*il y a un mois*  
 mail had not been robbed.—Mrs. P. told me she  
*malle, f.* *voler, v.*  
 would have paid you (some time ago), if she had sold  
*il y a quelque temps*  
 her goods.  
*marchandise*

CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated. The participle past of the verb, which is to be conjugated, is merely to be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that in French this participle varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun which stands as subject to the verb. Ex.

*Infinitive Mood.*

	M.	F.
<i>être</i>	aim-é,	ée, to be loved.
<i>être</i>	pun-i,	ie, to be punished.
<i>étant</i>	aim-é,	ée, being loved.
<i>étant</i>	pun-i,	ie, being punished.
<i>avoir été</i>	aim-é,	ée, to have been loved.
<i>avoir été</i>	pun-i,	ie, to have been punished.
<i>ayant été</i>	aim-é,	ée, having been loved.
<i>ayant été</i>	pun-i,	ie, having been punished.

*Indicative Mood.*

Singular.	M.	F.
<i>Je suis</i>	aim-é,	ée, &c. I am loved.
<i>Je suis</i>	pun-i,	ie, &c. I am punished.
Plural.		
<i>Nous sommes</i>	aim-és,	ées, &c. we are loved.
<i>Nous sommes</i>	pun-is,	ies, &c. we are punished.

*Compound Tenses.*

	M.	F.
<i>J'ai été</i>	pardonn-é,	ée, I have been forgiven.
<i>J'ai été</i>	pun-i,	ie, I have been punished.
<i>Nous avons été</i>	aim-és,	ées, we have been loved, &c.

## OF NEUTER VERBS.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one ; because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct object after it ; whereas the neuter verb never has, nor can have, but an indirect one : for instance,

<i>Dormir,</i>	To sleep,
<i>Venir,</i>	To come,
<i>Voyager,</i>	To travel,

are neuter verbs ; because we cannot say,

<i>Dormir une maison,</i>	To sleep a house.
<i>Venir un livre,</i>	To come a book.
<i>Voyager la chambre,</i>	To travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

<i>Jouir,</i>	To enjoy,
<i>Profiter,</i>	To profit by, to take advantage of,
<i>Parvenir,</i>	To attain, to reach,

are neuter verbs, because they can only be attended by indirect objects. Ex.

<i>Jouir d'une grande réputation,</i>	To enjoy a great reputation.
<i>Profiter du tems,</i>	To take advantage of the weather.
<i>Parvenir à son but,</i>	To attain our end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern a direct object, it follows that all verbs which govern a direct object can not be looked upon as neuter ones. Ex.

<i>Pleurer,</i>	To weep, to bewail,
<i>Sortir,</i>	To go out,
<i>Monter,</i>	To go up, or come up,
<i>Plaider, &amp;c.</i>	To plead,

are neuter verbs; but they become active when they govern a direct object. Ex.

<i>Elle pleure ses péchés,</i>	She bewails her sins.
<i>Sortez ce cheval,</i>	Bring out that horse.
<i>Il plaida sa cause lui-même,</i>	He himself pleaded his cause.

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts. Ex.

<i>Ferai-je bouillir ou rôtir cette viande?</i>	Shall I boil or roast that meat?
<i>Faites la bouillir,</i>	Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have; others with the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which are those that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle past of the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If this participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied as an adjective to a man, a woman, or any other animated being, the compounds of its verb are conjugated with the verb *être*. Ex.

<i>Arriver,</i> to arrive,	<i>Tomber,</i> to fall,
<i>Mourir,</i> to die,	<i>Venir,</i> to come, &c.
<i>Naître,</i> to be born,	

take the auxiliary verb *être*; because we can say,

<i>Un homme arrivé,</i>	A man arrived.
<i>Une femme morte,</i>	A woman dead.
<i>Un enfant né,</i>	A child born.
<i>Un cheval tombé, &amp;c.</i>	A horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, and cannot be used to qualify animated beings, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir*.  
Ex.

<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep,	<i>Règner</i> , to reign,
<i>Languir</i> , to languish, to linger,	<i>Vivre</i> , to live, &c.

take the auxiliary verb *avoir*; because we cannot say,

<i>Un homme dormi</i> ,	A man slept.
<i>Une femme languie</i> ,	A woman languished, or lingered.
<i>Un enfant règné</i> ,	A child reigned.
<i>Un cheval vécu</i> , &c.	A horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in this last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

<i>Un homme couru</i> ,	A man run,
<i>Une femme courue</i> ,	A woman run,

nor, *je suis couru*, *j'étois couru*, &c. but *j'ai couru*, *j'avois couru*, &c.

When we say in French, *un homme couru*, *une femme courue*, we mean a man or woman much sought after, a person or thing we are very eager to see. Ex.

*Ce prédicateur est fort couru*;  
*Cette danseuse est fort courue*;

that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être*; these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to re- main.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

*Monter* and *descendre* often govern a direct object; in which case they are considered as active verbs, and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*. Ex.



<i>J'ai monté les degrés,</i>	<i>I have ascended the stairs, or gone up the stairs.</i>
<i>Nous avons descendu la montagne,</i>	<i>We have come down the hill.</i>

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être*. Ex.

<i>Je suis monté,</i>	<i>I am up.</i>
<i>Elle est déjà descendue,</i>	<i>She is down already.</i>

*Sortir* is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living: but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey that we have been from home, and that we are come back again. Ex.

<i>Il est sorti de prison,</i>	<i>He is out of prison.</i>
<i>J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures,</i>	<i>I went out this morning at ten o'clock.</i>
<i>Avez-vous sorti ce matin?</i>	<i>Did you go out this morning?</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,</i>	<i>We have not been out all day.</i>
<i>Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,</i>	<i>The king has not been out of his room.</i>

*Demeurer* and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place. Ex.

<i>J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne,</i>	<i>I lived two years in the country.</i>
<i>Il a resté vingt ans à Rome,</i>	<i>He resided twenty years at Romè.</i>

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place. Ex.

<i>Il est demeuré à Londres pour y solliciter un évêché,</i>	<i>He has remained in London to solicit a bishopric.</i>
<i>Nous sommes restés à York pour y finir nos affaires,</i>	<i>We have tarried at York to conclude our affairs.</i>

*Périr* indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*. Ex.

<i>Il est péri deux vaisseaux sur mer;</i>	<i>Two ships have been lost at sea.</i>
<i>Trois hommes ont péri par cette tempête,</i>	<i>Three men have perished by that storm.</i>

*La plupart des équipages  
sont périés dans les ondes,  
le reste est péri de mi-  
sère,*

Most of the crew perished  
in the waves, the rest  
perished through misery.

It seems, however, that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

*Passer* sometimes governs an indirect object, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense. Ex.

*Le roi a passé par Ken-  
sington pour aller à  
Windsor,*

The king went through  
Kensington to go to  
Windsor.

*Nous avons passé devant  
l'église,*

We went by the church.

*Elle a passé près du parc  
St. Jacques,*

She went by St. James's  
Park.

*La couronne de Naples a  
passé dans la maison de  
Bourbon,*

The crown of Naples  
passed to the house of  
Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être*. Ex.

*Le roi est passé, vous ne  
sauriez le voir,*

The king is gone by, you  
cannot see him.

*Le beau tems est passé,  
Vos chagrins sont passés,*

The fine weather is over.  
Your sorrows are over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand *in the language*, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

*Passer* is often a reflected passive verb, when its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

*Passer*, in several cases, becomes an active verb, and governs an absolute case. Ex.

*Passez cela sur le feu,  
Les ennemis ont passé la  
rivière,*

Pass that over the fire.  
The enemies have crossed  
the river.

*Passer l'épée au travers du  
corps,*

To run one through the  
body.

*Echapper* has two significations: sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs an indirect object with the help of the preposition *à*, to; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up; in this case it takes the verb *être* for its auxiliary; and if it is followed by an object, that object is an indirect one, and must be preceded by the preposition *de*, from. Ex.

*Vous avez échappé là à un grand danger,*

*Il a échappé à la mort,*

*Ils sont échappés de leur prison, or,*

*Ils se sont échappés de leur prison,*

*On la tenoit depuis quelques jours; mais elle est échappée, or elle s'est échappée;*

You have escaped a great danger.

He has escaped death.

They have escaped from their prison, or, made their escape.

They had her for some days; but she has escaped, or, made her escape.

Exercises on the irregular neuter verbs will be found among the irregular verbs, whenever they occur.

# REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing; so that the subject that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action. Ex.

*Je me connois,*

*Tu te loues,*

*Il se blesse,*

*Nous nous chauffons,*

I know myself,

Thou praisest thyself,

He wounds himself,

We warm ourselves,

are reflected verbs, because it is *I* who know, and who am known; *thou* who praisest and who art praised; *he* who wounds and who is wounded, &c.

In order to express the relation of the subject of the verb with its object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me*, *te*, *se*, myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, for the singular; *nous*, *vous*, *se*, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that, in English, the second pronoun is implied, though it must be expressed in French. Ex.

<i>Je me souviens,</i>	I remember.
<i>Elle ne veut pas se marier,</i>	She will not marry.
<i>Nous nous plaignons, &amp;c.</i>	We complain, &c.

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner, viz.

<i>Verbes réfléchis essentiels,</i>	Verbs essentially reflective.
<i>Verbes réfléchis accidentels,</i>	Verbs accidentally reflective.
<i>Verbes réfléchis passifs,</i>	Verbs reflective passive.

A verb essentially reflective is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts is at the same time the object of the action. Ex.

<i>Je me chauffe,</i>	I warm <i>myself</i> .
<i>Elle se blesse,</i>	She wounds <i>herself</i> , &c.

A verb is accidentally reflective when we add to it the double pronoun, without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action; such as,

<i>Je me repens,</i>	I repent,
<i>Il s'en va,</i>	He is going away,
<i>Elle se meurt,</i>	She is dying,
<i>Nous nous appercevons de notre erreur,</i>	We perceive our error,

which merely signify *je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous appercevons notre erreur.*

*Verb Reflective Passive.*—This verb is so called because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb. Ex.

<i>Cela se voit tous les jours,</i>	That is seen every day.
<i>Cela ne se dit point,</i>	That is not said.
<i>Ce livre se vend bien,</i>	That book sells well.
<i>Ce bruit se répand,</i>	That rumour is spread.
<i>Ces fruits se mangent en hiver,</i>	These fruits are eaten in winter.
<i>Cet homme s'est trouvé in- nocent du crime dont on l'accusoit,</i>	That man has been found innocent of the crime with which he was ac- cused.

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit, &c.* which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

Some authors call *réci-proque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs: but this denomination appears to me insufficient to determine accurately the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verbs to those that express what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other: this opinion I adopt, and I say, in the following sentences,

<i>Pierre et Jean se battent,</i>	Peter and John are fighting, or beating each other,
<i>Paul et Robert s'aiment,</i>	Paul and Robert love each other,
<i>Le feu et l'eau se détruisent,</i>	Fire and water destroy each other,

the verbs are *reciprocal*, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement*, or *l'un l'autre*; *Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement*, &c.

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time, that we often prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity of action. Ex.

<i>Pierre et Jean s'entr'aiment,</i>	Peter and John love each other.
<i>Ils s'entre-louent,</i>	They praise each other.
<i>Elles s'entre-haïssent,</i>	They hate each other.
<i>Le feu et l'eau s'entre-détruisent, &amp;c.</i>	Fire and water destroy each other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*; hence it may be supposed how much French people are shocked to hear any one, who has learned that language, say,

<i>Je m'ai acheté un cheval,</i>	I bought myself a horse,
<i>Je m'avois blessé,</i>	I had hurt myself,
<i>Il s'a fait mal,</i>	He has hurt himself,
<i>Elle s'avoit moquée de moi,</i>	She had laughed at me,
&c.	

expressions too commonly made use of by many English people, who speak without knowledge of the principles of the language; whereas we must say,

*Je me suis acheté un cheval.*

*Je m'étois blessé.*

*Il s'est fait mal.*

*Elle s'étoit moquée de moi.*

*Nous nous sommes informés,*

*Ils se sont promenés,*

*Il s'est passé d'étranges  
choses depuis votre dé-  
part,*

*Il s'est passé bien des an-  
nées depuis que j'ai ouï  
parler de cette affaire,*

We have inquired.

They have walked.

Strange things have hap-  
pened since your de-  
parture.

Many years have elapsed  
since I heard of that af-  
fair.

It must be owned, that, in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir*; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its object a conjunctive pronoun that relates to the principle of the action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary; for, though we say,

*Il a voulu se tuer,*

He would kill himself,

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say,  
*Il s'est voulu tuer.*

#### CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs.

##### *Infinitive Mood.*

Present.      *Se promener*, to walk.

Part. act.    *Se promenant*, walking.

M. sing.      F.

Part. past.    *promen-é*,      *ée*, walked.

M. plur.      F.

Part. past.    *promen-és*,      *ées*, walked.

##### *Compound Tenses.*

Preterite.    *S'être promené*, to have walked.

Part. past.    *S'étant promené*, having walked.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present, Singular.

*Je me promène, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.*

*Tu te promènes.*

*Il se promène.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenons, we walk, &c.*

*Vous vous promenez.*

*Ils se promènent.*

Imperfect, Singular.

*Je me promenais, I did walk, or walked, or was walk-*

*Tu te promenais.*

*ing.*

*Ils se promenoit.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenions, we did walk, &c.*

*Vous vous promeniez.*

*Ils se promenoient.*

Preterite, Singular.

*Je me promenai, I did walk, or walked.*

*Tu te promenais.*

*Il se promena.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenâmes, we did walk, &c.*

*Vous vous promenâtes.*

*Ils se promenèrent.*

Future, Singular.

*Je me promènerai, I shall or will walk.*

*Tu te promèneras.*

*Ils se promènera.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promènerons, we shall or will walk.*

*Vous vous promènerez.*

*Ils se promèneront.*

Conditional Present, Singular.

*Je me promènerais, I would or should walk.*

*Tu te promènerais.*

*Il se promèneroit.*

## Plural.

*Nous nous promenerions*, we would, &c. walk.

*Vous vous promeneriez.*

*Ils se promèneroient.*

## Compound Tenses.

Pret. indefin. *Je me suis promen-é, ée*, I have walked.

Pret. ant. def. *Je me fus promen-é, ée*, I had walked.

Preterpluper. *Je m'étois promen-é, ée*, I had walked.

Future past. *Je me serai promen-é, ée*, I shall or will have walked.

Cond. past. *Je me serois promen-é, ée*, I should, &c. have walked.

## Imperative Mood.

Present, Singular.

*Promène-toi\**, walk thou.

*Qu'il se promène*, let him walk.

Plural.

*Promenons-nous\**, let us walk.

*Promenez-vous\**, walk ye.

*Qu'ils se promènent*, let them walk.

## Subjunctive Mood.

Present, Singular.

*Que je me promène*, that I may walk.

*tu te promènes.*

*il se promène.*

Plural.

*nous nous promenions*, that we may walk.

*vous vous promeniez.*

*ils se promènent.*

Imperfect, Singular.

*Que je me promenasse*, that I might walk.

*tu te promenasses.*

*il se promenât.*

\* When the verb is conjugated with a *negation*, these three pronouns are put before the verb. Ex. *Ne vous promenez pas*, do not walk; and *toi* is changed into *te*; *ne te promène pas*.



Plural.

*Que nous nous promenassions, that we might walk.*  
*vous vous promenassiez.*  
*ils se promenassent.*

Compound Tenses.

M. F.

Preterite. *Que je me sois promen-é, ée, that I may*  
*have walked.*  
 Preterpluperf. *Que je me fusse promen-é, ée, that I might*  
*have walked.*

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation. Ex.

<i>Je ne me promène pas,</i>	I do not walk.
<i>Vous promenez-vous ?</i>	Do you walk ?
<i>Ne se promène-t-il pas ?</i>	Does he not walk ?

Compound Tenses.

<i>Me suis-je promené ?</i>	Have I walked? or did I walk?
<i>Ne vous êtes-vous pas chauffé ?</i>	Have you not warmed yourself? or did you not warm yourself?
<i>Mon cousin s'est-il informé ?</i>	Has my cousin inquired? or did my cousin inquire?
<i>Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti ?</i>	Has not your brother repented? or did not your brother repent?

Observation 1.—We say in French,

<i>Se promener à cheval, en</i>	To take a ride, an airing
<i>carosse,</i>	on horseback, in a coach.
<i>Se promener sur l'eau, sur</i>	To go upon the water, on
<i>la rivière,</i>	the river.
<i>S'informer des nouvelles de,</i>	To inquire after.

## EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

Observation 2.—Verbs marked thus § are irregular: see the irregular verbs.

## Indicative Mood.

PRES. I rise (early) every  
*Se lever, v. de bonne heure, adv. tous les*  
 morning.—Does not your brother remember to  
*matin, m. se ressouvenir, v. §*  
 have seen me?—My sister\* is not well, she  
*tu, p. p. sœur, f.*  
 applies herself (too much) to study.—We  
*s'appliquer, v. trop, adv.*  
 rejoice at the good news he has brought  
*se réjouir, v. de nouvelle, f. apporté, p. p.*  
 us.—When do you intend to go and see  
*se proposer, v. de aller, v. voir, v.*  
 Mrs. H.?—Do you not repent of what you  
*se repentir, v. § de*  
 have done to her?—I believe your brothers are  
*fait, p. p. croire, v. §*  
 not well; † for I have not seen them this week.  
*car, c. tu, p. p. semaine, f.*  
 IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park, ‡ when  
*parc, m. quand, c.*  
 I met him.—Was he not warming himself  
*rencontrer, v. se chauffer, v.*  
 when you (came in)?—We did not imagine he  
*entrer, v. s'imaginer, v.*  
 would succeed so well.—You were boasting too  
*réussir, v. se vanter, v.*  
 much of what you have done for him.—They did  
*fait, p. p.*  
 not expect (that they should) meet us.  
*s'attendre, v. à*  
 PRET. I inquired after you yesterday. || —Did  
*s'informer, v. de hier, adv.*

\* When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter*:

*Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien, My sister is not well.*

† See the above note \*.

‡ See Observation 1, page 221.

|| See the above Observation ‡.

not my son behave well in the last  
*se comporter, v.* *dernier, adj.*  
 war?—Corn was sold yesterday for twelve  
*guerre, f.* *se vendre, v.*  
 shillings a bushel.—We saw ourselves surrounded  
*Se voir, v. §* *entouré, p. p.*  
 by more than twenty persons in an instant.—Did you  
*de* *en, p.*  
 not find yourselves obliged to go there?  
*se trouver, v.* *obligé, p. p.* *de aller, v.*  
 —They did not stop one minute.  
*s'arrêter, v.*

FUT. I will not complain of you, if you pro-  
*se plaindre, v. §* *pro-*  
 mise me to behave better.—Will your bird  
*mettre, v. §* *de* *mieux, adv.* *oiseau, m.*  
 (grow tame)?—Shall we submit ourselves to  
*s'apprivoiser, v.* *se soumettre, v. §*  
 his judgment?—You will ruin yourselves if you  
*jugement, m.* *se ruiner, v.*  
 continue (gaming).—Will they not perceive  
*continuer, v.* *de jouer, v.* *apercevoir, v.*  
 it (as soon as) they come into the room.  
*dès que, c.* *entrer, v.*

COND. PRES. If I were in your place, I would not  
*étois à*  
 vex myself.—Would she not (make her escape)?—  
*se chagriner, v.* *s'échapper, v.*  
 We would embark (this day) if the weather  
*s'embarquer, v.* *aujourd'hui, adv.* *tems, m.*  
 (would permit).—Would you so soon?—Why  
*le permettoit, v.* *tôt, adv.*  
 would you expose yourselves to their fury?—They  
*s'exposer, v.* *fureur, f.*  
 would agree very well, if they were not so  
*s'accorder, v.* *bien, adv.*  
 proud.  
*orgueilleux, adj.*

*Imperative Mood.*

I give you leave to go out, but do not  
*donner, v.* *permission, f.* *de sortir, v.* *mais, c.*  
 overheat yourself.—Let him amuse himself  
*s'échauffer, v.* *s'amuser, v.*

a little in my garden.—Let us remember  
*un peu*, adv. *jardin*, m. *se ressouvenir de*, v. §  
 what we are to do.—Endeavour to please your  
 \* *faire*, v. *S'efforcer*, v. *de plaire*, v. à  
 master, and do not so often mistake in the tenses,  
*maître*, m. *se tromper*, v.  
 numbers, and persons of the verb.—Let them (fall asleep).  
*s'endormir*, v.

### Subjunctive Mood.

PRES. I must apply myself to the French  
*Il faut que s'appliquer*, v.  
 language.—I will hide it, lest she should  
*langue*, f. *cacher*, v. *de peur que*, c.  
 perceive it.—Provided we remember to  
*apercevoir*, v. *le*, pro. *Pourvu que*, c. *de*  
 ask him how his mother does.—  
*demander*, v. *lui* *comment*, adv. *se porter*, v.  
 (In order that) you may not boast (so much).—  
*Afin que*, c. *se vanter*, v. *tant*, adv.  
 I have told them who you are, that they may  
*dit*, p. p. *leur* *afin que*, c.  
 behave better another time.  
*fois*, f.

IMP. That I might not ruin myself.—That he might  
*se ruiner*, v.  
 not meddle with my affairs.—That we might excuse  
*se mêler*, v. *de* *s'excuser*, v.  
 ourselves.—That you might not go away.—That  
*s'en aller*, v. §  
 they might not repent too late.  
*se repentir*, v. § *trop tard*, adv.

### Compound Tenses.

I have inquired after you and your sister.†—He  
*s'informer*, v. *de*  
 says you have not been well while you were in  
*dit*, v. *pendant que*, c. *à*  
 the country.—Has not your cousin laughed  
*campagne*, f. *cousin*, m. *se moquer*, v.  
 at me?—Did we not get up at six (o'clock)?—  
*de* *se lever*, v. *à* *heure*, f.

\* See the note in the exercises upon the third conjugation, page 196.

† Say, *I have inquired of your news and of those of*, &c.

They have perceived the trick, but it was too  
*s'apercevoir du tour, m.*  
 late.—Did you remember me?—I had not  
*se ressouvenir, v. de*  
 applied myself enough.—Had not your sister  
*s'appliquer, v. assez, adv.*  
 imagined that they would have found themselves  
*s'imaginer, v. se trouver, v.*  
 obliged to go to France?—(Many<sup>3</sup> things) have  
*obligé, p. p. de Bien des choses on*  
 been said (of them<sup>2</sup>) which are not true.—We had  
*a dit, v. d'eux*  
 thought ourselves able to resist them,  
*se croire, v. § capable, adj. de résister, v.*  
 but we were deceived.—Did you not  
*mais, c. nous nous étions trompés, v.*  
 hide yourselves in order to surprise them?—  
*se cacher, v. de surprendre, v.*  
 When I (shall) have walked five or six minutes in the  
*Quand, adv.*  
 garden, I will rest myself.—Why have you exhausted  
*se reposer, v. s'épuiser, v.*  
 yourself as you have done?—Our sailors would have  
*l'avez fait, p. p.*  
 behaved with more resolution.—Would you not have  
 excused yourself?—When they have repented  
*s'excuser, v. se repentir, v.*  
 (of) their faults, I will forgive them.—If I had been  
*de leur*  
 in your place, I would not have meddled with their  
*à se mêler, v. de*  
 affairs.—Your friend would not have complained of  
*se plaindre, v. §*  
 you, and you never would have fallen out for so small  
*se brouiller, v. peu*  
 a matter.  
*de chose, f.*

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregular*, because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers.

## VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

ALLER, *to go.**Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Aller, to go.</i>
Part. act.	<i>Allant, going.</i>
Part. past.	<i>Allé, ée, gone.</i>

*Indicative Mood.*

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Vais,</i>	<i>vas,</i>	<i>va, I go, or am going.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allons,</i>	<i>allez,</i>	<i>vont.</i>

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Allois,</i>	<i>allois,</i>	<i>alloit, I did go, or was going.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allions,</i>	<i>alliez,</i>	<i>alloient.</i>

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Allai,</i>	<i>allas,</i>	<i>alla, I went, or did go.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allâmes,</i>	<i>allâtes,</i>	<i>allèrent.</i>

## Second Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Fus,</i>	<i>fus,</i>	<i>fut, I went, or did go.</i>
Plur.	<i>Fûmes,</i>	<i>fûtes,</i>	<i>furent.</i>

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Irai,</i>	<i>iras,</i>	<i>ira, I shall, or will go.</i>
Plur.	<i>Irons,</i>	<i>irez,</i>	<i>iront.</i>

## Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Irois,</i>	<i>irois,</i>	<i>iroit, I should or would go.</i>
Plur.	<i>Irions,</i>	<i>iriez,</i>	<i>iroient.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Va, go thou ;</i> <i>qu'il aille, let him go.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allons, allez, qu'ils aillent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.*

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Aille,</i>	<i>ailles,</i>	<i>aille, that I may go.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allions,</i>	<i>alliez,</i>	<i>aillent.</i>

Imperfect.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Allasse,</i>	<i>allasses,</i>	<i>allât,</i>	that I might go.
Plur.	<i>Allassions,</i>	<i>allassiez,</i>	<i>allassent.</i>	

*Observation.*—Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked, that those which are formed by the participle *allé*, signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows, that the first and second persons of the preterite indefinite,

*Je suis allé,*  
*Tu es allé, &c.*

I have gone, &c.

can seldom be used in discourse; for we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as *j'ai été, tu as été*; for when we say,

*Il est allé à Londres,*      He is gone to London,

we give to understand, that he is still in London, or is on his way, going to London: on the contrary,

*Il a été à Londres,*      He has been or gone to  
London,

means that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one, with the particle *en*. Ex.

*S'en aller,* to go away.

*Je m'en vais,* I go or am going away.

*Tu t'en vas,* thou goest or art going away.

*Il s'en va,* he goes or is going away.

*Nous nous en allons,* we go or are going away.

*Vous vous en allez,* you go or are going away.

*Ils s'en vont,* they go or are going away.

Negatively.

*Je ne m'en vais pas,* I am not going away.

*Il ne s'en va pas,* he is not going away.

*Nous ne nous en allons pas,* we are not going away.

*Vous ne vous en allez pas, &c.* you are not going away, &c.

## Interrogatively.

*S'en va-t-il?* is he going away?

*Vous en allez-vous, &c.* are you going away? &c.

*Ne s'en vont-ils pas?* &c. are they not going away? &c.

The imperative mood is thus conjugated:

## Singular.

*Va-t-en*, go thou away.

*Qu'il s'en aille*, let him go away.

## Plural.

*Allons-nous en*, let us go away.

*Allez-vous en*, go away.

*Qu'ils s'en aillent*, let them go away.

Its compound tenses are,

*Indicative Mood.*

*Je m'en suis allé*, I have gone away.

*Je m'en fus allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en étois allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en serai allé*, I shall have gone away, &c.

*Je m'en serois allé*, I should have gone away, &c.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Que je m'en sois allé*, that I may have gone away, &c.

*Que je m'en fusse allé*, that I might have gone away, &c.

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUÉRIR, *to acquire.**Infinitive Mood.*

Present.

*Acquérir*, to acquire.

Part. act.

*Acquérant*, acquiring.

Part. past.

*Acquis*, acquired.

*Indicative Mood.*

## Present.

Sing. *Acquiers*, *acquiers*, *acquiert*, I acquire, or am

Plur. *Acquérons*, *acquérez*, *acquièrent*. acquiring.



Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquérois, acquérois, acqueroit*, I did acquire, or  
 Plur. *Acquérions, acquériez, acquéroient*. was acquiring.

Preterite.

Sing. *Acquis, acquis, acquit*, I acquired, or did  
 Plur. *Acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent*. acquire.

Future.

Sing. *Acquerrai, acquerras, acquerra*, I shall or will ac-  
 Plur. *Acquerrons, acquerez, acquerront*. quire.

Conditional Present.

Sing. *Acquerrois, acquerrois, acquerroit*, I should or would  
 Plur. *Acquerriions, acquerriez, acquerroient*. acquire.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Acquiers, acquière*, acquire thou.  
 Plur. *Acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent*.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Acquière, acquières, acquière*, that I may acquire.  
 Plur. *Acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquisse, acquisses, acquît*, that I might acquire.  
 Plur. *Acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent*.

QUERIR, to fetch.

The primitive of the above verb is never used but in the present of the infinitive mood with the verbs *aller*, to go; *venir*, to come; and *envoyer*, to send. Ex.

*Envoyez-moi querir*, Send for me.

CONQUÉRIR, to conquer; REQUÉRIR, to require; are conjugated like ACQUÉRIR.

## BOUILLIR, to boil.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Bouillir</i> , to boil.
Part. act.	<i>Bouillant</i> , boiling.
Part. past.	<i>Bouilli</i> , ie, boiled.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing. <i>Bous</i> ,	<i>bous</i> ,	<i>bout</i> , I boil, or am boiling.
Plur. <i>Bouillons</i> ,	<i>bouillez</i> ,	<i>bouillent</i> .

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Bouillois</i> ,	<i>bouillois</i> ,	<i>bouilloit</i> , I did boil, or was
Plur. <i>Bouillions</i> ,	<i>bouilliez</i> ,	<i>bouilloient</i> . boiling.

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Bouillis</i> ,	<i>bouillis</i> ,	<i>bouillit</i> , I boiled, or did boil.
Plur. <i>Bouillimes</i> ,	<i>bouillites</i> ,	<i>bouillirent</i> .

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Bouillirai</i> ,	<i>bouilliras</i> ,	<i>bouillira</i> , I shall or will boil.
Plur. <i>Bouillirons</i> ,	<i>bouillirez</i> ,	<i>bouilliront</i> .

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Bouillirois</i> ,	<i>bouillirois</i> ,	<i>bouilliroit</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Bouillirions</i> ,	<i>bouilliriez</i> ,	<i>bouilliroient</i> . boil.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Bous</i> ,	<i>bouille</i> , boil thou.
Plur. <i>Bouillons</i> ,	<i>bouillez</i> ,	<i>bouillent</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Bouille</i> ,	<i>bouilles</i> ,	<i>bouille</i> ,	that I may boil.
Plur. <i>Bouillions</i> ,	<i>bouilliez</i> ,	<i>bouillent</i> .	

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Bouillisse</i> ,	<i>bouillisses</i> ,	<i>bouillît</i> ,	that I might boil.
Plur. <i>Bouillissions</i> ,	<i>bouillissiez</i> ,	<i>bouillissent</i> .	

*Observation.*—This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the third person singular or plural, and its infinitive mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *faire*. The same observation is to be applied to *rôtir*, to roast. Ex.

Faites <i>bouillir</i> cette viande,	Boil that meat.
Faites <i>rôtir</i> cette volaille,	Roast that fowl.

---

COURIR, to run.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Courir</i> , to run.
Part. act.	<i>Courant</i> , running.
Part. past.	<i>Couru</i> , <i>ue</i> , run.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. <i>Cours</i> ,	<i>cours</i> ,	<i>court</i> , I run, or am running.
Plur. <i>Courons</i> ,	<i>courez</i> ,	<i>courent</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Courois</i> ,	<i>courois</i> ,	<i>couroit</i> , I did run, or was
Plur. <i>Courions</i> ,	<i>couriez</i> ,	<i>couroient</i> . running.

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Courus</i> ,	<i>courus</i> ,	<i>courut</i> , I ran, or did run.
Plur. <i>Courûmes</i> ,	<i>courûtes</i> ,	<i>coururent</i>

Future.

Sing. <i>Courrai</i> ,	<i>courras</i> ,	<i>courra</i> , I shall or will run.
Plur. <i>Courrons</i> ,	<i>courez</i> ,	<i>courront</i> .

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Courrois</i> ,	<i>courrois</i> ,	<i>courroit</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Courrions</i> ,	<i>courriez</i> ,	<i>courroient</i> . run.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Cours</i> ,	<i>coure</i> , run thou.
Plur. <i>Courons</i> ,	<i>courez</i> ,	<i>courent</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Coure,</i>	<i>coures,</i>	<i>coure,</i> that I may run.
Plur.	<i>Courions,</i>	<i>couriez,</i>	<i>courent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Courusse,</i>	<i>courusses,</i>	<i>courût,</i> that I might run.
Plur.	<i>Courussions,</i>	<i>courussiez,</i>	<i>courussent.</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Accourir,</i> to run to.	<i>Recourir,</i> to have recourse to.
<i>Concourir,</i> to concur.	
<i>Discourir,</i> to discourse.	<i>Secourir,</i> to succour, to assist.
<i>Encourir,</i> to incur.	
<i>Parcourir,</i> to run over.	

*COUVRIR,* to cover.  
*See OUVRIER,* to open.

*CUEILLIR,* to gather.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Cueillir,</i> to gather.
Part. act.	<i>Cueillant,</i> gathering.
Part. past.	<i>Cueilli,</i> ie, gathered.

*Present.*

Sing.	<i>Cueille,</i>	<i>cueilles,</i>	<i>cueille,</i> I gather, or am gathering.
Plur.	<i>Cueillons,</i>	<i>cueillez,</i>	<i>cueillent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Cueillois,</i>	<i>cueillois,</i>	<i>cueilloit,</i> I did gather, or was gathering.
Plur.	<i>Cueillions,</i>	<i>cueilliez,</i>	<i>cueilloient.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Cueillis,</i>	<i>cueillis,</i>	<i>cueillit,</i> I gathered, or did gather.
Plur.	<i>Cueillimes,</i>	<i>cueillites,</i>	<i>cueillirent.</i>

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Cueillerai,</i>	<i>cueilleras,</i>	<i>cueillera,</i> I shall or will gather.
Plur.	<i>Cueillerons,</i>	<i>cueillerez,</i>	<i>cueilleront.</i>

Conditional Present.

Sing. *Cueillerois, cueillerois, cueilleroit*, I should or would  
 Plur. *Cueillerions, cueilleriez, cueilleroient*. gather.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Cueille, cueille*, gather thou.  
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille*, that I may gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît*, that I might gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Accueillir*, to make welcome. *Recueillir*, to gather together.

DORMIR, to sleep.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Dormir*, to sleep.  
 Part. act. *Dormant*, sleeping.  
 Part. past. *Dormi*, slept.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing. *Dors, dors, dort*, I sleep, or am sleeping.  
 Plur. *Dormons, dormez, dorment*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormois, dormois, dormoit*, I did sleep, or was  
 Plur. *Dormions, dormiez, dormoient*. sleeping.

Preterite.

Sing. *Dormis, dormis, dormit*, I slept, or did sleep.  
 Plur. *Dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Dormirai, dormiras, dormira*, I shall or will sleep.  
 Plur. *Dormirons, dormirez, dormiront*.

## Conditional Present.

Sing. *Dormirois, dormirois, dormiroit*, I would or should  
 Plur. *Dormirions, dormiriez, dormiroient*. sleep.

## Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Dors, dorme*, sleep thou.  
 Plur. *Dormons, dormez, dorment*.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Dorme, dormes, dorme*, that I may sleep.  
 Plur. *Dormions, dormiez, dorment*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormisse, dormisses, dormît*, that I might sleep.  
 Plur. *Dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Endormir*, to make sleep. *Se rendormir*, to fall asleep  
*S'endormir*, to fall asleep. again.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Where are you going? I am going to the play.——  
*Où*, adv. *comédie*, f.  
 I would' go with you, if I had time.——Why are  
 they going away so soon? *j'en avois le temps*——Will not your father be  
*tôt*, adv.  
 angry if you go there without him?——We were  
*fâché*, adj.  
 going to Miss D.'s, when we met you.——  
*chez*, p. *rencontrer*, v.  
 These men went yesterday from house to house.——  
*en*, p.  
 Believe me, sir, do not go to see them.——Your  
*Croire*, v. *voir*, v.

father told me, you will go to France and Italy as soon  
*dire, v.*

as the war (be over).—My sister and I went last<sup>2</sup>  
*sera finie* *dernier, adj.*

Wednesday<sup>1</sup> to Vauxhall.\*—If you had gone (thither)  
*au*

an hour sooner, you would have heard fine music.  
*plutôt, adv.* *entendre, v.*

—Your uncle has acquired a great name in America.  
*nom, m.*

—My father went to pay your uncle a visit last<sup>2</sup>  
*rendre, v.*

week<sup>1</sup>, and he did not welcome him as a friend. Did  
*reçut* *en, p.*

he not? I am sorry for it.—Mr. Dubois, the king's

silversmith, has brought the watch: it now<sup>2</sup>  
*argentier, m.* *maintenant, adv.*

goes<sup>1</sup> very well.——Go and fetch me the letter I

left in my room.—Boil<sup>†</sup> this chicken and roast  
*laisser, v.* *poulet, m.* *rôtir, v.*

that goose.——At last we have conquered.——This  
*oie, f.* *Enfin, adv.*

water will soon boil.——Boil that meat again, it is  
*bientôt, adv.*

not done enough.——Do not run so fast, you will  
*cuit, p. p.* *vîte, adv.*

be tired.——They always run when they go to see their  
*fatigué, p. p.*

aunt.——Your brother runs faster than I.——When  
*tante, f.*

he heard that his friend was in danger, he ran  
*apprendre, v.*

instantly to him.——Let us not discourse any more  
*aussitôt, adv.*

on that subject.——I would assist him with all my heart,  
*sujet, m.* *de*

if I could.——This gentleman is a great traveller: he  
*pouvoir, v.* *voyageur, m.*

\* See the observation at the top of page 78. . .

† See the observation at the end of the conjugation of *bouillir*, p. 231.

has *run over*\* all Europe.——Let him go away, for I  
do not wish to speak to him.——If you do it, you  
veux, v. faire, v.  
will incur your father's displeasure.——That would concur  
déplaisir, m.  
to the public<sup>2</sup> good<sup>1</sup>.——When children are guilty,  
bien, m. coupable, adj.  
they generally have recourse (to some) falsehood.——  
avoir recours au mensonge, m.  
For whom are you gathering those charming flowers? I  
gather them for my mother.——Why do they not  
gather some roses? Mrs. P. would have gathered some,  
rose, f.  
but the gardener told her he would gather them him-  
jardinier, m.  
self.——Of all nations none has welcomed the poor French  
clergy better than the English.——Do not make  
clergé, m. faire, v.  
any noise, for my sister (is asleep).——I hope she will  
car, c. dormir  
sleep better to-night.——She would sleep much better, if  
ce soir, m.  
she were in her bed.——If I do not walk a little,  
lit, m. se promener, v.  
I shall fall asleep.——My mother, sister, brother, and I†,  
went yesterday to Croydon to see Miss Keen.——  
hier, adv. Mademoiselle, f.  
Did you go thither on foot?——No, my mother and sister  
à  
went in a coach, and my brother and I on horseback.‡  
en, p. à cheval, m.

\* See the compounds of *courir*, p. 232.

† See the observation after Rule 4, on the Personal Pronouns, p. 78.

‡ Say, *my brother and I we went*, &c.; see the observation at the top of page 78.



**FUIR**, to run away, to shun, to avoid, to flee.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Fuir</i> , to flee.
Part. act.	<i>Fuyant</i> , fleeing.
Part. past.	<i>Fui</i> , ie, fled.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. <i>Fuis</i> ,	<i>fuis</i> ,	<i>fuit</i> , I flee.
Plur. <i>Fuyons</i> ,	<i>fuyiez</i> ,	<i>fuient</i> .

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Fuyois</i> ,	<i>fuyois</i> ,	<i>fuyoit</i> , I fled, or did flee.
Plur. <i>Fuyions</i> ,	<i>fuyiez</i> ,	<i>fuyoient</i> .

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Je fuis</i> ,	<i>tu fuit</i> ,	<i>il fuit</i> ,	I fled, or ran away.
Plur. <i>Nous fûmes</i> ,	<i>vous fûtes</i> ,	<i>ils fuirent</i> ,	they fled, &c.

This tense is also conjugated with the verb *prendre*, and the substantive *fuite*, preceded by the article *la*. Ex.

*Je pris la fuite*, I fled, or ran away.

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Fuirai</i> ,	<i>fuiras</i> ,	<i>fuira</i> , I shall or will flee.
Plur. <i>Fuirons</i> ,	<i>fuirez</i> ,	<i>fuiront</i> .

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Fuirois</i> ,	<i>fuirois</i> ,	<i>fuiroit</i> , I should or would flee.
Plur. <i>Fuirions</i> ,	<i>fuiriez</i> ,	<i>fuiroient</i> .

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. <i>Fuis</i> ,	<i>fuie</i> , flee thou.
Plur. <i>Fuyons</i> ,	<i>fuyez</i> , <i>fuient</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Fuie</i> ,	<i>fuies</i> ,	<i>fuie</i> , that I may flee.
Plur. <i>Fuyions</i> ,	<i>fuyiez</i> ,	<i>fuient</i> .

## Imperfect.

*Je prisse la fuite, &c. that I might flee.*

Sing. *Je fusse, tu fuisses, il fût, that I might*  
run away.

Plur. *Nous fuissions, vous fuissiez, ils fussent, that they, &c.*

MENTIR, to lie.

## Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>Mentir</i> , to lie.
Part. act.	<i>Mentant</i> , lying.
Part. past.	<i>Menti</i> , lied.

## Indicative Mood.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Mens,</i>	<i>mens,</i>	<i>ment</i> , I lie.
Plur. <i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i>	<i>mentent</i> .

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Mentois,</i>	<i>mentois,</i>	<i>mentoit</i> , I did lie, or was
Plur. <i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentoient</i> . lying.

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Mentis,</i>	<i>mentis,</i>	<i>mentit</i> , I lied, or did lie.
Plur. <i>Mentîmes,</i>	<i>mentîtes,</i>	<i>mentirent</i> .

## Future.

Sing. <i>Mentirai,</i>	<i>mentiras,</i>	<i>mentira</i> , I shall or will lie.
Plur. <i>Mentirons,</i>	<i>mentirez,</i>	<i>mentiront</i> .

## Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Mentirois,</i>	<i>mentirois,</i>	<i>mentiroit</i> , I would or should
Plur. <i>Mentirions,</i>	<i>mentiriez,</i>	<i>mentiroient</i> . lie.

## Imperative Mood.

Sing. <i>Mens,</i>	<i>mente</i> , lie thou.
Plur. <i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i> <i>mentent</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Mente,</i>	<i>mentes,</i>	<i>mente,</i> that I may lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Mentisse,</i>	<i>mentisses,</i>	<i>mentit,</i> that I might lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentissions,</i>	<i>mentissiez,</i>	<i>mentissent.</i>

The compound of this verb is

*Démentir,* to give one the lie, to belie, to contradict.

*MOURIR, to die.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Mourir,</i> to die.
Part. act.	<i>Mourant,</i> dying.
Part. past.	<i>Mort,</i> died or dead.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing.	<i>Meurs,</i>	<i>meurs,</i>	<i>meurt,</i> I die, or am dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourons,</i>	<i>mourez,</i>	<i>meurent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Mourois,</i>	<i>mourois,</i>	<i>mouroit,</i> I was dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourions,</i>	<i>mouriez,</i>	<i>mouroient.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Mourus,</i>	<i>mourus,</i>	<i>mourut,</i> I died.
Plur.	<i>Mourûmes,</i>	<i>mourûtes,</i>	<i>moururent.</i>

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Mourrai,</i>	<i>mourras,</i>	<i>mourra,</i> I shall or will die.
Plur.	<i>Mourrons,</i>	<i>mourrez,</i>	<i>mourront.</i>

*Conditional Present.*

Sing.	<i>Mourrois,</i>	<i>mourrois,</i>	<i>mourroit,</i> I should or would die.
Plur.	<i>Mourrions,</i>	<i>mourriez,</i>	<i>mourroient.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Meurs,</i>	<i>meure,</i>	die thou.
Plur.	<i>Mourons,</i>	<i>mourez,</i>	<i>meurent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Meure,</i>	<i>meures,</i>	<i>meure,</i>	that I may die.
Plur.	<i>Mourions,</i>	<i>mouriez,</i>	<i>meurent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Mourusse,</i>	<i>mourusses,</i>	<i>mourût,</i>	that I might die.
Plur.	<i>Mourussions,</i>	<i>mourussiez,</i>	<i>mourussent.</i>	

*Se mourir, to be dying.**OFFRIR, to offer.**Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Offrir,</i>	to offer.
Part. act.	<i>Offrant,</i>	offering.
Part. past.	<i>Offert, erte,</i>	offered.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offres,</i>	<i>offre,</i>	I offer, or am offering.
Plur.	<i>Offrons,</i>	<i>offrez,</i>	<i>offrent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Offrois,</i>	<i>offrois,</i>	<i>offroit,</i>	I did offer, or was
Plur.	<i>Offrions,</i>	<i>offriez,</i>	<i>offroient.</i>	offering.

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Offris,</i>	<i>offris,</i>	<i>offrit,</i>	I offered, or did offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrîmes,</i>	<i>offrîtes,</i>	<i>offrirent.</i>	

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Offrirai,</i>	<i>offriras,</i>	<i>offrira,</i>	I shall or will offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrirons,</i>	<i>offrirez,</i>	<i>offriront.</i>	

*Conditional Present.*

Sing.	<i>Offrirois,</i>	<i>offrirois,</i>	<i>offriroit,</i>	I would or should
Plur.	<i>Offririons,</i>	<i>offririez,</i>	<i>offriroient.</i>	offer.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offre, offer thou.</i>
Plur.	<i>Offrons,</i>	<i>offrez, offrent. —</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offres,</i>	<i>offre, that I may offer.</i>
Plur.	<i>Offrions,</i>	<i>offriez,</i>	<i>offrent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Offrisse,</i>	<i>offrisses,</i>	<i>offrît, that I might offer.</i>
Plur.	<i>Offrissions,</i>	<i>offrissiez,</i>	<i>offrissent.</i>

*OUIR, to hear.*

*Observation.*—This verb is never used but in its participle past, joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have, preceding the verb *dire*, to say. Ex.

*J'ai ouï dire que, I have heard, that, &c.*

In general we make use of *apprendre*.

*OUVRIR, to open.*

This verb, as well as its compounds,

<i>Couvrir,</i>	to cover,	<i>Recouvrir,</i>	to cover again,
<i>Découvrir,</i>	{ to discover,		
	{ to uncover,		

is conjugated like *Offrir*.

*PARTIR, to set out, to go away.*

And its compounds,

<i>Départir,</i>	to depart; to	<i>Repartir,</i>	to set out again;
impart;			to reply;

*Se REPENTIR, to repent; SENTIR, to feel, to smell;*

And its compounds,

<i>Consentir,</i>	to consent, to	<i>Ressentir,</i>	to be sensible of,
agree;			to resent;
<i>Pressentir,</i>	to have a fore-		
sight of;			

are conjugated like *Mentir*.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us (coming up) they ran away.  
 voir, v. venir, v.

—— Avoid bad company. —— He does not love your  
 compagnie, f.

sister, because she lies. —— If you forgive me this  
 parceque, c.

time, I never will lie any more.\* —— I cannot believe  
 fois, f. plus pouvoir, v.

him; for he contradicts himself at every instant. —— Tell  
 Dire, v.

me what she has done to you; but above all do not lie.  
 sur, p.

—— If you do not behave better, your mother will  
 se comporter, v.

die with grief. —— Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh  
 de chagrin, m. à

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty. ——  
 Août, m.

Misfortune often seeks those who avoid it, and  
 Malheur, m. chercher, v.

sometimes avoids those who seem to seek it. ——  
 quelquefois, adv. sembler, v.

(Were I) in your place, I would not offer her (any  
 Si j'étois à

money.) —— Why do you not open the door to  
 d'argent Pourquoi, adv. à

your sister? —— Your brother was no sooner arrived  
 fut plutôt, adv.

in London than I offered him my services. —— Your  
 à

actions never belie your words. —— Open the window.

—— I heard you were going to Holland at the  
 beginning of next month. —— I hope you  
 commencement, m. espérer, v.

\* If never be translated, *plus*, meaning *no more*, can not be expressed; if, on the contrary, *plus* be expressed, *jamais* must be omitted; and in both cases the verb is to be preceded by *ne*, but not followed by *pas*.

will never discover what I have told you.—Cover my  
*dire, v.*  
 hat, and put it upon that chair.—I will set out  
*mettre, v.*  
 to-morrow morning at seven (o'clock).—Do not set out  
*heure, f.*  
 without me.—Let us go and\* see Mrs. D.; I have  
 heard she is dying.—Your sister repents much of having  
*se repent de*  
 sold her books.—Gather that pink, it smells  
*œillet, m.*  
 charmingly.—Her mother says she never will consent  
*bon, adv. dit*  
 to it.—If you do not take care, you will  
*prenez, v. garde, f.*  
 repent of your imprudence soon or late.—Let  
*se-repentir tôt, adv. tard, adv.*  
 us die for our country, and our death will be glorious.—  
*patrie, f. glorieux, adj.*  
 Every citizen ought to be disposed to sacrifice himself  
*devroit se*  
 for the public<sup>2</sup> good<sup>1</sup>; it is at this price<sup>2</sup> only<sup>1</sup> that  
*ce, pro. à, p. seul*  
 a man acquires a lawful<sup>2</sup> right<sup>1</sup> to the advantages  
*on légitime, adj. droit, m.*  
 of civil<sup>2</sup> society<sup>1</sup>.—I should die satisfied, if I knew  
*content, adj. savoir, v.*  
 you were happy.—You soon felt the effect of it.  
*(by the subj.) effet, m.*  
 My cousin set out from here yesterday morning at nine  
*ici, adv.*  
 o'clock.—I offer you my house, it is at your service.—  
 You may rely upon her, she will never dis-  
*pouvez, v. compter, v.*  
 cover your secrets.—I will not offer you my horse any  
*more.*  
 He will feel it in his turn, when he will be old.  
*à tour, m. (by the fut.)*

\* The conjunction *and*, and the preposition *to*, coming after the verbs *to go*, *to come*, or *to send*, and being followed by a verb, are not to be translated.

SERVIR, to serve, to help to.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Servir</i> , to serve.
Part. act.	<i>Servant</i> , serving.
Part. past.	<i>Servi</i> , ie, served.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing.	<i>Sers</i> ,	<i>sers</i> ,	<i>sert</i> , I serve, or am serving.
Plur.	<i>Servons</i> ,	<i>servez</i> ,	<i>servent</i> .

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Servois</i> ,	<i>servois</i> ,	<i>servoit</i> , I did serve, or was
Plur.	<i>Servions</i> ,	<i>serviez</i> ,	<i>servoient</i> . serving.

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Servis</i> ,	<i>servis</i> ,	<i>servit</i> , I did serve, or served.
Plur.	<i>Servîmes</i> ,	<i>servîtes</i> ,	<i>servirent</i> .

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Servirai</i> ,	<i>serviras</i> ,	<i>servira</i> , I shall or will serve.
Plur.	<i>Servirons</i> ,	<i>servirez</i> ,	<i>serviront</i> .

*Conditional Present.*

Sing.	<i>Servirois</i> ,	<i>servirois</i> ,	<i>serviroit</i> , I would or should
Plur.	<i>Servirions</i> ,	<i>serviriez</i> ,	<i>serviroient</i> . serve.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Sers</i> ,	<i>serve</i> , serve thou.
Plur.	<i>Servons</i> ,	<i>servez</i> , <i>servent</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Serve</i> ,	<i>serves</i> ,	<i>serve</i> , that I may serve.
Plur.	<i>Servions</i> ,	<i>serviez</i> ,	<i>servent</i> .

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Servisse</i> ,	<i>servisses</i> ,	<i>servît</i> , that I might serve.
Plur.	<i>Servissions</i> ,	<i>servissiez</i> ,	<i>servissent</i> .



The compounds of this verb are,

*Desservir*, to do an ill office ; to clear a table.

*Se servir*, to make use ; to use.

*SORTIR*, to go out, is conjugated like *Mentir*.

*SOUFFRIR*, to suffer, is conjugated like *Offrir*.

*TENIR*, to hold, to keep.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Tenir</i> , to hold.
Part. act.	<i>Tenant</i> , holding,
Part. past.	<i>Tenu</i> , <i>ue</i> , held.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. <i>Tiens</i> ,	<i>tiens</i> ,	<i>tient</i> , I hold, or am holding.
Plur. <i>Tenons</i> ,	<i>tenez</i> ,	<i>tiennent</i> .

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Tenois</i> ,	<i>tenois</i> ,	<i>tenoit</i> , I did hold, or was
Plur. <i>Tenions</i> ,	<i>teniez</i> ,	<i>tenoient</i> . holding.

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Tins</i> ,	<i>tins</i> ,	<i>tint</i> , I held, or did hold.
Plur. <i>Tinmes</i> ,	<i>tintes</i> ,	<i>tinrent</i> .

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Tiendrai</i> ,	<i>tiendras</i> ,	<i>tiendra</i> , I shall or will hold
Plur. <i>Tiendrons</i> ,	<i>tiendrez</i> ,	<i>tiendront</i> .

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Tiendrois</i> ,	<i>tiendrois</i> ,	<i>tiendrait</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Tiendrions</i> ,	<i>tiendriez</i> ,	<i>tiendraient</i> . hold.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Tiens</i> ,	<i>tiens</i> , hold thou.
Plur. <i>Tenons</i> ,	<i>tenez</i> ,	<i>tiennent</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Tienne,</i>	<i>tiennes,</i>	<i>tienne, that I may hold.</i>
Plur.	<i>Tenions,</i>	<i>teniez,</i>	<i>tiennent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Tinsse,</i>	<i>tinsses,</i>	<i>tînt, that I might hold.</i>
Plur.	<i>Tinssions,</i>	<i>tinssiez,</i>	<i>tinssent.</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>S'abstenir,</i> to abstain.	<i>Maintenir,</i> to maintain.
<i>Appartenir,</i> to belong.	<i>Obtenir,</i> to obtain.
<i>Contenir,</i> to contain.	<i>Retenir,</i> to retain, to keep.
<i>Détenir,</i> to detain.	<i>Soutenir,</i> to maintain, to
<i>Entretenir,</i> to keep, to en-	hold, to support.
tertain.	

—*TRESSAILLIR, to start, to leap for.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Tressaillir,</i> to start.
Part. act.	<i>Tressaillant,</i> starting.
Part. past.	<i>Tressailli, ie,</i> started.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing.	<i>Tressaille,</i>	<i>tressailles,</i>	<i>tressaille, I start.</i>
Plur.	<i>Tressaillons,</i>	<i>tressaillez,</i>	<i>tressaillent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Tressaillois,</i>	<i>tressaillois,</i>	<i>tressailloit, I did start.</i>
Plur.	<i>Tressaillions,</i>	<i>tressailliez,</i>	<i>tressailloient.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Tressaillis,</i>	<i>tressaillis,</i>	<i>tressaillit, I started.</i>
Plur.	<i>Tressaillîmes,</i>	<i>tressaillîtes,</i>	<i>tressaillirent.</i>

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Tressaillirai,</i>	<i>tressailliras,</i>	<i>tressaillira, I shall or</i>
Plur.	<i>Tressaillirons,</i>	<i>tressaillirez,</i>	<i>tressailliront. will start.</i>

Conditional Present.

Sing. *Tressaillirois, tressaillirois, tressailliroit*, I should  
or would start.  
Plur. *Tressaillirions, tressailliriez, tressailliroient*.

*Imperative Mood* is wanting.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Tressaille,</i>	<i>tressailles,</i>	<i>tressaille,</i>	that I may
Plur.	<i>Tressaillions,</i>	<i>tressailliez,</i>	<i>tressaillent.</i>	start.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillisse, tressaillisses, tressaillit*, that I might  
Plur. *Tressaillissions, tressaillissiez, tressaillissent.* start.

---

*ASSAILLIR, to assault*, is conjugated as above.

*SAILLIR, to jut, or jet out* (term in architecture), is conjugated like *TRESSAILLIR*, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

*Observation.*—*SAILLIR, to gush out* (speaking of any liquid), is regular, and conjugated like *Punir*.

---

*VENIR, to come,*

And its compounds,

*Convenir, to agree, to be-*  
*come, to fit, to suit;*

*Contrevenir à, to infringe;*

*Devenir, to become;*

*Disconvenir, to disagree;*

*Intervenir, to intervene;*

*Parvenir à, to attain to;*

*Prévenir, to prevent, to*  
*prejudice, to anticipate,*  
*to prepossess;*

*Provenir, to proceed;*

*Revenir, to come back, to*  
*return;*

*Se souvenir, to remember;*

*Se ressouvenir, to recollect;*

*Subvenir, to relieve, to*  
*assist;*

*Survénir, to befall, to hap-*  
*pen unexpectedly, to*  
*come to;*

are conjugated like *Tenir*.

*Observations on DEVENIR, to become; and FAIRE SOUVENIR, to remind.*

This verb, in English, is most generally accompanied by the preposition *of*, governing a noun or pronoun; but it must be observed, that, in French, the preposition is suppressed, and the noun or pronoun becomes nominative to the verb *devenir*. Ex.

*Ne vous informez point de  
ce que je deviendrai,  
Que deviendra votre cousin,  
si son père l'abandonne?*

*Si cela arrivoit, je ne sais ce  
que nous deviendrions;*

Do not inquire about what  
will become *of me*.

What will become *of your*  
*cousin*, if his father for-  
sake him?

Should that happen, I  
know not what would  
become *of us*.

When the verb TO REMIND governs in English a noun or pronoun without the help of a preposition, that verb must be translated by *faire se rappeler de*; and the verb *faire* is put in the same tense, number and person, in which the verb *to remind* is in English. Ex.

*Faites moi me rappeler de  
passer chez votre tante;*

*Oui, je vous ferai vous en  
rappeler;*

Remind me to call upon  
your aunt; that is, *make*  
*me remember to, &c.*

Yes, I will remind you of  
it.

---

### VETIR, to clothe.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle past, *vêtu*, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound *revêtir*, to invest with, to give other clothes, will be given in lieu of it.

### Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Revêtir*, to invest, to give other clothes.  
Part. act. *Revêtant*, investing.  
Part. past. *Revêtu, ue*, invested.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. <i>Revêts,</i>	<i>revêts,</i>	<i>revêt, I invest.</i>
Plur. <i>Revétons,</i>	<i>revêtez,</i>	<i>revêtent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Revétois,</i>	<i>revétois,</i>	<i>revétoit, I did invest.</i>
Plur. <i>Revétions,</i>	<i>revétiez,</i>	<i>revétoient.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Revétis,</i>	<i>revétis,</i>	<i>revétit, I invested, or did</i>
Plur. <i>Revétimes,</i>	<i>revétîtes,</i>	<i>revétirent. invest.</i>

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Revétirai,</i>	<i>revétiras,</i>	<i>revétira, I shall or will in-</i>
Plur. <i>Revétirons,</i>	<i>revétirez,</i>	<i>revétiront. vest.</i>

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Revétirois,</i>	<i>revétirois,</i>	<i>revétiroit, I should or would</i>
Plur. <i>Revétirions,</i>	<i>revétiriez,</i>	<i>revétiroient. invest.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Revêts,</i>	<i>revête, invest thou.</i>
Plur. <i>Revétons,</i>	<i>revêtez,</i>	<i>revêtent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Revête,</i>	<i>revêtes,</i>	<i>revête,</i>	<i>that I may invest.</i>
Plur. <i>Revétions,</i>	<i>revétiez,</i>	<i>revêtent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Revétisse,</i>	<i>revétisses,</i>	<i>revétît, that I might invest.</i>
Plur. <i>Revétissions,</i>	<i>revétissiez,</i>	<i>revétissent.</i>

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. H. does not serve me well.—Shall  
ami, m.

I help you to a little bit of lamb, or a wing  
morceau, m. agneau, m. aile, f.

of that chicken?——We would serve him with all our  
*poulet, m.*

heart, if we could.——I shall go out in half an hour.——

*pouvoir, v.*  
If we go to-day to Richmond, we will make use  
*aujourd'hui, adv.* *se servir*  
of your coach.——My sister went out this morning

*carrosse, m.* *matin, m.*  
at nine o'clock, and is not yet returned.——Nobody

knows what we suffered in our last voyage.——If I  
*savoir, v.* *voyage, m.*

were as ill as you, I would not go out of my  
*malade, adj.*

room.——Why do not you serve your friends,  
*chambre, f.* *Pourquoi, adv.*

since you may do it?——Should they  
*puisque, c.* *pouvoir, v.*

forsake\* you, what would become of you? †——  
*abandonner, v.*

I would make use of your horse, if you (were so kind as to)  
*aviez la bonté de*

lend it to me.——The more we are above  
*au-dessus de, p.*

others, the more it becomes us to be modest and humble.  
*convient*

——My aunt and I came yesterday to see you, but you  
*tante, f.*

were not at home.——I hope that you will keep your

word, and come‡ to-morrow.——I assure you  
*parole, f.* *demain, adv.* *assurer, v.*

that Mr. R.'s father holds the first rank in the town,  
*rang, m.*

but the son will never (attain to) his father's reputation.——  
*obtenir*

Men acquire, by long labours, knowledge which often  
*travail, m.* *lumière, f.*

becomes fatal to them.——I maintain, and will  
*funeste, adj.*

\* Say, if they were to forsake you, S'ILS VOUS ABANDONNOIENT.

† See the observations, page 248.

‡ Say, and that you will come.

always maintain, that you will not be happy without  
*heureux*, adj. *sans*, p.  
 virtue.——We were coming to see you, but you have  
 anticipated all our designs.——She leaped for joy when  
*de*  
 she saw her.——At last she has agreed to pay her an  
*Enfin*, adv. \* *de*  
 annual<sup>2</sup> pension<sup>1</sup> of twenty pounds.——Her mother  
 started up at these words, and became furious.——  
*à*, p. *parole*, f. *furieux*, adj.  
 Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock.——This  
*Vendredi*, m.  
 house will belong to me after her death.——You will  
*après*, p. *mort*, f.  
 obtain leave to go out another time, if you come  
*permission*, f. *de* *fois*, f.  
 back soon.——This box contains all my jewels.——  
*bientôt*, adv. *bijoux*, m. pl.  
 I agree that Miss N. is the prettiest of the family; but she  
 is so proud, that I know not what will become of her.——  
 Who knows whether they will remember it or not?——  
*savoir*, v. *si*, c.  
 They assaulted the town (in the) middle of the night,  
*au milieu*, m.  
 and all their officers, even the general, agree that  
*même*, adv.  
 they have acquired much glory.——Remember that, if you  
 infringe the law, you will incur the punishments  
*contrevénir à* *peine*, f.  
 decreed by the law.——Your illness proceeds from  
*porté*, p. p. *d'une*  
 great heat.——The first time you come to see me, I  
*chaleur*, f. *fois*, f. (by the fut.)  
 will keep you two or three days.——Mr. B. desired  
*retenir* *prier*, v.  
 me to tell you that he will not come back to-day.——  
*de*

\* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses. . . .

When the surgeon had opened his vein, the  
*chirurgien, m. eut la veine, f.*  
 blood gushed out with an extraordinary<sup>2</sup> impetuosity<sup>1</sup>.  
*sang, m.*

—— That poor man will bless you, if you give him  
*bénir, v.*

other clothes.—— He is so prepossessed against me, that  
*contre, p.*

he will not agree he is in the wrong.\*—— We  
*vouloir, v. convenir*

should certainly have come back yesterday, had  
*certainement, adv. hier, adv.*

we had time.†—— You will become a great man, if

you continue to study with the same assiduity.——  
*continuer, v. de assiduité, f.*

He (would have) come to see us last<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup>, if it had  
*seroit semaine, f.*

not rained.—— The first time I go out, remind me  
*plu, p. p. fois, f. (by the fut.)*

to call ‡ on your brother.—— That hat would  
*de passer, v. chez, p.*

suit you very well, if you were a little taller.—— Do not  
*peu*

go out to-day, you will suffer much if you do.——  
*beaucoup, adv. faire, v.*

I should not suffer (so much) if it were fine weather.  
*tant, adv. faisoit, v.*

—— Why do you not abstain from drinking?—— The  
*boire, v.*

king has invested that nobleman with all his authority.  
*revêtir seigneur, m. de*

—— You may set out this morning, but remember  
*pouvoir, v.*

to come back this evening.—— Were I in your place§, I  
*de ce soir, m. à place, f.*

would detain him here a little longer; for, he  
*retenir, v. peu long-tems, adv. car, c.*

always keeps himself (shut up) in his house.—— I  
*tient se enfermé, p. p.*

\* To be in the wrong, *avoir tort*.

† Say, if we had had time for it, *SI NOUS EN AVIONS EU LE TEMPS*.

‡ See the observation on the verb *to remind*, page 248.

§ Turn the sentence thus; If I were in, &c., *Si j'étois à*.



do not think that colour suits your sister.—  
*croire, v.* (by the subj.) *à votre*  
 When will she return from the country? She  
*Quand, adv.*  
 wrote she will come next<sup>2</sup> Saturday<sup>1</sup>, if the weather  
*s'il fait beau*  
 be fine.  
*temps*

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, *to sit down.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Asseoir, to sit down.*  
 Part. act. *Asseyant, sitting down.*  
 Part. past. *Assis, ise, sat down (or seated).*

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. *Assieds, assieds, assied, I sit down.*  
 Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseyent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Asseyois, asseyois, asseyoit, I did sit, or was*  
 Plur. *Asseyions, asseyiez, asseyoient. sitting down.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Assis, assis, assit, I sat down.*  
 Plur. *Assîmes, assîtes, assirent.*

Future.

Sing. *Assicrai, assicras, assiera, I shall or will sit*  
 Plur. *Assicrons, assierez, assieront. down.*

Or, *J'asseierai, tu asseieras, &c.*

Conditional Present.

Sing. *Assiérais, assiérais, assiérait, I should or would*  
 Plur. *Assiériers, assiériez, assiéroient. sit down.*

Or, *J'asseierois, tu asseierois, &c.*

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Assieds,</i>	<i>asseie, sit down.</i>
Plur.	<i>Asseyons,</i>	<i>asseyez, asseient.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Asseie,</i>	<i>asseies,</i>	<i>asseie, that I may sit down.</i>
Plur.	<i>Asseyions,</i>	<i>asseyiez,</i>	<i>asseient.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Assisse,</i>	<i>assisses,</i>	<i>assît, that I might sit down.</i>
Plur.	<i>Assissions,</i>	<i>assissiez,</i>	<i>assissent.</i>

*Asseoir* is most generally conjugated as a reflexive verb, which may easily be done, by the learner adding a double pronoun to the different tenses, and forming the compound ones by the verb *être*, as in *se promener*. Ex.

<i>Je m'assieds,</i>	<i>tu t'assieds,</i>	<i>il s'assied.</i>
<i>Nous nous asseyons,</i>	<i>vous vous asseyez,</i>	<i>ils s'asseient.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

*Assieds-toi, qu'il s'asseie, asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseient.*

*Compound Tenses.*

<i>Je me suis assis,</i>	<i>tu t'es assis, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Nous nous sommes assis,</i>	<i>vous vous êtes assis, &amp;c.</i>

The compound of this verb is,

*Se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

*SÊOIR*, to be seated, is obsolete; however, the participle *séant* is sometimes used, as well as the adjective *séant*, *séante*. Ex. *La cour royale de Paris séant à Versailles.*

*SÊOIR*, to fit well, to become, to fit, is never used in the infinitive, except in the participle active, which is *seyant*. It has the following tenses, but only the third persons singular and plural.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present. *Il sied, ils sièent*, it becomes, they become, &c.  
 Imperfect. *Il séyoit, ils séyoient*, it was becoming, &c.  
 Preterite wanting.  
 Future. *Il siéra, ils siéront*, it or they will become.  
 Cond. Pres. *Il siéroit, ils siéroient*, it or they would be-  
 come.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Pres. *Qu'il siée, qu'ils sièent*, that it may become, &c.  
 The other tenses are never used.

*Surseoir*, to supersede, to put off, a compound of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated:

Part. act. *Sursoyant.*

Part. past. *Sursis, ise.*

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

*Je sursois, &c. nous sursoyons, &c.*

*Imperfect.*

*Je sursoyois, &c. nous sursoyions, &c.*

*Preterite.*

*Je sursis, &c. nous sursîmes, &c.*

*Future.*

*Je surseoirai, &c. nous surseoirons, &c.*

*Conditional Present.*

*Je surseoirois, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.*

*Imperative Mood.*

*Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

*Que je surseoie, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.*

*Imperfect.*

*Que je sursisse, &c. que nous sursissions, &c.*

DÉCHOIR, *to decay, to decline.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Déchoir, to decay.*  
 Part. act. wanting.  
 Part. past. *Déchu, ue, decayed.*

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. *Déchois, décrois, décroît, I decay.*  
 Plur. *Déchoyons, déchoyez, décroient.*

*Imperfect.*

Sing. *Déchoyois, déchoyois, déchoyoit, I decayed.*  
 Plur. *Déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoyoient.*

*Preterite.*

Sing. *Déchus, déchus, déchut, I decayed, or did*  
 Plur. *Déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent. decay.*

*Future.*

Sing. *Décherrai, décherras, décherra, I shall or will de-*  
 Plur. *Décherrons, décherrez, décherront. cay.*

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. *Décherrois, décherrois, décherroit, I should or would*  
 Plur. *Décherrions, décheriez, décherroient. decay.*

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. *Déchoie, qu'il décroie, decay, &c.*  
 Plur. *Déchoyons, déchoyez, qu'ils décroient.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Déchoie, décroies, décroie, that I may decay.*  
 Plur. *Déchoyions, déchoyiez, décroient.*

*Imperfect.*

Sing. *Déchusse, déchusses, déchût, that I might decay.*  
 Plur. *Déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.*

CHOIR, the primitive of the above verb, has only the infinitive and the part. past, *chu, chue.*

**ÉCHOIR**, *to fall out, to change*, is conjugated like *Déchoir*, with this exception, that it is only used in the third persons. Its part. act. is *échéant*.

---

**MOUVOIR**, *to move*.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Mouvoir</i> , to move.
Part. act.	<i>Mouvant</i> , moving.
Part. past.	<i>Mu</i> , <i>ue</i> , moved.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. <i>Meus</i> ,	<i>meus</i> ,	<i>meut</i> , I move.
Plur. <i>Mouvons</i> ,	<i>mouvez</i> ,	<i>meuvent</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Mouvois</i> ,	<i>mouvois</i> ,	<i>mouvoit</i> , I did move.
Plur. <i>Mouvions</i> ,	<i>mouviez</i> ,	<i>mouvoient</i> .

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Mus</i> ,	<i>mus</i> ,	<i>mut</i> , I moved, or did move.
Plur. <i>Mûmes</i> ,	<i>mûtes</i> ,	<i>murent</i> .

Future.

Sing. <i>Mourrai</i> ,	<i>mourras</i> ,	<i>mourra</i> , I shall or will move.
Plur. <i>Mourrons</i> ,	<i>mouvrez</i> ,	<i>mourront</i> .

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Mouvrais</i> ,	<i>mouvrais</i> ,	<i>mouvrait</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Mouvrions</i> ,	<i>mouvriez</i> ,	<i>mouvraient</i> . move.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Meus</i> ,	<i>meuve</i> , move thou.
Plur. <i>Mouvons</i> ,	<i>mouvez</i> ,	<i>meuvent</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Meuve</i> ,	<i>meuves</i> ,	<i>meuve</i> ,	that I may move.
Plur. <i>Mouvions</i> ,	<i>mouvriez</i> ,	<i>meuvent</i> .	

## Imperfect.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Musse,</i>	<i>musses,</i>	<i>mût,</i>	that I might move.
Plur.	<i>Mussions,</i>	<i>mussiez,</i>	<i>mussent.</i>	

The compound of this verb is,

*Emouvoir*, to stir up; to move.

**POUVOIR**, to be able, to have in one's power.

## Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able.
Part. act.	<i>Pouvant</i> , being able.
Part. past.	<i>Pu</i> , been able.

## Indicative Mood.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Puis</i> or <i>peux</i> , <i>peux</i> ,	<i>peut</i> ,	I am able, I can or
Plur.	<i>Pouvons</i> ,	<i>pouvez</i> ,	<i>peuvent</i> . may.

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Pouvois</i> ,	<i>pouvois</i> ,	<i>pouvoit</i> ,	I was able, or I
Plur.	<i>Pouvions</i> ,	<i>pouviez</i> ,	<i>pouvoient</i> .	could.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Pus</i> ,	<i>pus</i> ,	<i>put</i> ,	I was able, or I could.
Plur.	<i>Pûmes</i> ,	<i>pûtes</i> ,	<i>purent</i> .	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Pourrai</i> ,	<i>pourras</i> ,	<i>pourra</i> ,	I shall or will be
Plur.	<i>Pourrons</i> ,	<i>pourrez</i> ,	<i>pourront</i> .	able.

## Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Pourrois</i> ,	<i>pourrois</i> ,	<i>pourroit</i> ,	I should be able.
Plur.	<i>Pourrions</i> ,	<i>pourriez</i> ,	<i>pourroient</i> .	

## Imperative Mood wanting.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Puisse</i> ,	<i>puisses</i> ,	<i>puisse</i> ,	that I may be able,
Plur.	<i>Puissions</i> ,	<i>puissiez</i> ,	<i>puissent</i> .	or I may.

Imperfect.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Pusse,</i>	<i>pusses,</i>	<i>pût,</i>	that I might be able, or
Plur.	<i>Pussions,</i>	<i>pussiez,</i>	<i>pussent.</i>	I might.

RULE 10.—1. When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb. Ex.

<i>Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval, s'il vous en faut un;</i>	<i>I can sell you a good horse, if you want one.</i>
<i>Vous pouvez aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures;</i>	<i>You may go to the ball, but come back at ten o'clock.</i>

2. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive. Ex.

<i>Puissiez-vous être heureux !</i>	<i>May you be happy !</i>
-------------------------------------	---------------------------

3. *Could* is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite definite, or indefinite, or conditional present : and *might* by the last tense. Ex.

<i>Je ne pouvois pas mieux faire,</i>	<i>I could do no better.</i>
<i>Il ne put pas venir avec nous la semaine passée,</i>	<i>He could not come with us last week.</i>
<i>Vous pourriez vous tromper aussi bien que lui,</i>	<i>You might mistake as well as he.</i>

4. *Could* or *might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle past, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood. Ex.

<i>J'aurois pu vous le dire hier au soir,</i>	<i>I could have told it to you last night.</i>
<i>Vous auriez pu le faire en trois jours,</i>	<i>You might have done it in three days.</i>

SAVOIR, to know something.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>Savoir,</i> to know.
Part. act.	<i>Sachant,</i> knowing.
Part. past.	<i>Su, ue,</i> known.





VALOIR, to be worth.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Valoir</i> , to be worth.
Part. act.	<i>Valant</i> , being worth.
Part. past.	<i>Valu</i> , been worth.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vaux</i> ,	<i>vaut</i> , I am worth.
Plur.	<i>Valons</i> ,	<i>valez</i> , <i>valent</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Valois</i> ,	<i>valois</i> , <i>valoit</i> , I was worth.
Plur.	<i>Valions</i> ,	<i>valiez</i> , <i>valoient</i> .

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Valus</i> ,	<i>valus</i> , <i>valut</i> , I was worth.
Plur.	<i>Valûmes</i> ,	<i>valûtes</i> , <i>valurent</i> .

Future.

Sing.	<i>Vaudrai</i> ,	<i>vaudras</i> , <i>vaudra</i> , I shall or will be
Plur.	<i>Vaudrons</i> ,	<i>vaudrez</i> , <i>vaudront</i> . worth.

Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Vaudrois</i> ,	<i>vaudrois</i> , <i>vaudroit</i> , I should or would
Plur.	<i>Vaudrions</i> ,	<i>vaudriez</i> , <i>vaudroient</i> . be worth.

The *Imperative Mood* is wanting.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Vaille</i> ,	<i>vailles</i> ,	<i>vaille</i> , that I may be worth.
Plur.	<i>Valions</i> ,	<i>valiez</i> ,	<i>vailent</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Valusse</i> ,	<i>valusses</i> ,	<i>valût</i> , that I might be worth.
Plur.	<i>Valussions</i> ,	<i>valussiez</i> ,	<i>valussent</i> .

The compound of this verb is,

*Prévaloir*, to prevail, which is conjugated as *Valoir*; but we say much better in the present tense of the subjunctive,

*Que je préval-e, es, e; ions, iez, ent.*

VOIR, to see.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Voir</i> , to see.
Part. act.	<i>Voyant</i> , seeing.
Part. past.	<i>Vu</i> , <i>ue</i> , seen.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. <i>Vois</i> ,	<i>vois</i> ,	<i>voit</i> , I see.
Plur. <i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Voyois</i> ,	<i>voyois</i> ,	<i>voyoit</i> , I did see.
Plur. <i>Voyions</i> ,	<i>voyiez</i> ,	<i>voyoient</i> .

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Vis</i> ,	<i>vis</i> ,	<i>vit</i> , I saw, or did see.
Plur. <i>Vîmes</i> ,	<i>vîtes</i> ,	<i>virent</i> .

Future.

Sing. <i>Verrai</i> ,	<i>verras</i> ,	<i>verra</i> , I shall or will see.
Plur. <i>Verrons</i> ,	<i>verrez</i> ,	<i>verront</i> .

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Verrois</i> ,	<i>verrois</i> ,	<i>verroit</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Verrions</i> ,	<i>verriez</i> ,	<i>verroient</i> . see.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> ,	<i>voie</i> , see thou.
Plur. <i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present.

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Voie</i> ,	<i>voies</i> ,	<i>voie</i> , that I may see.
Plur. <i>Voyions</i> ,	<i>voyiez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> .

Imperfect.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Visse,</i>	<i>visses,</i>	<i>vît, that I might see.</i>
Plur.	<i>Vissions,</i>	<i>vissiez,</i>	<i>vissent.</i>

*Entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of.      *Prévoir*, to foresee.  
*Revoir*, to see again.      *Pourvoir*, to provide.

PREVOIR differs from *voir* in the future. Ex.

Sing.	<i>Prévoirai,</i>	<i>prévoiras,</i>	<i>prévoira.</i>	
Plur.	<i>Prévoirons,</i>	<i>prévoirez,</i>	<i>prévoiront;</i>	And,

Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Prévoirois,</i>	<i>prévoirois</i>	<i>prévoiroit.</i>
Plur.	<i>Prévoirions,</i>	<i>prévoiriez,</i>	<i>prévoiroient.</i>

POURVOIR makes in the preterite,

Sing.	<i>Pourvus,</i>	<i>pourvus,</i>	<i>pourvut.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvûmes,</i>	<i>pourvûtes,</i>	<i>pourvurent.</i>

Future.

Sing.	<i>Pourvoirai,</i>	<i>pourvoiras,</i>	<i>pourvoira.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvoirons,</i>	<i>pourvoirez,</i>	<i>pourvoiront.</i>

Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Pourvoirois,</i>	<i>pourvoirois,</i>	<i>pourvoiroit.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvoirions,</i>	<i>pourvoiriez,</i>	<i>pourvoiroient.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Pourvusse,</i>	<i>pourvusses,</i>	<i>pourvût.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvussions,</i>	<i>pourvussiez,</i>	<i>pourvussent.</i>

VOULOIR, to be willing.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>Vouloir</i> , to be willing.
Part. act.	<i>Voulant</i> , being willing.
Part. past.	<i>Voulu</i> , <i>ue</i> , been willing.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Veux,</i>	<i>veux,</i>	<i>veut</i> , I am willing, or I will.
Plur.	<i>Voulons</i>	<i>voulez</i>	<i>veulent.</i>

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Voulois,</i>	<i>voulois,</i>	<i>vouloit,</i>	I was willing, or I
Plur. <i>Voulions,</i>	<i>vouliez,</i>	<i>vouloient.</i>	would.

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Voulus,</i>	<i>voulus,</i>	<i>voulut,</i>	I was willing, or I
Plur. <i>Voulûmes,</i>	<i>voulûtes,</i>	<i>voulurent.</i>	would.

## Future.

Sing. <i>Voudrai,</i>	<i>voudras,</i>	<i>voudra,</i>	I shall be willing, or
Plur. <i>Voudrons,</i>	<i>voudrez,</i>	<i>voudront.</i>	I will.

## Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Voudrois,</i>	<i>voudrois,</i>	<i>voudroit,</i>	I should be will-
Plur. <i>Voudrions,</i>	<i>voudriez,</i>	<i>voudroient.</i>	ing, or I would.

## Imperative Mood.\*

## Plural.

*Veillez,* be ye willing ; be so kind as.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## Present.

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Veuille,</i>	<i>veilles,</i>	<i>veuille,</i>	that I may be will-
Plur. <i>Voulions,</i>	<i>vouliez,</i>	<i>veussent.</i>	ing.

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Voulusse,</i>	<i>voulusses,</i>	<i>voulût,</i>	that I might be will-
Plur. <i>Voulussions,</i>	<i>voulussiez,</i>	<i>voulussent.</i>	ing.

RULE 11.—1. When the words *will* or *would* signify a will, choice, or deliberation in the agent, and can be expressed by *choose* or *chosc*, WILL is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future, of this verb. Ex.

<i>Je veux y aller, et lui parler moi-même,</i>	I will, or choose to, go there, and speak to him myself ;
<i>Il ne veut pas manger,</i>	He will not eat, or does not choose to eat ;
<i>Je le ferai quand je voudrai,</i>	I will do it when I please ;

\* We give to this verb the second person plural of the imperative on the authority of most excellent writers.

2. And *would* is to be rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite, definite or indefinite, or conditional present. Ex.

*Si je voulais, je vous dirois  
où elle demeure,  
Il voulut absolument partir  
hier,*

If I *would*, or *chose*, I could  
tell you where she lives.  
He *would* absolutely, or  
absolutely *chose*, to set  
out yesterday.

*Que voudriez-vous que je  
fisse ?*

What *would* you have me  
do ?

3. When *would* is joined to the verb *to have* immediately followed by a participle past, they are to be rendered by the preterpluperfect or conditional past of the above verb *vouloir* with the participle past turned into the present of the infinitive mood. Ex.

*Si j'avois voulu lui parler,  
  
Vous n'auriez pas voulu  
prendre les armes, si, &c.  
Nous aurions pu l'arrêter,  
si nous eussions voulu,*

If I *would have* spoken to  
him, or *had I chosen* to  
speak to him.  
You *would not have* taken  
up arms, if, &c.  
We could have stopped  
him, if we *would*, or *had*  
*chosen*.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR  
COMPOUNDS.

Why do not you sit down, sir?—You  
*Pourquoi*, adv.  
come to see me very seldom.—Let us sit down upon  
*rarement*, adv.  
the grass.—Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot.  
*herbe*, f. *faire*, v. *tant*, adv.  
learn my lesson.—Do you know what has  
*apprendre*, v. *est*  
happened to her? No, I do not.\*—As soon as *he*  
*arriver*, v. *Aussitôt que*, c.  
saw he could not make her hear reason, he went  
*entendre*, v. *s'en*  
away.—We went there ourselves, and soon  
*aller*, v. *nous-mêmes* *bientôt*, adv.  
knew what she asked.—See the letter she wrote me.  
*écrire*, v.

\* See the observation, p. 184.



me? \*——What will you lay <sup>parier, v.</sup> that he will not come  
 without his sister?——This room can contain about  
 a hundred people.——Could they see so great an altera-  
 tion <sup>personne, f.</sup> without being vexed <sup>environ, p.</sup> (at it)?——It  
<sup>ment, m. sans, p.</sup> <sup>fâché, p. p.</sup> <sup>en, pro.</sup> (is better) to be unfortunate than criminal.——  
<sup>valoir mieux</sup> <sup>malheureux, adj.</sup>  
 He is incapable of commanding others, who cannot  
 command himself.†——His best coat was not  
<sup>se commander à lui même</sup> <sup>habit, m.</sup>  
 worth two-pence when he arrived from Germany.——  
<sup>sou, m.</sup> <sup>Allemagne, f.</sup>  
 We saw them yesterday.——They did not foresee what  
<sup>hier, adv.</sup>  
 would happen to them.——We ought to make a  
<sup>arriver, v.</sup> <sup>devoir, v.</sup> <sup>faire, v.</sup>  
 judicious choice (of those) friends, to whom we  
<sup>judicieux, adj.</sup> <sup>choix, m.</sup> <sup>des</sup>  
 intend to give our confidence.——Do you know  
<sup>vouloir, v.</sup> <sup>confiance, f.</sup>  
 where Miss B. lives? Yes, I do (know it), and I see  
<sup>où, adv.</sup> <sup>demeurer, v.</sup>  
 her (every day) at her window.——Why will you not  
<sup>tous les jours</sup> <sup>fenêtre, f.</sup>  
 tell it me?——She would marry him in spite of  
<sup>voulut épouser, v.</sup> <sup>en, p.</sup> <sup>dépit, m.</sup>  
 all her relations.——It is for this reason her father  
<sup>parent, m.</sup> <sup>Ce, pro.</sup>  
 says he will never see her again.——I have spoken of  
<sup>dire, v.</sup>  
 your wine to two friends of mine: one has money, but he  
 will not buy; the other would buy, but he has no  
<sup>veut</sup> <sup>voudroit</sup>  
 money.——Some told me that your brother could not  
 pay me, others told me that he would not.——We regu-

\* Read the note on *vouloir* and *pouvoir*, p. 266.

† Say, that is incapable to command to others, who cannot command to himself; CELUI-LÀ EST, &c.

larly pay all that we owe, but he says that he will pay nobody.——All the finest talents united are not worth one virtue.——Virtue is a quality which we cannot praise (too much).——Severity and rigour may excite fear, but not love.——You saw with what goodness she received him.——I would not tell her what I think about it, for fear of giving her the least subject of complaint.——If you foresee the danger, why do you not endeavour to avoid it?——They were willing to withdraw, but your brother hindered them from it, and desired them to sit down again.——You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you please, but I may not take that liberty.——Why may you not?——You know the esteem and friendship that I have for him: you know that his father is one of my oldest friends; you know yourself the merit of both.——He would not sell me these buckles under four guineas.——I will not see your brother (any more), but I will see you again as soon as I can.——Every body thinks that, if they would have pursued the enemy briskly, they might have ended the war on that day.——Should we see ourselves reduced to so great

*réunir, v.*  
*on, pro.*  
*louer, v. trop, adv.* *Sévérité, f.* *rigueur, f.*  
*crainte, f.* *amour, m.* *bonté, f.*  
*recevoir, v.*  
*de, p.*  
*plainte, f.*  
*tâcher, v.* *de éviter, v.* *se retirer, v.*  
*empêcher, v.* *en* *prier, v.*  
*de* *parler, v.*  
*quand, adv.* *vouloir, v.* *prendre, v.*  
*savoir*  
*estime, f.*  
*ancien, adj.*  
*connoître,*  
*vendre, v.* *boucle, f.* *à moins de, p.*  
*plus, adv.*  
*(by the fut.)*  
*poursuivre, v.*  
*vigourement, adv.* *finir, v.*  
*réduire, v.*



difficulties? \*——If (I would have) believed him, he  
*j'avois voulu croire, v.*  
 would have persuaded me to go to Italy with him.——  
*de*  
 He could have done his work in less than ten mi-  
*auroit pu faire, v. en, p. de*  
 nutes, if he had not amused himself in reading.——  
*étoit s'amuser, v. à lire, v.*  
 If you want that book, you may take it, it is at  
*avoir besoin de à*  
 your service.——If he sold all his horses now, the  
*vendoit*  
 best of them would not be worth ten guineas.——We  
*en en*  
 might have danced till † (twelve o'clock) if that  
*jusqu' à, p. minuit, m.*  
 had not happened.——Oh! my children, may you be  
 happy, ‡ and never bewail the moment of your  
*heureux, adj. pleurer, v.*  
 birth!——I spoke to her (a long while), but could not  
*naissance, f. long-tems, adv.*  
 persuade her to come with me.——May I go and see  
*de*  
 him? Yes, you may, but come back as soon as  
*le pouvez aussitôt que, c.*  
 you can.  
*le (by the fut.)*

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ABSOUUDRE, *to absolve, to acquit.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Absoudre, to absolve.*  
 Part. act. *Absolvant, absolving.*  
 Part. past. *Absous, oute, absolved.*

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. *Absous, absous, absout, I absolve.*  
 Plur. *Absolvons, absolvez, absolvent.*

\* See the observation on *should*, page 198.

† See *Rule 10*, part 4, page 259.

‡ See *Rule 10*, part 2, page 259.

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Absolvois,</i>	<i>absolvois,</i>	<i>absolvoit,</i>	I did absolve.
Plur.	<i>Absolvions,</i>	<i>absolviez,</i>	<i>absolvoient.</i>	

Preterite is wanting.

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Absoudrai,</i>	<i>absoudras,</i>	<i>absoudra,</i>	I shall or will
Plur.	<i>Absoudrons,</i>	<i>absoudrez,</i>	<i>absoudront.</i>	absolve.

## Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Absoudrois,</i>	<i>absoudrois,</i>	<i>absoudroit,</i>	I should, &c.
Plur.	<i>Absoudrions,</i>	<i>absoudriez,</i>	<i>absoudroient.</i>	absolve.

## Imperative Mood.

Sing.	<del>absolve</del>	<i>Absous,</i>	<i>absolve,</i>	absolve thou.
Plur.	<i>Absolvons,</i>	<i>absolvez,</i>	<i>absolvent.</i>	

## Subjunctive Mood.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Absolve,</i>	<i>absolves,</i>	<i>absolve,</i>	that I may absolve.
Plur.	<i>Absolvions,</i>	<i>absolviez,</i>	<i>absolvent.</i>	

Imperfect is wanting.

**Soudre**, to solve (the primitive of this verb) is used only in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

*Dissoudre*, to dissolve.      *Résoudre*, to resolve.

*Dissoudre* has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*. *Résoudre* has its participle past, *résolu*, *résolue*, when it means determined, and *résous*, when it denotes the transition of one thing into another. Ex.

*Le soleil a résous le brouillard,*      The sun has turned the fog  
*en pluie,*      into rain.

*Résous* admits of no feminine.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Résolus,</i>	<i>résolus,</i>	<i>résolut.</i>
Plur.	<i>Résolûmes,</i>	<i>résolûtes,</i>	<i>résolurent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Résolusse,</i>	<i>résolusses,</i>	<i>résolút.</i>
Plur. <i>Résolussions,</i>	<i>résolussiez,</i>	<i>résolussent.</i>

ASTREINDRE, *to oblige;*

ATTEINDRE, *to reach, to hit, to attain, to overtake, and*

AVEINDRE, *to reach, to fetch out,*

*are conjugated like CRAINDRE.*

ASTREINDRE and AVEINDRE are nearly obsolete.

BATTRE, *to beat.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Battre, to beat.*

Part act. *Battant, beating.*

Part past. *Battu, ue, beaten.*

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. <i>Bats,</i>	<i>bats,</i>	<i>bat, I beat, or am beating.</i>
Plur. <i>Battons,</i>	<i>battez,</i>	<i>battent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Battois,</i>	<i>battois,</i>	<i>battoit, I did beat, or was</i>
Plur. <i>Battions,</i>	<i>battiez,</i>	<i>battoient. beating.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Battis,</i>	<i>battis,</i>	<i>battit, I beat, or did beat.</i>
Plur. <i>Battîmes,</i>	<i>battîtes,</i>	<i>battirent.</i>

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Battrai,</i>	<i>battras,</i>	<i>battrà, I shall or will beat.</i>
Plur. <i>Battrons,</i>	<i>battrez,</i>	<i>battront.</i>

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Battrois,</i>	<i>battrois,</i>	<i>battroit, I should, &amp;c. beat.</i>
Plur. <i>Battrions,</i>	<i>battriez,</i>	<i>battroient.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Bats,</i>	<i>batte, beat thou.</i>
Plur. <i>Battons,</i>	<i>battez,</i>	<i>battent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Batte,</i>	<i>battes,</i>	<i>batte,</i>	that I may beat.
Plur. <i>Battions,</i>	<i>battiez,</i>	<i>battent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Battisse,</i>	<i>battisses,</i>	<i>batût, that I might beat.</i>
Plur. <i>Battissions,</i>	<i>battissiez,</i>	<i>battissent.</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Abattre,</i> to pull down, to throw down.	<i>Se débattre,</i> to struggle.
<i>Combattre,</i> to fight.	<i>Rabattre,</i> to abate, to beat down.
<i>Débattre,</i> to debate.	<i>Rebattre,</i> to beat again.

*BOIRE, to drink.**Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Boire,</i> to drink.
Part. act.	<i>Buvant,</i> drinking.
Part. past.	<i>Bu, ue,</i> drunk.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing. <i>Bois,</i>	<i>bois,</i>	<i>boit, I drink, or am drinking.</i>
Plur. <i>Buvons,</i>	<i>buvez,</i>	<i>boivent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Buvis,</i>	<i>buvis,</i>	<i>buvoit, I did drink, or was</i>
Plur. <i>Buvions,</i>	<i>buviez,</i>	<i>buvoient. drinking.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Bus,</i>	<i>bus,</i>	<i>but, I drank, or did drink.</i>
Plur. <i>Bûmes,</i>	<i>bûtes,</i>	<i>burent.</i>

Future.

Sing. <i>Boirai,</i>	<i>boiras,</i>	<i>boira,</i> I shall or will drink.
Plur. <i>Boirons,</i>	<i>boirez,</i>	<i>boiront.</i>

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Boirois,</i>	<i>boirois,</i>	<i>boiroit,</i> I should, &c. drink.
Plur. <i>Boirions,</i>	<i>boiriez,</i>	<i>boiroient.</i>

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	<i>Bois,</i>	<i>boive,</i> drink thou.
Plur. <i>Buvons,</i>	<i>buvez,</i>	<i>boivent.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Boive,</i>	<i>boives,</i>	<i>boive,</i>	that I may drink.
Plur. <i>Buvions,</i>	<i>buvez,</i>	<i>boivent.</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Busse,</i>	<i>busses,</i>	<i>bût,</i> that I might drink.
Plur. <i>Bussions,</i>	<i>bussiez,</i>	<i>bussent.</i>

*Boire dans quelque chose* is, To drink out of something.

*Imboire*, to imbibe; we have preserved only its participle *imbu*.

BRAIRE, to bray.

This verb is seldom used, except in the present tense of the infinitive mood, and the third person singular and plural of the present, future, and conditional, of the indicative mood.

Infinitive, *Braire*, to bray.—Present, indicative, *Il brait, ils braient*.—Future, *Il braira, ils brairont*.—Conditional, *Il brairoit, ils brairoient*.—This verb expresses the braying of an ass.

BRUIRE, to roar, to make a great noise.

This verb is used only in the present of the infinitive mood, and in the third persons of the imperfect of the in-

dicative : *il bruyoit, ils bruyoient*. Its participle active, *bruyant*, is more commonly used as an adjective.

---

CEINDRE, *to gird*, and its compound, ENCEINDRE, *to enclose, to encompass*, are conjugated like CRAINDRE.

---

CIRCONCIRE, *to circumcise*, is conjugated like CONFIRE, but has its participle past ending in *is, ise*, instead of *it*.

---

CONCLURE, *to conclude*.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Conclure, to conclude.*

Part. act. *Concluant, concluding.*

Part. past. *Conclu, ue, concluded.*

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut, I conclude.*

Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent.*

*Imperfect.*

Sing. *Concluois, concluois, concluoit, I did conclude.*

Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluoient.*

*Preterite.*

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut, I did conclude, or*

Plur. *Conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent. concluded.*

*Future.*

Sing. *Conclurai, concluras, conclura, I shall or will*

Plur. *Conclurons, conclurez, concluront. conclude.*

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. *Conclurois, conclurois, concluroit, I should, &c.*

Plur. *Conclurions, concluriez, concluroient. conclude.*

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. *Conclus, conclue, conclude thou.*  
 Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Conclue, conclues, conclue, that I may conclude.*  
 Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluent.*

*Imperfect.*

Sing. *Conclusse, conclusses, conclût, that I might con-*  
 Plur. *Conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent. clude.*

CONDUIRE, *to conduct, to lead, to carry.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Conduire, to conduct.*  
 Part. act. *Conduisant, conducting.*  
 Part. past. *Conduit, te, conducted.*

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. *Conduis, conduis, conduit, I lead, &c.*  
 Plur. *Conduisons, conduisez, conduisent.*

*Imperfect.*

Sing. *Conduisois, conduisois, conduisoit, I did lead.*  
 Plur. *Conduisions, conduisiez, conduisoient.*

*Preterite.*

Sing. *Conduisis, conduisis, conduisit, I led.*  
 Plur. *Conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent.*

*Future.*

Sing. *Conduirai, conduiras, conduira, I shall or will lead.*  
 Plur. *Conduirons, conduirez, conduiront.*

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. *Conduirois, conduirois, conduiroit, I should, &c. lead.*  
 Plur. *Conduirions, conduiriez, conduiroient.*

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Conduis,</i>	<i>conduise, lead thou.</i>
Plur.	<i>Conduisons,</i>	<i>conduisez, conduisent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Conduise,</i>	<i>conduises,</i>	<i>conduise, that I may lead.</i>
Plur.	<i>Conduisions,</i>	<i>conduisiez,</i>	<i>conduisent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Conduisisse,</i>	<i>conduisisses,</i>	<i>conduisît, that I might</i>
Plur.	<i>Conduissions,</i>	<i>conduisissiez,</i>	<i>conduisissent. lead.</i>

Its compound is

*Reconduire, to lead again.*

CONFIRE, *to preserve.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Confire, to preserve.</i>
Part. act.	<i>Confisant, preserving.</i>
Part. past.	<i>Confit, te, preserved.</i>

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing.	<i>Confis,</i>	<i>confis,</i>	<i>confit, I preserve.</i>
Plur.	<i>Confisons,</i>	<i>confisez,</i>	<i>confisent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Confisois,</i>	<i>confisois,</i>	<i>confisoit, I did preserve.</i>
Plur.	<i>Confisions,</i>	<i>confisiez,</i>	<i>confisoient.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Confis,</i>	<i>confis,</i>	<i>confit, I preserved.</i>
Plur.	<i>Confimes,</i>	<i>confîtes,</i>	<i>confirent.</i>

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Confirai,</i>	<i>confiras,</i>	<i>confira, I shall or will</i>
Plur.	<i>Confirons,</i>	<i>confirez,</i>	<i>confiront. preserve.</i>



Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Confirois,</i>	<i>confirois,</i>	<i>confiroit,</i>	I should, &c.
Plur.	<i>Confirions,</i>	<i>confiriez,</i>	<i>confiroient.</i>	preserve.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.		<i>Confis,</i>	<i>confise,</i>	preserve thou.
Plur.	<i>Confisons,</i>	<i>confisez,</i>	<i>confisent.</i>	

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Confise,</i>	<i>confises,</i>	<i>confise,</i>	that I may pre-
Plur.	<i>Confissions,</i>	<i>confisiez,</i>	<i>confisent.</i>	serve.

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Confisse,</i>	<i>confisses,</i>	<i>confît,</i>	that I might pre-
Plur.	<i>Confissions,</i>	<i>confissiez,</i>	<i>confissent.</i>	serve.

---

CONNOÎTRE, to know, to be acquainted with, somebody-

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>Connoître,</i>	to know.
Part. act.	<i>Connoissant,</i>	knowing.
Part. past.	<i>Connu, ue,</i>	known.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Connois,</i>	<i>connois,</i>	<i>connoît,</i>	I know.
Plur.	<i>Connoissons,</i>	<i>connoissez,</i>	<i>connoissent.</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Connoissois,</i>	<i>connoissois,</i>	<i>connoissoit,</i>	I did know.
Plur.	<i>Connoissions,</i>	<i>connoissiez,</i>	<i>connoissoient.</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Connus,</i>	<i>connus,</i>	<i>connut,</i>	I knew.
Plur.	<i>Connûmes,</i>	<i>connûtes,</i>	<i>connurent.</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Connoîtrai,</i>	<i>connoîtras,</i>	<i>connoîtra,</i>	I shall, &c. know
Plur.	<i>Connoîtrons,</i>	<i>connoîtrez,</i>	<i>connoîtront.</i>	

## Conditional Present.

Sing. *Connoîttois, connoîttois, connoîttoit, I should, &c.*  
 Plur. *Connoîtrions, connoîtriez, connoîtroient. know.*

## Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Connois, connoisse, know thou.*  
 Plur. *Connoissons, connoissez, connoissent.*

## Subjunctive Mood.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Connoisse, connoisses, connoisse, that I may*  
 Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissent. know.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Connusse, connusses, connût, that I might know.*  
 Plur. *Connussions, connussiez, connussent.*

The compounds of this verb are,

*Méconnoître, to take for another. Reconnoître, to acknowledge, to know again.*

CONSTRUIRE, *to construct, to build*, is conjugated like  
 CONDUIRE.

CONTRAINdre, *to constrain, to compel, to force*, is  
 conjugated like CRAINDRE.

COUDRE, *to sew, to stitch.*

## Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Coudre, to sew.*  
 Part. act. *Cousant, sewing.*  
 Part. past. *Cousu, ue, sewed.*

## Indicative Mood.

## Present.

*couds, coud, I sew, or am sewing.*  
 Plur. *cousez, cousent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Cousois,</i>	<i>cousois,</i>	<i>cousoit,</i> I did sew, or was
Plur. <i>Cousions,</i>	<i>cousiez,</i>	<i>cousoient.</i> sewing.

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Cousis,</i>	<i>cousis,</i>	<i>cousit,</i> I sewed.
Plur. <i>Cousîmes,</i>	<i>cousîtes,</i>	<i>cousirent.</i>

Future.

Sing. <i>Coudrai,</i>	<i>coudras,</i>	<i>coudra,</i> I shall or will sew.
Plur. <i>Coudrons,</i>	<i>coudrez,</i>	<i>coudront.</i>

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Coudrois,</i>	<i>coudrois,</i>	<i>coudroit,</i> I should, &c. sew.
Plur. <i>Coudrions,</i>	<i>coudriez,</i>	<i>coudroient.</i>

Imperative Mood.

Sing. <i>Couds,</i>	<i>couse,</i> sew thou.
Plur. <i>Cousons,</i>	<i>cousez,</i> <i>cousent.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Couse,</i>	<i>couses,</i>	<i>couse,</i> that I may sew.
Plur. <i>Cousions,</i>	<i>cousiez,</i>	<i>cousent.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Cousisse,</i>	<i>cousisses,</i>	<i>cousît,</i> that I might sew.
Plur. <i>Cousissions,</i>	<i>cousissiez,</i>	<i>cousissent.</i>

Its compounds are,

*Découdre,* to unsew.

*Recoudre,* to sew again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

I know \* several persons in this country who  
*plusieurs,* adj. *pays,* m.  
 speak as good French, as if they had been (brought up)  
*bien,* adv. *élevé,* p. p.

\* Speaking of persons, the verb to know can never be translated by *savoir*, but by *connoître*.

in France.—Do you know Mr. A.?—Yes, we  
*Oui, adv.*  
 know him very well; and though he is rich, I assure you  
 he is not the more charitable for it.—He has been beaten  
 (soundly).—If you knew the question, you would re-  
*comme il faut.* *connoître question, f.*  
 solve it in two words.—I will soon conclude, if you  
*mot, m.*  
 think as your brother does.—We should beat them, if  
*comme, adv.*  
 they did not fight in their own country.—Do  
*propre, adj.*  
 not beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault.—  
*faute, f.*  
 We ran for above two hours, but at last  
*pendant, p. plus de, adv.* *enfin, adv.*  
 your brother overtook him, and brought him back.—  
*ramener,*  
 You would never see him again, if you knew him.—  
 He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged to  
*tems, m.*  
 (cry for) mercy.—This mortification has pulled  
*de demander, v. grâce, f.*  
 down his pride, I assure you: however, the judge  
*cependant, adv.*  
 has acquitted him of the accusation falsely  
*faussement, adv.*  
 brought against him.—Mr. R. told me some time  
*intenté, p. p. contre, p.*  
 ago, that he would build a ship on a new plan.—What  
*construire*  
 will you drink?—I will drink nothing but water.—Do  
*ne que*  
 not drink (so much).—If your father were here, you  
*tant, adv.* *étoit*  
 would not drink (at all).—Let us fill our glasses, and  
*du tout.* *verre, m.*  
 drink our friend's health.—We beat them because our  
*santé, f.* *parceque, c.*  
 troops were better disciplined than theirs.—  
*discipliné, p. p.*

Come with us, we shall see whether she will know you again or not.\*—If you knew her, I am certain she would please you.—The English drink as much *plaire, v.* tea as the Venetians drink coffee.—After tea we *autant, adv.* *thé, m.* *Vénétien, m.* *café, m.* conducted the ladies to the concert.—When they had explained to us all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the wrong).—Your brother's *se passer, v.* coat was torn; but our tailor sewed it up again *avoir tort.* *déchirer,* *tailleur, m.* so skilfully, that his father did not perceive *adroitement, adv.* *s'apercevoir* it.—Unsew that gown.—I will sew it to-morrow. *en.* —The Jews and the Mahometans circumcise their children (a few) days after their birth.—Why do not you preserve some fruits this year?—He would not know you if he saw you now.—Did you ask him whether he (was acquainted with) any of these ladies?—*Juif, m.* *Mahométan, m.* *peu, adv. de* *naissance, f.* *année, f.* *à présent, adv.* *lui, si, c.* *connoître* I know Mr. Y., but I do not trust to him.—You will force your father to punish you, if you do not behave *se fier, v.* better.—The last time we went to Vauxhall, we drank *à* *se comporter, v.* three bottles of (Champaign wine).—The enemy beat us on the eighteenth, but we beat them two days after.—*vin de Champagne.* What will you drink, ladies?—We shall willingly *madame, f.* *volontiers, adv.*

\* When the verb is understood after *not*, this negation is to be rendered by *non*.

drink some wine; for we have not drunk any since  
 our departure from France.—Drink, said she to me,  
*départ, m.*

(out of) that cup, the only token which  
*à coupe, f. seul, adj. marque, f.*  
 your father has left us of his love.—Virtue  
*laissée, v. affection, f.*

in indigence is like a traveller whom the wind  
*dans, p. comme*

and rain compel to wrap himself up in his cloak.—  
*pluie, f. de envelopper, v. de manteau, m.*

I would have preserved some fruits this year, but sugar is

too dear.—Thence we concluded you would  
*trop, adv. De là, adv.*

not come to-day.—I know nobody in this neighbourhood.  
*voisinage, m.*

—I knew your sister again as soon as I saw her.—

Though you (should take) three dozen of them, I  
*Quand, c. prendriez douzaine, f.*  
 could not abate a farthing.—The wind was so great, that  
*pourrois liard, m. vent, m. fort,*  
 it threw down one or two trees in our garden.

CRAINdre, to fear, to be afraid.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Craindre*, to fear.

Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.

Part. past. *Craint*, *ainte*, feared.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. *Crains*, *crains*, *craint*, I fear, or am afraid.  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*.

*Imperfect.*

Sing. *Craignois*, *craignois*, *craignoit*, I did fear, or  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craigniez*, *craignoient*. was afraid.

*Preterite.*

Sing. *Craignis*, *craignis*, *craignit*, I feared.  
 Plur. *Craignîmes*, *craignîtes*, *craignirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Craindrai, craindras, craindra*, I shall or will  
Plur. *Craindrons, craindrez, craindront.* fear.

Conditional Present.

Sing. *Craindrois, craindrois, craindroit*, I should, &c.  
Plur. *Craindrions, craindriez, craindroient.* fear.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Crains, craigne*, fear thou.  
Plur. *Craignons, craignez, craignent.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

*Que* Sing. *Craigne, que craignes, que craigne*, that I may fear.  
Plur. *Craignons, craigniez, craignent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Craignisse, craignisses, craignît*, that I might fear.  
Plur. *Craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent.*

CROIRE, to believe.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. *Croire*, to believe.  
Part. act. *Croyant*, believing.  
Part. past. *Crue, ue*, believed.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Sing. *Crois, crois, croit*, I believe.  
Plur. *Croyons, croyez, croient.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Croyois, croyois, croyoit*, I did believe.  
Plur. *Croyions, croyiez, croyoient.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Crus, crus, crut*, I believed.  
Plur. *Crûmes, crûtes, crurent.*

Future.

Sing. *Croirai, croiras, croira*, I shall or will be-  
Plur. *Croirons, croirez, croiront.* lieve.

## Conditional Present.

Sing.	<i>Croirois,</i>	<i>croirois,</i>	<i>croiroit,</i>	I should, &c. be-
Plur.	<i>Croirions,</i>	<i>croiriez,</i>	<i>croiroient.</i>	lieve.

## Imperative Mood.

Sing.		<i>Crois,</i>	<i>croie,</i>	believe thou.
Plur.	<i>Croyons,</i>	<i>croyez,</i>	<i>croient.</i>	

## Subjunctive Mood.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Croie,</i>	<i>croies,</i>	<i>croie,</i>	that I may believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyions,</i>	<i>croyiez,</i>	<i>croient.</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Crusse,</i>	<i>crusses,</i>	<i>crût,</i>	that I might believe.
Plur.	<i>Crussions,</i>	<i>crussiez,</i>	<i>crussent.</i>	

---

CROÎTRE, to grow.

And its compounds,

<i>Accroître,</i>	to accrue,	<i>Recroître,</i>	to grow again.
<i>Décroître,</i>	to decrease, to grow less,		
are conjugated like CONNOÎTRE.			

---

**CUIRE,** to bake, to boil, often *Englished by to do*, and its compound **RECUIRE,** to boil again ;

**DÉDUIRE,** to deduct, to abate, and **DÉTRUIRE,** to destroy ;  
are conjugated like **CONDUIRE.**

---

**DIRE,** to say, to tell.

## Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>Dire,</i>	to say.
Part. act.	<i>Disant,</i>	saying.
Part. past.	<i>Dit, te,</i>	said.



*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. <i>Dis,</i>	<i>dis,</i>	<i>dit, I say, or am saying.</i>
Plur. <i>Disons,</i>	<i>dites,*</i>	<i>disent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Disois,</i>	<i>disois,</i>	<i>disoit, I did say, or was say-</i>
Plur. <i>Disions,</i>	<i>disiez,</i>	<i>disoient. ing.</i>

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Dis,</i>	<i>dis,</i>	<i>dit, I did say, or said.</i>
Plur. <i>Dimes,</i>	<i>dîtes,</i>	<i>dirent.</i>

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Dirai,</i>	<i>diras,</i>	<i>dira, I shall or will say.</i>
Plur. <i>Dirons,</i>	<i>direz,</i>	<i>diront.</i>

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Dirois,</i>	<i>dirois,</i>	<i>diroit, I should, &amp;c. say.</i>
Plur. <i>Dirions,</i>	<i>diriez,</i>	<i>diroient.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Dis,</i>	<i>dise, say thou.</i>
Plur. <i>Disons,</i>	<i>dites,*</i>	<i>disent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Dise,</i>	<i>dises,</i>	<i>dise, that I may say.</i>
Plur. <i>Disions,</i>	<i>disiez,</i>	<i>disent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Disse,</i>	<i>disses,</i>	<i>dît, that I might say.</i>
Plur. <i>Dissions,</i>	<i>dissiez,</i>	<i>dissent.</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contredire,</i> to contradict.	<i>Interdire,</i> to interdict, to
<i>Se dédire,</i> to unsay, to re-	forbid.
tract, to recant.	<i>Prédire,</i> to foretel.

\* All the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive) make *isez* instead of *ites*; and *Maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb. Ex. *Nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent, &c.*

*Médire de*, to slander, to speak ill of.      *Redire*, to say, or tell again.  
*Maudire*, to curse.

---

*ÉCLORE*, to hatch, to open, to come to life.

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, in the participle past, and in the third persons of the following tenses.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Eclore*, to open, to hatch, to come to life.  
 Part. past. *Eclos*, *ose*.

*Indicative Mood.*

Sing. *Il éclot*.  
 Plur. *Ils éclosent*.

*Future.*

Sing. *Il éclôra*.  
 Plur. *Ils éclôront*.

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. *Il éclôroit*.  
 Plur. *Ils éclôroient*.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. *Qu'il éclose*.  
 Plur. *Qu'ils éclosent*.

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *Clore*, to shut, to surround, and another compound, *Enclore*, to shut, to surround, with walls, hedges, or ditches.

---

*ÉCRIRE*, to write.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Ecrire*, to write.  
 Part. act. *Écrivant*, writing.  
 Part. pass. *Écrit*, *ite*, written.

*Indicative Mood.*

**Present.**

Sing. <i>Écris,</i>	<i>écris,</i>	<i>écrit,</i> I write, or am writing.
Plur. <i>Écrivons,</i>	<i>écrivez,</i>	<i>écrivent.</i>

**Imperfect.**

Sing. <i>Écrivois,</i>	<i>écrivais,</i>	<i>écrivait,</i> I did write, or was writing.
Plur. <i>Écrivions,</i>	<i>écriviez,</i>	<i>écrivaient.</i>

**Preterite.**

Sing. <i>Écrivis,</i>	<i>écrivis,</i>	<i>écrivit,</i> I wrote, or did write.
Plur. <i>Écrivîmes,</i>	<i>écrivîtes,</i>	<i>écrivirent.</i>

**Future.**

Sing. <i>Écrirai,</i>	<i>écriras,</i>	<i>écrira,</i> I shall or will write.
Plur. <i>Écrivrons,</i>	<i>écrirez,</i>	<i>écriront.</i>

**Conditional Present.**

Sing. <i>Écrirais,</i>	<i>écrirais,</i>	<i>écrirait,</i> I should, &c. write.
Plur. <i>Écririons,</i>	<i>écririez,</i>	<i>écriraient.</i>

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. <i>Écris,</i>	<i>écris,</i>	<i>écrive,</i> write thou.
Plur. <i>Écrivons,</i>	<i>écrivez,</i>	<i>écrivent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.*

**Present.**

Que	que	que
Sing. <i>Écrive,</i>	<i>écrives,</i>	<i>écrive,</i> that I may write.
Plur. <i>Écrivions,</i>	<i>écriviez,</i>	<i>écrivent.</i>

**Imperfect.**

Sing. <i>Écrivisse,</i>	<i>écrivisses,</i>	<i>écrivît,</i> that I might write.
Plur. <i>Écrivissions,</i>	<i>écrivissiez,</i>	<i>écrivissent,</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Décrire,</i> to decribe.	<i>Proscrire,</i> to proscribe, to outlaw, to banish.
<i>Inscrire,</i> to inscribe.	<i>Souscrire,</i> to subscribe.
<i>Prescrire,</i> to prescribe.	<i>Transcrire,</i> to transcribe.

ENDUIRE, *to do over*, is conjugated like CONDUIRE.

---

ÉTEINDRE, *to put out*, is conjugated like CRAINDRE.

---

EXCLURE, *to exclude*, is conjugated like CONCLURE.

Its participle past is *exclus*, *excluse*, and *exclu*, *exclue*; the first of these participles is very little used.

---

FAIRE, *to make, to do*.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Faire</i> , to make.
Part. act.	<i>Faisant</i> , making.
Part. past.	<i>Fait</i> , <i>te</i> , made.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. <i>Fais</i> ,	<i>fais</i> ,	<i>fait</i> , I make, or am making.
Plur. <i>Faisons</i>	<i>faites</i> ,	<i>font</i> .

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Faisois</i> ,	<i>faisois</i> ,	<i>faisoit</i> , I did make, or was
Plur. <i>Faisions</i> ,	<i>faisiez</i> ,	<i>faisoient</i> . making.

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Fis</i> ,	<i>fis</i> ,	<i>fit</i> , I made, or did make.
Plur. <i>Fîmes</i> ,	<i>fîtes</i> ,	<i>fîrent</i> .

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Ferai</i> ,	<i>feras</i> ,	<i>fera</i> , I shall or will make.
Plur. <i>Ferons</i> ,	<i>feriez</i> ,	<i>feront</i> .

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Ferois</i> ,	<i>ferois</i> ,	<i>feroit</i> , I should, &c. make.
Plur. <i>Ferions</i> ,	<i>feriez</i> ,	<i>feroient</i> .

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Fais</i> ,	<i>fasse</i> , make thou.
Plur. <i>Faisons</i> ,	<i>faites</i> ,	<i>fassent</i> .

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Fasse,</i>	<i>Fasses,</i>	<i>fasse,</i>	that I may make.
Plur. <i>Fassions,</i>	<i>fassiez,</i>	<i>fassent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Fisses,</i>	<i>fisses,</i>	<i>fît,</i>	that I might make.
Plur. <i>Fissions,</i>	<i>fissiez,</i>	<i>fissent.</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contrefaire,</i> to counterfeit,	<i>Refaire,</i> to do, or make up
to mimic.	again.
<i>Défaire,</i> to undo, to de-	<i>Redéfaire,</i> to undo again.
feat.	<i>Satisfaire,</i> to satisfy.
<i>Se défaire,</i> to get rid of, to	<i>Surfaire,</i> to exact, to ask too
part with.	much.

**FEINDRE,** to feign, to dissemble, to pretend, is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

**FRIRE,** to fry.

This verb is more elegantly used in the present of the infinitive with the verb *faire*, which is to be put in the same tense and person in which *fry* is in English. Ex.

*Faites frire ce poisson,* Fry that fish.

Its participle past is *frit, ite*, fried.

**INDUIRE,** to induce; **INSTRUIRE,** to instruct; and **INTRODUIRE,** to introduce, are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**JOINDRE,** to join, and its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin, are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

**LIRE,** to read.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Lire,</i> to read.
Part. act.	<i>Lisant,</i> reading.
Part. past.	<i>Lu, ue,</i> read.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing. <i>Lis,</i>	<i>lis,</i>	<i>lit</i> , I read, or am reading.
Plur. <i>Lisons,</i>	<i>lisez,</i>	<i>lisent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Lisois,</i>	<i>lisois,</i>	<i>lisoit</i> , I did read, or was
Plur. <i>Lisions,</i>	<i>lisiez,</i>	<i>lisoient</i> , reading.

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Lus,</i>	<i>lus,</i>	<i>lut</i> , I did read, or read.
Plur. <i>Lûmes,</i>	<i>lûtes,</i>	<i>lurent.</i>

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Lirai,</i>	<i>liras,</i>	<i>lira</i> , I shall or will read.
Plur. <i>Lirons,</i>	<i>lirez,</i>	<i>liront.</i>

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Lirois,</i>	<i>lirois,</i>	<i>liroit</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Lirions,</i>	<i>liriez,</i>	<i>liroient.</i> read.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Lis,</i>	<i>lise</i> , read thou.
Plur. <i>Lisons,</i>	<i>lisez,</i>	<i>lisent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Lise,</i>	<i>lises,</i>	<i>lise</i> , that I may read.	
Plur. <i>Lisions,</i>	<i>lisiez,</i>	<i>lisent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Lusse,</i>	<i>lussès,</i>	<i>lût</i> , that I might read.
Plur. <i>Lussions,</i>	<i>lussiez,</i>	<i>lussent.</i>

Its compounds are,

*Elire*, to elect.

*Relire*, to read again.

**LUIRE**, to shine, and its compound **Reluire**, to glitter, are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**; but they take no *t* at the end of their participle past.

METTRE,\* to put.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Mettre*, to put.  
 Part. act. *Mettant*, putting.  
 Part. Past. *Mis*, *mise*, put.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. <i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mets</i> ,	<i>met</i> , I put, or am putting.
Plur. <i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> ,	<i>mettent</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Mettois</i> ,	<i>mettois</i> ,	<i>mettoit</i> , I did put, or was
Plur. <i>Mettions</i> ,	<i>mettiez</i> ,	<i>mettoient</i> . putting.

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Mis</i> ,	<i>mis</i> ,	<i>mit</i> , I did put, or put.
Plur. <i>Mîmes</i> ,	<i>mîmes</i> ,	<i>mirent</i> .

Future.

Sing. <i>Mettrai</i> ,	<i>mettras</i> ,	<i>mettra</i> , I shall or will put.
Plur. <i>Mettrons</i> ,	<i>mettrez</i> ,	<i>mettront</i> .

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Mettrois</i> ,	<i>mettrois</i> ,	<i>mettroit</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Mettrions</i> ,	<i>mettriez</i> ,	<i>mettroient</i> . put.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mette</i> , put thou.
Plur. <i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> ,	<i>mettent</i> .

\* *Mettre*, when conjugated as a reflexive verb, expresses the beginning or continuation of an action or application; it is then constantly followed by the preposition *à* and the present of the infinitive. It is rendered, in English, by the verb *to begin*. Ex.

*Toutes les fois qu'il la voit, il se met à rire.* Every time he sees her, he begins laughing.

*Il s'est mis tout de bon à étudier,* He has begun to study in earnest.

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Mette,</i>	<i>mettes,</i>	<i>mette,</i> that I may put.
Plur.	<i>Mettions,</i>	<i>mettiez,</i>	<i>mettent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Misse,</i>	<i>misses,</i>	<i>mît,</i> that I might put.
Plur.	<i>Missions,</i>	<i>missiez,</i>	<i>missent.</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Admettre,</i> to admit.	<i>Permettre,</i> to permit.
<i>Commettre,</i> to commit.	<i>Promettre,</i> to promise.*
<i>Compromettre,</i> to compromise.	<i>Remettre,</i> to deliver up, to put back again, to recollect, to put off, to defer.
<i>Démettre,</i> to turn out, to remove.	
<i>Se démettre de,</i> to resign.	<i>Soumettre,</i> to submit.
<i>Omettre,</i> to omit.	<i>Transmettre,</i> to transmit.

---

*MOUDRE,* to grind.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Moudre,</i> to grind.
Part. act.	<i>Moulant,</i> grinding.
Part. past.	<i>Moulu, ue,</i> ground.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing.	<i>Mouds,</i>	<i>mouds,</i>	<i>moud,</i> I grind, or am grinding.
Plur.	<i>Moulons,</i>	<i>moulez,</i>	<i>moulent.</i>

\* The participle active of this verb (promising), when used adjectively and applied to the mental qualities of somebody, is rendered in French by *qui promet*, or *promettoit*, *beaucoup*, or *dont il y a*, or *il y avoit*, *beaucoup à espérer*. Ex.

*Le Major A. étoit un officier qui promettoit beaucoup, ou dont il y avoit beaucoup à espérer.* Major A. was a very promising officer.



Imperfect.

Sing. *Moulois*, *moulois*, *mouloit*, I did grind, or was  
 Plur. *Moulions*, *mouliez*, *mouloient*. grinding.

Preterite.

Sing. *Moulus*, *moulus*, *moulut*, I ground, or did  
 Plur. *Moulûmes*, *moulûtes*, *moulurent*. grind.

Future.

Sing. *Moudrai*, *moudras*, *moudra*, I shall or will grind.  
 Plur. *Moudrons*, *moudrez*, *moudront*.

Conditional Present.

Sing. *Moudrois*, *moudrois*, *moudroit*, I should or would,  
 Plur. *Moudrions*, *moudriez*, *moudroient*. grind.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *Mouds*, *moule*, grind thou.  
 Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*, *moulent*.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Moule*, *moules*, *moule*, that I may grind.  
 Plur. *Moulions*, *mouliez*, *moulent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Moulusse*, *moulusses*, *moulût*, that I might grind.  
 Plur. *Moulussions*, *moulussiez*, *moulussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Êmoudre*, to whet.

*Remoudre*, to grind again.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it.—I  
*de* *penser*, v.  
 will speak to her to oblige you, but I know she does  
*pour*, p.  
 not fear me.—Why do you not believe me?—They  
 (are afraid of) being exposed to some dangers.—We  
*être*, v.

would not believe him, though he (should tell) the truth.

*quand, c.      diroit      vérité, f.*  
Why would you not?—You should not speak so impru-

dently before a man who slanders every body.—  
*devant, p.*

These flowers would grow much better, if you watered  
*fleur, f.      arroser, v.*

them oftener.—Put out the candle, and do not pretend

to sleep.—Were I in town,\* I would tell them all that  
*de      en, p.      leur*

I know (about it).—Say nothing to her, believe me.—  
*en, pro.      ne rien,*

I will tell it to you to-morrow.—They who say all they

know, will readily say what they do not know.—  
*volontiers, adv.*

Tell the truth with modesty: they who do not love it, will

always respect and fear it.—If I see your father, shall

I tell him you are afraid of not succeeding? †—Do you  
*de*

think me capable of forgetting my friends so soon? No  
*de oublier, v.*

I do not.—You always contradict me when I speak.—

It is prudent and humane not to speak ill of any body; but

it is a meanness to speak ill of your benefactors.—  
*ce, pro. bassesse, f. que de      bienfaiteur, m.*

We often do good to those who are not worthy of  
*souvent, adv.      bien, m.*

it, and harm to those who do not deserve it.—Will you  
*mal, m.      mériter, v.*

tell me, after this, that I am not your friend?—I hope  
*(fut.)      que, c.*

she will not tell them what happened to me yesterday.—  
*leur*

I was telling it yesterday to several friends of mine, and

\* Say, if I were, si j'étois, &c.

† After the prepositions *de*, *à* and *pour*, the verb must be put in the present of the infinitive.

every body began crying.\*——I do not like Miss D.

because she speaks ill of every body.——Her father  
*parceque, c.*

has transmitted to her all his fortune, but not his virtues.†

Sylla proscribed above four thousand Roman citizens.

*plus de, adv.*

*citoyen, m.*

——Does Mr. R. write to you (now and then) from

*de tems en tems, adv.*

Paris?——Do you know his direction?——Would

*savoir*

*adresse, f.*

you not write to him if you knew it?——We were writing

while they slept.——If your brother come here,

*pendant que, c.*

detain him, and tell him that I have something to show

*retenir*

*lui*

*à faire voir*

him.——The last time they wrote to him, they

*lui.*

desired him to send them the invoice of the goods, and he

*prier, v.*

*de*

*facture, f.*

*marchandise*

has still omitted it in his letter.——What are you

*encore, adv.*

doing now?——I am making a cap for your sister.

*maintenant, adv.*

——Do not do that, I will do it myself.——I would do it with

*de*

all my heart, if I could.——What would you have done,

if you had been in my place?——Why do you not fry

*si, c.*

*à, p.*

that fish? ‡——The first time you come to see me, I

*fois,*

*(by the fut.)*

will show you in my garden some flowers which will surprise

you.——Silk-worms generally hatch at the end of the

*Soie, f. ver. m.*

spring.——These (rose-trees) grow perceptibly, and those

*printems, m.*

*rosier, m.*

*à vue d'œil, adv.*

\* See the note on the verb *mettre*, page 291.

† See the note \*, page 281.

‡ See the verb *faire*, page 289.

tulips would soon open, (if the weather were) a little  
*s'il faisoit, v.*  
 warmer.—Though they (should deduct) ten per cent.  
*chaud, adj. Quand, c. déduiroient*  
 they would get still enough.—I never  
*gagner, v. encore, adv.*  
 buy any thing at Mr. P.'s; for he always asks too  
*acheter, v. chez car, c.*  
 much for his goods.—I will undo my gown to-morrow,  
*marchandise, f.*  
 and do it up again immediately.—The first time you  
*sur-le-champ, adv.*  
 mimic any one, I will punish you severely.—I would  
 (by the fut.)  
 introduce your sister to Mrs. F. if I knew her.—She  
 would consent to that, if you would promise her to come  
*de*  
 here.—They were playing while you instructed them.  
 —You truly join what is useful to what is  
*vraiment, adv. l'utile*  
 agreeable.—Do not our soldiers join dexterity to valour?  
*l'agréable. adresse, f.*  
 —If you do not take great care of your flowers,  
*prendre, v.*  
 the frost will destroy them.—Mr. S. says he will get rid  
*gelée, f.*  
 of his horse at the beginning of next month.—  
*commencement, m.*  
 You would put out the fire, if, &c.—Undo that, make  
 it up again before dinner, and never defer until to-  
*avant, p. d, p.*  
 morrow what you can do to-day.—Your daughter  
 joins to the love of study the desire of surpassing her  
 companions.—Always virtuous, still handsome,  
*compagne, f. toujours, adv.*  
 she makes herself more enemies than friends; but a day  
 will come, when every body will do her the justice  
*que, c. rendre, v.*

she deserves.——She reads the History of England every  
*mériter, v.*

day from three o'clock till five.——I will read  
*depuis heure, f. jusqu'à, p.*

your letter as soon as I am dressed.——The in-  
*(by the fut.) habillé, p. p.*

habitants of W. have elected Mr. V. W. for their

representative in parliament.——I was reading Marmon-  
*représentant, m. au*

tel's Tales when you came in.——Mr. R. wrote to me  
*Conte, m. entrer, v.*

some time ago, that when he was in London, the  
*il y a quelque temps à*

Earl of E. told him we should soon see a great  
*Comte, m. lui*

change in the ministry.——He often writes to  
*changement, m. dans, ministère, m.*

me, and always concludes his letters thus: (Be so kind as  
*terminer ainsi Avoir la bonté*

to) send me some news, whatever it may be.——Put  
*de des soient*

these books in their places again.——I believe he did it

through spite.——Shall I put another trimming  
*par, p. dépit, m. garniture, f.*

to your gown?——I read last year a very good book, but

I cannot remember the author's name.——What grammar

do you read?——Whatever merit a master has, he cannot

succeed in teaching young people if he do not join prac-  
*à, p. jeunes gens,*

tice to theory.——I would put all your china in  
*porcelain, f.*

that closet, if I had the key of it.——You could not  
*cabinet, m. pourriez*

do it in ten days, if I did not help you.——Why do  
*aider, v.*

not you abstain from wine, since it hurts you?  
*puisque, c. faire mal, v.*

——He promised to pay me the tenth of this month, but

he has now put me off to the third of December.——He submitted to it with the greatest patience.——You promise enough, but you seldom keep your word.——  
*rarement, adv. tenir, v.*  
 Mr. D. is a very promising young man.\*——It is he who told me, that, before the invention of water and wind-mills, the ancients used to grind their corn in mortars.——Will they not admit Mr. Z. in their society? No, they told me that they will not.——  
*grain, m. mortier, m.*  
 The English fleets have performed actions worthy to be transmitted to posterity.——Your brother promises me every day to amend, but, &c.——Were I their master, I would not permit them to go out to-day.——  
*de se corriger, v. leur de*  
 I was writing to you when your servant brought me your letter.

NAÎTRE, to be born, to rise.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. Naître, to be born.  
 Part. act. Naissant, being born, rising.  
 Part. past. Né, ée, been born.

*Indicative Mood.*

**Present.**

Sing. Nais,	nais,	nait, I am born.
Plur. Naissions,	naissez,	naissent.

\* See the note on this verb, page 292.

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Naissois,</i>	<i>naissois,</i>	<i>naissoit, I was born.</i>
Plur. <i>Naissions,</i>	<i>naissiez,</i>	<i>naissoient.</i>

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Naquis,</i>	<i>naquis,</i>	<i>naquit, I was born.</i>
Plur. <i>Naquîmes,</i>	<i>naquîtes,</i>	<i>naquirent.</i>

Future.

Sing. <i>Naîtrai,</i>	<i>naîtras,</i>	<i>naîtra, I shall or will be</i>
Plur. <i>Naîtrons,</i>	<i>naîtrez,</i>	<i>naîtront. born.</i>

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Naîtrois,</i>	<i>naîtrois,</i>	<i>naîtroit, I should, &amp;c. be</i>
Plur. <i>Naîtrions,</i>	<i>naîtriez,</i>	<i>naîtroient. born.</i>

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	<i>Nais,</i>	<i>naisse, be thou born.</i>
Plur. <i>Naissons,</i>	<i>naissez,</i>	<i>naissent.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Naisse,</i>	<i>naisses,</i>	<i>naisse, that I may be born.</i>
Plur. <i>Nuissions,</i>	<i>naissiez,</i>	<i>naissent.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Naquisse,</i>	<i>naquisses,</i>	<i>naquît, that I might be</i>
Plur. <i>Naquissions,</i>	<i>naquissiez,</i>	<i>naquissent. born.</i>

The compound of this verb is

*Renaître, to be born again, to revive.*

**NUIRE, to hurt,** is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**, but makes, in its participle past, *nui*. It does not take the feminine gender.

**OINDRE, to anoint.**

This verb is seldom used, except in speaking of sacred ceremonies, wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

PAÎTRE, to feed, to graze, PAROÎTRE, to appear, to seem,  
and its compounds,

Comparoître, to appear, to Disparoître, to disappear,  
make one's evidence,

are conjugated like CONNOÎTRE.

PEINDRE, to paint, to draw; PLAINDRE, to pity; and  
PLAINDRE, to complain, are conjugated like CRAINDRE.

PLAIRE, to please.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Plaire*, to please.

Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.

Part. past. *Plu.* pleased.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. <i>Plais</i> ,	<i>plais</i> ,	<i>plait</i> , I please.
Plur. <i>Plaisons</i> ,	<i>plaisez</i> ,	<i>plaisent</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Plaisois</i> ,	<i>plaisois</i> ,	<i>plaisoit</i> , I did please, or
Plur. <i>Plaisions</i> ,	<i>plaisiez</i> ,	<i>plaisoient</i> , was pleasing.

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Plus</i> ,	<i>plus</i> ,	<i>plut</i> , I pleased, or did
Plur. <i>Plûmes</i> ,	<i>plûtes</i> ,	<i>plurent</i> , please.

Future.

Sing. <i>Plairai</i> ,	<i>plairas</i> ,	<i>plaira</i> , I shall or will
Plur. <i>Plairons</i> ,	<i>plairez</i> ,	<i>plairont</i> , please.

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Plairois</i> ,	<i>plairois</i> ,	<i>plairoit</i> , I should or would
Plur. <i>Plairions</i> ,	<i>plairiez</i> ,	<i>plairoient</i> , please.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. <i>Plais</i> ,	<i>plaise</i> , please then.
Plur. <i>Plaisez</i> ,	<i>plaisent</i> .



*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Plaise,</i>	<i>plaises,</i>	<i>plaise,</i>	that I may please.
Plur.	<i>Plaisons,</i>	<i>plaisiez,</i>	<i>plaisent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Plusse,</i>	<i>plusses,</i>	<i>plût,</i>	that I might please.
Plur.	<i>Plussions,</i>	<i>plussiez,</i>	<i>plussent.</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

*Complaire,* to humour.

*Déplaire,* to displease.

*PRENDRE, to take.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

*Present. Prendre,* to take.

*Part. act. Prenant,* taking.

*Part. past. Pris, ise,* taken.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing.	<i>Prends,</i>	<i>prends,</i>	<i>prend,</i>	I take, or am
Plur.	<i>Prenons,</i>	<i>prenez,</i>	<i>prennent.</i>	taking.

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Prenois,</i>	<i>prenois,</i>	<i>prenoit,</i>	I did take, or was
Plur.	<i>Prenions,</i>	<i>preniez,</i>	<i>prenoient.</i>	taking.

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Pris,</i>	<i>pris,</i>	<i>prit,</i>	I took, or did take.
Plur.	<i>Prîmes,</i>	<i>prîtes,</i>	<i>prirent.</i>	

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Prendrai,</i>	<i>prendras,</i>	<i>prendra,</i>	I shall or will
Plur.	<i>Prendrons,</i>	<i>prendrez,</i>	<i>prendront.</i>	take.

*Conditional Present.*

Sing.	<i>Prendrois,</i>	<i>prendrois,</i>	<i>prendroit,</i>	I should or
Plur.	<i>Prendrions,</i>	<i>prendriez,</i>	<i>prendroient.</i>	would take.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Prends,</i>	<i>prenne,</i>	take thou.
Plur. <i>Prenons,</i>	<i>prenez,</i>	<i>prennent.</i>	

*Subjunctive Mood.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Prenne,</i>	<i>prennes,</i>	<i>prenne,</i>	that I may take.	
Plur. <i>Prenions,</i>	<i>preniez,</i>	<i>prennent.</i>		

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Prisse,</i>	<i>prisses,</i>	<i>prît,</i>	that I might take.
Plur. <i>Prissions,</i>	<i>prissiez,</i>	<i>prissent.</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Apprendre,</i>	to learn.	<i>Entreprendre,</i>	to undertake.
<i>des nouvelles,</i>	to hear of.	<i>Méprendre,</i>	to mistake, to be deceived.
<i>Comprendre,</i>	to apprehend, to understand, to include.	<i>Reprendre,</i>	to take again, to chide, to rebuke.
<i>Désapprendre,</i>	to unlearn.	<i>Surprendre,</i>	to surprise.

PRODUIRE, to produce; RÉDUIRE, to reduce, to bring to, are conjugated like CONDUIRE.

RESTREINDRE, to restrain, is conjugated like CRAINDRE.

RIRE, to laugh.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Rire,</i>	to laugh.
Part. act.	<i>Riant,</i>	laughing.
Part. past.	<i>Ri,</i>	laughed.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing. <i>Ris,</i>	<i>ris,</i>	<i>rit,</i>	I laugh, or am laugh-
Plur. <i>Rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>rient.</i>	ing.

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Riois,</i>	<i>riois,</i>	<i>rioit,</i>	I laughed, or was
Plur. <i>Rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>rioient.</i>	laughing.

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Ris,</i>	<i>ris,</i>	<i>rit,</i> I laughed, or did
Plur. <i>Rîmes,</i>	<i>rîtes,</i>	<i>rirent.</i> laugh.

Future.

Sing. <i>Rirai,</i>	<i>riras,</i>	<i>rira,</i> I shall or will laugh.
Plur. <i>Rirons,</i>	<i>rirez,</i>	<i>riront.</i>

Conditional Present.

Sing. <i>Rirois,</i>	<i>rirois,</i>	<i>riroit,</i> I should or would
Plur. <i>Ririons,</i>	<i>ririez,</i>	<i>riroient.</i> laugh.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	<i>Ris,</i>	<i>rie,</i> laugh thou.
Plur. <i>Rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>rient.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

<i>Que.</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Rie,</i>	<i>ries,</i>	<i>rie,</i> that I may laugh.
Plur. <i>Riions,</i>	<i>riiez,</i>	<i>rient.</i>

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Risse,</i>	<i>risses,</i>	<i>rît,</i> that I might laugh.
Plur. <i>Rissions,</i>	<i>rissiez,</i>	<i>rissent.</i>

The compound of this verb is

**SOURIRE,** to smile.

**SÉDUIRE,** to seduce, is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**; **SUFFIRE,** to suffice, to be sufficient, is conjugated like **CONFIRE**; but its participle past. is *suffi*.

**SUIVRE,** to follow.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	<i>Suivre,</i> to follow.
Part. act.	<i>Suivant,</i> following.
Part. past.	<i>Suivi,</i> ie, followed.

*Indicative Mood.**Present.*

Sing. <i>Suis,</i>	<i>suis,</i>	<i>suit,</i> I follow, or am fol-
Plur. <i>Suivons,</i>	<i>suivez,</i>	<i>suivent.</i> lowing.

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Suivois,</i>	<i>suivois,</i>	<i>suivoit,</i> I did follow, or
Plur. <i>Suivions,</i>	<i>suiviez,</i>	<i>suivoient.</i> was following.

*Preterite.*

Sing. <i>Suivis,</i>	<i>suivis,</i>	<i>suivit,</i> I followed, or did
Plur. <i>Suivîmes,</i>	<i>suivîtes,</i>	<i>suivirent.</i> follow.

*Future.*

Sing. <i>Suivrai,</i>	<i>suivras,</i>	<i>suivra,</i> I shall or will
Plur. <i>Suivrons,</i>	<i>suivrez,</i>	<i>suivront.</i> follow.

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. <i>Suivrois,</i>	<i>suivrois,</i>	<i>suivroit,</i> I should or
Plur. <i>Suivrions,</i>	<i>suivriez,</i>	<i>suivroient.</i> would follow.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. <i>Suis,</i>	<i>suive,</i> follow thou.
Plur. <i>Suivons,</i>	<i>suivez,</i> <i>suivent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Suive,</i>	<i>suives,</i>	<i>suive,</i> that I may follow.
Plur. <i>Suivions,</i>	<i>suiviez,</i>	<i>suivent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. <i>Suivisse,</i>	<i>suivisses,</i>	<i>suivît,</i> that I might fol-
Plur. <i>Suivissions,</i>	<i>suivissiez,</i>	<i>suivissent.</i> low.

The compounds of this verb are,

*S'Ensuivre,* to follow from. *Poursuivre,* to pursue.

*SE TAIRE,* to hold one's tongue, is conjugated like *PLAIRE*.

**TEINDRE**, to dye, is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

**TRADUIRE**, to translate, is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**TRAIRE**, to milk.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Traire*, to milk.

Part. act. *Trayant*, milking.

Part. past. *Trait*, aite, milked.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

Sing. *Trais*, *trais*, *trait*, I milk, or am milking.

Plur. *Trayons*, *trayez*, *traient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayois*, *trayois*, *trayoit*, I did milk, or was

Plur. *Trayions*, *trayiez*, *trayoiient*, milking.

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Sing. *Trairai*, *trairas*, *traira*, I shall or will milk.

Plur. *Trairons*, *trairez*, *trairont*.

Conditional Present.

Sing. *Trairois*, *trairois*, *trairoit*, I should, &c. milk.

Plur. *Trairions*, *trairiez*, *trairoient*.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. *Trais*, *traie*, milk thou.

Plur. *Trayons*, *trayez*, *traient*.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present.

*Que*

*que*

*que*

Sing. *Traie*, *traies*, *traie*, that I may milk.

Plur. *Trayions*, *trayiez*, *traient*.

Imperfect is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abstraire*, to abstract.      *Rentreire*, to finedraw.  
*Distraire*, to distract.      *Soustraire*, to subtract.  
*Extraire*, to extract.

**VAINCRE**, to vanquish, to conquer.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Vaincre*, to conquer.  
 Part. act. *Vainquant*, conquering.  
 Part. past. *Vaincu*, ue, conquered.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing. *Vaincs*, vaincs, vainc, I conquer.\*  
 Plur. *Vainquons*, vainquez, vainquent.

*Imperfect.*

Sing. *Vainquois*, vainquois, vainquoit, I did conquer.†  
 Plur. *Vainquions*, vainquiez, vainquoient.

*Préterite.*

Sing. *Vainquis*, vainquis, vainquit, I conquered.  
 Plur. *Vainquîmes*, vainquîtes, vainquirent.

*Future.*

Sing. *Vaincrai*, vaincras, vaincra, I shall or will conquer.  
 Plur. *Vaincrons*, vaincrez, vaincront.

*Conditional Present.*

Sing. *Vaincrois*, vaincrois, vaincroit, I should, &c. conquer.  
 Plur. *Vaincrons*, vaincriez, vaincroient.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. *Vaincs*, vainque, conquer thou.  
 Plur. *Vainquons*, vainquez, vainquent.

\* The singular of this tense is very little used.

† This tense is very seldom used.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vainque,</i>	<i>vainques,</i>	<i>vainque,</i>	that I may conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquions,</i>	<i>vainquiez,</i>	<i>vainquent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Vainquisse,</i>	<i>vainquisses,</i>	<i>vainquît,</i>	that I might con-
Plur.	<i>Vainquissions,</i>	<i>vainquissiez,</i>	<i>vainquissent.</i>	quer.

The compound of this verb is

*Convaincre,* to convince.

*VIVRE, to live.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present.	<i>Vivre,</i>	to live.
Part. act.	<i>Vivant,</i>	living.
Part. past.	<i>Vécu,</i>	lived.

*Indicative Mood.*

*Present.*

Sing.	<i>Vis,</i>	<i>vis,</i>	<i>vit,</i>	I live, or am living.
Plur.	<i>Vivons,</i>	<i>vivez,</i>	<i>vivent.</i>	

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Vivois,</i>	<i>vivois,</i>	<i>vivoit,</i>	I did live, or was liv-
Plur.	<i>Vivions,</i>	<i>viviez,</i>	<i>vivoient.</i>	ing.

*Preterite.*

Sing.	<i>Vécus,</i>	<i>vécus,</i>	<i>vécut,</i>	I lived, or did live.
Plur.	<i>Vécûmes,</i>	<i>vécûtes,</i>	<i>vécurent.</i>	

*Future.*

Sing.	<i>Vivrai,</i>	<i>vivras,</i>	<i>vivra,</i>	I shall or will live.
Plur.	<i>Vivrons,</i>	<i>vivrez,</i>	<i>vivront.</i>	

*Conditional Present.*

Sing.	<i>Vivrois,</i>	<i>vivrois,</i>	<i>vivroit,</i>	I should or would
Plur.	<i>Vivrions,</i>	<i>vivriez,</i>	<i>vivroient.</i>	live.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing.	<i>Vis,</i>	<i>vive, live thou.</i>
Plur.	<i>Vivons,</i>	<i>vivez, vivent.</i>

*Subjunctive Mood.**Present.*

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Vive,</i>	<i>vives,</i>	<i>vive, that I may live.</i>
Plur.	<i>Vivions,</i>	<i>viviez,</i>	<i>vivent.</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing.	<i>Vécusse,</i>	<i>vécusses,</i>	<i>vécût, that I might live.</i>
Plur.	<i>Vécussions,</i>	<i>vécussiez,</i>	<i>vécussent.</i>

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Revivre*, to revive.      *Survivre*, to outlive.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris, on the eighth of February,  
 one thousand seven hundred and eighty-one.—Those who  
 seem not to fear death when they are in good health,  
 often dread it when they are sick.—What does your  
 sister complain of?—The swallows generally disappear  
 towards the end of autumn.—You do not seem to pay  
 any attention to what I say to you.—This man paints  
 very well, I assure you.—Why would you hurt him?  
 he never did you any harm.—I should pity and  
 succour him, if it were not his fault.—You shall  
 disappear as soon as you have executed my orders.  
 (by the fut.)



—The last time I saw your sister she appeared to me thoughtful and melancholy.—She is a lady that pleases *pensif, adj. mélancolique, adj.* every body.—She appears quite young: how old is she?

—Does she not learn drawing?—Your brother has not included his tailor's *dessin, m.* bill in the account *tailleur, m. mémoire, m.* which he has given me.—I see you do not complain of him without a cause.—I<sup>1</sup> really<sup>3</sup> am<sup>4</sup> surprised (at<sup>2</sup> it,) but *en, pro.* he always smiles at every thing I tell him.—As, *Tout* surprising as this seems to you, yet<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup> is true.

—At last *que* the enemy surprised and defeated them in the *cependant, adv. c'est* space of twelve days.—They might have\* taken the *Enfin, adv. dans* town three days sooner, but the soldiers were so exhausted with fatigue, that they could not even *épuisé, p.p.* hold their *de, p.* guns.—May these brave men long enjoy the glory *même, adv.* which they have acquired.—I sincerely wish they may. *jouir de*

—Children seldom *acquise* forget, when they continually *rarement, adv. lorsque, v.* exercise their minds to study.—If my *nuellment, adv. exercer, v.* brother do come this week, as he promised me, if you will, we will go and see him in the country.—Does not

Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daughter's death?

—When you *affligé, p. p. de* see Mrs. B., I am certain she will (by the fut.)

\* See rule 10th part, the 4th page 259.

please you.—Did you never see her?—The children  
*Avez* *vue*  
 who shall be born from this happy marriage, will be  
*naîtront* *de* *seront*  
 the delight of their father and mother.—She joins  
*délices*, f. pl.  
 to the qualities of the body those of the mind.—Take  
 some pears, and carry them to your brother.—Every  
 time I see him, I take him for a foreigner.—My sister  
*étranger*, m.  
 and I learn French, and understand very well all that  
 (is said) to us in that language.—Though you should  
*on dit* *Quand*, c.  
 learn all the rules, they would not (be sufficient) without  
*apprendriez* *suffire*, v.  
 practice.—I did not understand what you said.—Do  
*ai* *compris* *avez dit*.  
 not undertake to undeceive her; believe me you will lose  
*de détromper*, v.  
 your time.—Virtue procures and preserves friendship,  
*obtenir*, v. *conserver*, v.  
 but vice produces hatred and quarrels.—If you com-  
*vice*, m. *haine*, f. *querelle*, f.  
 plain to the master, I will complain to the mistress.—  
 Though you should undertake to prove the contrary, she  
*Quand* *de*  
 would not believe you.—Why did you not take the same  
 road as we?—He (is not pleased) in his situation, now  
*que* *on* *se plaire*, v.  
 he sees all the dangers of it.—He has suffered much,  
 and none of his friends have pitied him.—The idea of  
*idée*, f.  
 his misfortunes pursues him every-where.—When did  
*malheur*, m. *partout*, adv.  
 you hear of him? \*—Captain D. told my father that he  
*à*

\* Turn the sentence thus: *when had you of his news?* Quand avez-vous eu de ses nouvelles?

had seen him and spoken to him at Madras.——We often

mistake —— when we judge of others by appearances;

*se méprendre, v. juger, v.*

and often a person displeases us by the very  
*même, adj.*

quality by which another has pleased us.——The people

who often seem the most zealous are not always the most  
*gens, m.*

constant.——Leave me that book a little longer, do

*Laisser, v.*

not take it again.——That apple-tree produces no fruit.

*pommier, m.*

——We were reduced to the last extremity when they

retook our ship.——Go and speak to Mr. ——; but

above all do not laugh.——Would you not laugh, if you

were in my place?——We laughed much yesterday at

the play.——He seduced her by his fine promises.——

Whatever he may undertake, he never will succeed, he

is too much addicted to the pleasures of this world.——

Young people tell what they do; old people what

they have done, and fools what they intend to

do.——We learn much more easily the things

which we understand than those which we do not.——If

we go together to my brother's, shall you be able to

follow us? I will follow you step by step.——Why

do you follow me as you do?——You may set out

as you do.——*comme*

when you please,\* we will follow you.—Hold your  
 (futur) *Taisez-vous*  
 tongue, you do not know what you say.—What books  
 do you translate? My master says I shall soon trans-  
 late Marmontel's Works.—We should have conquered  
*vaincre*  
 them if we had fought; and, believe me, you might have  
 done much better, if you had followed the advice which  
 he gave you.—They have debated the question a long  
 time without being† able to resolve it.—They were—  
*pouvoir* *surent*  
 quite transported with joy, when they heard of the happy  
*de, p.*  
 news of the peace.—Every thing smiles in nature  
*dans, p.*  
 at the return of the spring.—As long as her  
*retour, m.* *printems, m.* *Tant. que, adv.*  
 father and mother live, they never will consent to her  
 (by the fut.)  
 marriage with Mr. R.—You will not live long if you  
 drink so much.—She lived about four years after  
*environ, p.* *après, p.*  
 her husband's death.—George IV., eldest son of  
*ainé, adj.*  
 George III., was born on the twelfth of August, 1762,  
 and was proclaimed king of Great Britain and Ireland  
*proclamer, v.* *Angleterre*  
 on the thirty-first of January, 1820.—Let a man live  
 in any country whatever,‡ he is sure to be respected and  
*de*

\* Say, when it will please you.

† The preposition *sans* governing a verb, always governs in the present of the infinitive.

‡ Say, in whatever country that a man live, &c. *Dans quelque pays qu'un homme demeure, &c.*

well treated every where, if his behaviour and manners be ruled by the principles of a sound policy, and the laws of the country he lives in.

*mœurs, f. pl.*  
*bon, adj. politique, f.*

*qu'il habite.*

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

The impersonal verbs, as we have already said, are those which are never used but in the third person singular; the pronoun *il*, which precedes them, never taking the place of any noun.

*Il tonne,* It thunders.  
*Il pleut,* It rains.

To which may be added several other verbs, that become impersonal when the pronoun *il* is employed in a vague sense. Ex.

<i>Il vous convient d'être mo-</i>	It becomes you to be mo-
<i>deste,</i>	dest.
<i>Il fait beau, froid, &amp;c.</i>	It is fine, cold, &c.
<i>Il semble,</i>	It seems.
<i>Il s'ensuit que,</i>	It follows that.
<i>Il vaut mieux que,</i>	It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular, have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. I shall therefore only select one that is not derived, and show the manner of conjugating it, premising that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle past to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

*Infinitive Mood.*

Present. *Pleuvoir*, to rain.  
Part. act. *Pleuvant*, raining.  
Part. past. *Plu*, rained.

*Indicative Mood.**Affirmatively.*

Present. *Il pleut*, it rains, it does rain.

*Negatively.*

*Il ne pleut pas*, it does not rain.

*Interrogatively.*

*Pleut-il?* does it rain?

*Ne pleut-il pas?* does it not rain?

Imperfect. *Il pleuvoit*, it rained, it was raining.

Preterite. *Il plut*, it rained.

Future. *Il pleuvra*, it shall or will rain.

Cond. pres. *Il pleuvroit*, it would or should rain.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present. *Qu'il pleuve*, that it may rain.

Imperfect. *Qu'il plût*, that it might rain.

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present time, of the indicative mood: the learner may easily find out the rest.

*Il arrive*, it happens; from *arriver*, to happen.

*Il bruine*, it drizzles; *bruiner*, to drizzle.

*Il éclaire*, it lightens; *éclairer*, to lighten.

*Il gèle*, it freezes; *geler*, to freeze.

*Il grêle*, it hails; *grêler*, to hail.

*Il neige*, it snows; *neiger*, to snow.

*Il tonne*, it thunders; *tonner*, to thunder.

*Il importe*, it matters, it concerns; *importer*, to concern.

## EXERCISES ON THESE VERBS.

Does it rain?—It rained just now,\* but it does not rain at present.——*tout-à-l'heure*, adv. Was it not raining when you *maintenant*, adv.

\* Put the verb in the imperfect.

came?—I advise *conseiller, v.* you not to go out this morning, *de*  
 I think it will soon *bientôt, adv.* rain.—I am sure it would rain  
 if the wind were not so high.—Do you know *grand, adj.* what  
 happened to my cousin whilst *savoir, v.* he was in town?  
 I foresaw *pendant que, c.* what would happen.—The roads *prévoir, v.* were  
 very slippery *glissant, adj.* yesterday, because it drizzled the whole  
 day.—Did you observe *remarquer, v.* how *comme, adv.* it lightened  
 last night?—If it did not freeze I would go to see  
 them to-day.—It *voir, v.* hailed this afternoon,\* and it will  
 certainly snow to-night.—It thundered much *après-midi, m.*  
 yesterday, and I think it will still *beaucoup, adv.* thunder to-day.  
 —It matters little *encore, adv.* whether you do your exercise  
 now or later, provided *peu, adv.* it be well done.—It  
 greatly *pourvu que, c.* concerns children to avoid idleness, be-  
 cause it is the *aux de éviter, v.* parent of all vices and the destroyer  
 of all virtues. *mère, f.* *destructrice, f.*

*The verb AVOIR, to have,*

*Conjugated impersonally with the adverb of place, v.*

*Observation.*—Though this verb admits the plural in English, it never can be used in French but in the singular.

*Infinitive Mood.*

*Y avoir, there be.*

\* Put the verb in the preterite indefinite.

*Indicative Mood.**Affirmatively.*

Present. *Il y a*, there is, there are.

*Negatively.*

*Il n'y a pas*, there is not, there are not.

*Interrogatively.*

*Y a-t-il?* is there? are there?

*N'y a-t-il pas?* is there not? are there not?

Imperfect. *Il y avoit*, there was, there were.

Preterite. *Il y eut*, there was, there were.

Future. *Il y aura*, there shall or will be.

Cond. pres. *Il y auroit*, there should or would be.

*Imperative Mood.*

*Qu'il y ait*, let there be.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.

Imperfect. *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.

*Compound Tenses.*

*Il y a eu*, there has or have been.

*Il y avoit eu*, there had been.

*Il y eut eu*, there had been.

*Il y aura eu*, there shall or will have been.

*Il y auroit eu*, there should, &c. have been.

*Qu'il y ait eu*, that there may have been.

*Qu'il y eût eu*, that there might have been.

## EXERCISE ON THIS VERB.

*Read the Observation that precedes the above Conjugation ; and recollect that the Verb TO BE must be rendered into French by AVOIR, to have, used impersonally.*

There are three ladies who (are waiting for) you in  
*attendre, v.*





*On ne pourra pas jouer de-  
main, mon père est très  
malade,*

There will be no acting to-  
morrow, my father is very  
ill.

### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

*Read attentively the last Observation.*

There is such a deal of snow that there is no going out  
*tant, adv.*  
of the house.—You speak so low *bas, adv.* and so quick, *vîte, adv.*  
that there is no hearing *entendre, v.* nor understanding what you *comprendre, v.*  
*say.*—My brother runs so fast *vîte, adv.* that there is no fol-  
lowing him.—There was no walking yesterday in the  
*streets of London on account of the dirt.* *hier, adv.* His argu-  
*ments were so convincing that there was no replying* *à cause, p.* *bauc, adv.* *to*  
*him.*—There will be no skaiting *patiner, v.* in the park to-mor-  
row, because it thaws.—There will be no going to the  
*car* *dégeler, v.*  
play *comédie, f.* next *prochain, adv.* month, because the play-  
*houses will be shut.* *parceque, c.* *thé-*  
*âtre, m.*—There would be no living with  
you, if you were *étiez, v.* always in the *de la, p.* same humour.

RULE. 12.—1st. This verb *il y a, il y avoit, &c.*, when used to denote a space of time, is often rendered in English by *it is, it was, &c.*; and then the preposition *since* is translated into French by *que*. Ex.

*Il y a trois mois* *QUE VOTRE* *It is three months since*  
*père est arrivé.* *your father arrived.*

2dly. Whenever it is meant to express the time since which an action *has not taken place*, though the sentence be affirmative in English, the verb that follows in French

the conjunction *que*, must be preceded by the negation *ne*. Ex.

*Il y a long temps que je ne vous ai vu.* It is long since I saw you ; that is to say, *I have NOT seen you this long time.*

*Combien y-a-t il que vous ne vous êtes vus ?* How long is it since you saw each other ? That is to say, *since you have NOT seen each other.*

EXERCISE.

How long is it since we saw one another ?  
*Combien, adv.* pret. def. *nous, pro.*  
 —It is a year since I met your brother  
*rencontrer, pret. def.*  
 in Italy ; and it is six months since I heard  
*entendre parler, pret. def.*  
 of him —How long is it since you wrote to your mother ?  
 —It is but two months. —It was a week since  
*ne que* *semaine, f.*  
 I had seen your brother, when I met him by chance  
*par hazard, adv.*  
 in a coffee-room. —How long was it since your friend  
*café, m.*  
 had left France when he wrote to you ? —It was three  
*quitté*  
 months. —It may be two years since Mr. Robert  
 set out for the Indies. —How long is it since you  
*partir, pret. def.*  
 were in England ? —It is such a long while since I  
*si* *long temps.*  
 learned German, that I have almost forgotten it.  
*Allemand, m.*

RULE 13.—The word *ago* often acts in English as a substitute for the verb *there is, there are, &c.* ; but those sentences, to be rendered into French, must be turned so

as to be translated with the assistance of the verb *y avoir*.  
Ex.

*J'étois en France il y a trois mois,* I was in France three months ago; that is to say I was in France, IT IS three months.

Or, *Il y a trois mois que j'étois en France,* Or, It is three months since I was in France.

## EXERCISE.

He is the man whom we saw a quarter of an hour  
C'est <sup>avons vu</sup> <sup>vu</sup> <sup>Je l'ai vu</sup>  
ago.—When did you see my father?—I saw him  
(a fortnight ago.)—You do not seem so lively as you  
<sup>qu'inze jours</sup> <sup>parôître enjoué</sup>  
were three years ago.—I would have written to you a  
P'étiez  
month ago, if I had known your direction.—I saw your  
<sup>savoir</sup> <sup>adresse, f.</sup>  
sister four months ago. My father was ill six weeks  
ago.—He was in London five years ago, and  
(it is said) he is now in Paris.  
on dit

RULE 14.—It often happens that neither the impersonal verb *there is*, *it is*, &c., nor the word *ago* is expressed in English; but the word *this* or *these* is placed before the time specified; and very often too these words are not introduced; yet in either case the verb *y avoir* must be used in French; and the words *this* and *these* are not to be translated. Ex.

*Il y a neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage,* My aunt has been living these nine years in this neighbourhood; that is to say, It is nine years since my aunt is living, &c.

*Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici,* We have not been above an hour fishing here;

that is to say, *It is not above an hour since we fish here.*

*Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France, quand j'y allai,* My sister had been two years in France when I went there.

*N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demeurait avec nous, quand elle mourut,* Had she not lived six months with us when she died?

*Il y aura six ans à Noël que votre frère est chez Mons. O.* Your brother will have been at Mr. O.'s six years at Christmas.

*N'y aura-t-il pas un an au mois d'Août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris?* Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August?

*Observation.*—The English language differs so much from the French in the above sentences, and all others of the same kind, that we think it very proper to call the attention of the learners to the following rules.

**RULE 15.**—Whenever the verb expressing the principal action spoken of in the sentence is in the *preterite indefinite*, both the verb *y avoir*, and that *expressing the principal action* must be put in the *present* of the *indicative mood*, if that action is represented as still continuing. Ex.

*Il y a quatre ans que mon père est en France,* My father has been in France these four years.  
(*my father is still in France.*)

**RULE 16.**—If the sentence expresses the length of time elapsed, without the action spoken of having taken place, the verb *y avoir* must be put in the *present* of the *indicative mood*, and the verb expressing the principal action will be, in French, in the same tense as in English; that is to say in the *preterite indefinite*. Ex.

*Il y a trois ans que je n'ai vu le roi,* I have not seen the king these three years; that is to say, *It is three years since I have not seen the king.*

**RULE 17.**—Whenever the verb expressing the principal action spoken of is in the *preterite indefinite*, and the principal action is represented as terminating in a *past time* at the same moment when another action took place also, both the verb *y avoir* and that expressing the principal action are to be put in the *imperfect of the indicative* and the other verb must be put in the *preterite definite*. **Ex.**

*N'y avoit-il pas cinq ans que vous demeuriez chez moi quand votre père mourut ?* Had you not been five years with me when your father died.

**RULE 18.**—If the verb expressing the principal action is in the future past; that is to say, in the compound of the future, the verb *y avoir* must be put in the *future* (*il y aura*, there will be) and the verb expressing the action must be put in the *present of the indicative*. **Ex.**

*Il y AURA six mois à Noël que votre frère EST en Espagne,* Your brother will have been six months in Spain, at Christmas.

#### EXERCISE.

There are people who have no pity on their poor  
*des gens* *de*

(fellow-creatures.)—Some people fancy  
*semblables* *Il y a des gens qui s'imaginent*  
that they can learn a language without studying.—  
*pouvoir* *étudier*

My brother has been four years\* at Mr. W.'s academy,

and my father told him that he should stay there two  
*rester*

years more.—I had been three years in England when  
*de plus*

that happened. I had not been three months in  
*arriver, pret. def.*

France,† when my brother returned from America to

London, where he fell ill and died.—Mr. N. had only  
*ne-que*  
learned French seven months, when he wrote me a letter

\* See rule 14, page 320.

† See above, rule 17.

in that language.\*—Had not Mr. David been four years and a half in Spain when his sister (was married.)—My father and mother had not been gone out above a quarter of an hour when he arrived.—We had been playing at cards for two hours when you came in.—Thomas will have been at college two years the tenth of next month.†

*The verb ÊTRE, to be, taken impersonally.*

**RULE 19.**—The verb *être*, to be, being preceded in English by the pronoun *it*, becomes impersonal whenever it is followed by a pronoun *personal*, *possessive* or *demonstrative*; then the pronoun *it* is to be translated by *ce*; and though the verb be followed by pronouns in the plural number, it must be put in French in the singular, as it is in English. Ex.

C'EST la loi QUI l'ordonne.	It is the law that prescribes it.
C'EST moi QUI l'ai fait.	It is I who have done it.
C'EST vous, Messieurs, QUI faites mon malheur.	It is you, Gentlemen, who cause my misfortune.

**Observation.**—When the impersonal verb, *it is*, *it was*, &c. is followed by a *noun* or *pronoun* in the *third person plural*, it may be put either in the *singular* or *plural*; yet if the sentence be *interrogative*, the *singular* is sometimes preferred in order to give softness to the language. Ex.

C'EST EUX, or CE SONT EUX QUI me l'ont rapporté?	It is they who have related it to me?
SONT-CE là des signes d'opulence ou d'indigence?	Are these proofs of opulence or indigence?
EST-CE eux QUI l'ont fait?	Is it they who have done it?
Sont-ce eux qui l'ont fait, would be unpleasant to the ear.	

\* Say, There were but seven months that Mr. N. learned French, &c. *Il n'y avoit que sept mois, &c.*

† See rule 18, page 322, and say, *There will be two months, the tenth of the month next that Thomas is, &c.*

## EXERCISE.

It is prosperity which commonly makes men haughty  
*prosperité, f. généralement rendre*  
 and proud; but it is adversity that makes them wise  
*orgueilleux*

——It was the custom among the Spartans to  
*coutume, f. chez Spartiate, m. de*  
 inure their children early to the fatigues  
*endurcir de bonne heure travail, m. pl.*  
 of war.——It is not I who occasioned the quarrel, it is  
*querelle, f.*

you who began it.——It was envy that caused  
*avez commencée pret. def. envie, f. causer*  
 the first murder.——Is it not you who wrote to Miss  
*meurtre, m. avez écrit*  
 A.? No; it is Miss Rose's sister.——If you do not

succeed, it will not be my fault.——If you (were to lose)  
*réussir faute, f. perdriez*  
 the friendship of your parents, it would be the greatest

misfortune that ever could happen to you.——It  
*malheur, m. jamais pût*  
 is my friend who told me that it was your father whom  
*dire*  
 we saw yesterday.——Speak to my brothers, for it is they

who have done it.——Why do you not accuse my  
*pourquoi*  
 sisters?——It is they who have done all the mischief.——  
*mal, m.*

You blame my aunts; but is it they who have offended  
*blâmer tante offenser*  
 you?——Is it they who are in the wrong?——Is it those  
*ont tort*  
 gentlemen who have insulted you?

RULE 20.—*He, she, they, or those*, taken in a general sense; and either immediately or not followed by *who*, *whom*, or *that*, are often translated into French by the impersonal verb *c'est*, which must be followed by the verb expressing the principal affirmation contained in the sen-



tence ; this verb is to be put in the *present* of the *infinitive* ; *que de* comes immediately after, and the next verb must also be put in the *present* of the *infinitive*. If the sentence is negative *c'est ne pas* is to be used. Ex.

C'EST être fou QUE DE He is a fool who loses his  
perdre le temps à des time in trifles ; that is to  
bagatelles, say ; it is to be a fool, &c.  
C'EST NE PAS goûter les Those who love nobody do  
douceurs de l'amitié que de not enjoy the pleasures of  
n'aimer personne, friendship.

EXERCISE.

He is a blind man who does not perceive all the  
aveugle dangers which surround us in this deceitful<sup>2</sup> world<sup>1</sup>.——  
environner trompeur  
Those who are satisfied with their lot are happy.\*——  
content de son sort, m.  
He does not know the court, who relies on the pro-  
connoître cour, f. se fier aux  
mises which (are made) there.——They are strangers to  
on fait  
the charms of society who shun company.——They are  
fuir  
idle who do not know the value of time.——They  
connoître prix, m.  
obey the commands of God who love their neighbour,†  
son prochain, m. sing.  
and do not reproach him with his small defects.——He is  
lui ses  
not a Christian who seeks to hurt his neighbour, and  
à nuire à prochain  
speaks ill of him on all occasions.——Those who neglect  
dans négliger  
study do not understand their own interests.‡  
propre

\* The principal affirmation is this, *those are happy* ; therefore the sentence is to begin thus : *c'est être heureux*, &c.

† *Prochain*, meaning *neighbour*, is always used in the singular, in French as well as in English.

‡ The principal affirmation is this, *those do not understand their own interests*. Turn, therefore, the sentence thus to translate it into French : *It is not to understand our own interest*, &c. C'EST NE PAS CONNOÎTRE NOTRE,....QUE,....DE,

**RULE 21.**—1st. The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal, whenever it is followed by a *noun adjective*, which does not relate to *any object mentioned before*; in which case the verb is to be preceded by the pronoun *il*. Ex.

*Il est étonnant de vous voir si gai au milieu de tant de sujets de chagrin,*      It is surprising to see you so gay in the midst of so many causes of grief.

2dly. But if the adjective, without qualifying any preceding noun or pronoun, relates to something mentioned before, the English pronoun *it* must be translated into French by *ce* or *cela*. Ex.

*Avez-vous ouï dire que Monsieur Ricamier est ruiné? Non; c'est presque incroyable, ou cela est presque incroyable,*      Have you heard that Mr. Ricamier is ruined? No; it is almost incredible.

3dly. The verb *to be*, when used in English to denote the state of the weather, must be rendered in French by the *third person singular* of the verb *faire*, to make, to do, which verb then becomes impersonal. Ex.

*Il fait beau temps,*      It is fine weather.  
*Ne fait-il pas chaud?*      Is it not hot?

#### EXERCISE.

It is surprising to see you so lazy and inattentive after \*  
*étonnant de* *après*  
having been punished<sup>2</sup> severely<sup>1</sup> for these faults.—It is  
*sévèrement*  
always dangerous (to keep company with) people without any principle of religion.—Do you know that Lord  
*de fréquenter* *des gens*  
*aucun principe* *savoir*  
Liverpool (is not expected to live)?—Yes, I do; and  
*est mourant*  
it is surprising,† for he was so well yesterday.—Does  
*se porter*

\* The preposition *après* governs the following verb in the *present* of the *infinitive mood*.

† See the above Rule, Part 2.

it rain? No, Sir; it is fine weather.——Is it not  
*Monsieur*  
 very cold? It is neither cold nor hot; it is a high wind,  
*froid? ni ni grand*  
 and I think it will soon<sup>1</sup> freeze<sup>1</sup>.——It is not so cold as it  
*penser bientôt*  
 was at the beginning of this month.——Do you think  
*commencement*  
 it is hotter in Italy than here?  
 (subj.)

---

FALLOIR, *to be needful, to be necessary.*

*Observation.*—This verb being impersonal in French, and therefore admitting no subject but the pronoun *il*, offers to the learners serious difficulties, which I shall endeavour to explain in the rules that will follow its conjugation. It is often translated into English by the verb *must*, preceded by one of the personal pronouns, or by a noun; but the French requires it to be changed into *to be needful that*, and the subject of *must* becomes that of the following verb, which is to be put in the subjunctive mood. In order to make this observation as intelligible as possible to the learner, I shall conjugate *Falloir* with an additional verb.

THE IMPERSONAL VERB, FALLOIR, *to be needful, to be necessary.*

*Infinitive Mood.*

Pres. *Falloir*, to be needful.

The part. act. is wanting.

Part. past. *Fallu*, been needful.

*Indicative Mood.*

Present.

<i>Il faut que je fasse,</i>	I must do.
<i>Il faut que tu fasses,</i>	Thou must do.
<i>Il faut qu'il fasse,</i>	He must do.
<i>Il faut que nous fassions,</i>	We must do.
<i>Il faut que vous fassiez,</i>	You must do.
<i>Il faut qu'ils fassent,</i>	They must do.

That is to say, *it is needful that*, &c.

## Imperfect.

*Il falloit que je le fisse,*      It was necessary for me to do it.

*Il falloit que nous écrivissions,*      It was necessary for us to write.

## Preterite.

*Il fallut qu'il partît,*      He was obliged to set out.

## Future.

*Il faudra qu'il vienne,*      He shall be obliged to come, he must come.

## Conditional Present.

*Il faudroit que nous allassions,*      It would be necessary for us to go, or we should go.

## Subjunctive Mood.

## Present.

*Qu'il fuille,*      That it may be necessary.

## Imperfect.

*Qu'il fallût,*      That it might be necessary.

## Negatively.

*Il ne faut pas que je fasse,*      I must not do.

*Il ne faut pas que vous fussiez,*      You must not do.

*Il ne faut pas que nous fassions,*      We must not do.

*Il ne faut pas qu'ils partent,*      They must not set off.

## Interrogatively.

*Faut-il que je fasse?*      Must I do?

*Faut-il que vous fassiez,*      Must you do?

*Ne faut-il pas que je fusse?*      Must I not do?

*Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez?*      Must you not do?

The compounds of this verb are formed by adding its participle past to the third person singular of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have; which must be preceded by the pronoun *il*. Ex.

*Il a fallu; il avoit fallu; il eut fallu, &c.*

**RULE 22.**—1. When the verb *falloir*, being followed by the conjunction *que*, is in the *present*, or in the *future* of the indicative mood, it governs the next verb in the present of the subjunctive.

2. When the verb *falloir*, followed by the conjunction *que*, is in the *imperfect*, *preterite*, or *conditional present* of the indicative mood, the verb it governs must be put in the *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*. Ex.

*Il faut que je fasse,*  
*Il faudra que je fasse,*

I must do?  
I shall be obliged to do, or  
*it will be necessary for me*  
*to do.*

*Il falloit, or il fallut que je*  
*parlasse,*

I was obliged to speak, or  
it was necessary for me  
to speak.

*Il faudroit que je vendisse,*

I should be obliged to sell!

EXERCISE.

If you go to Coxheath to-day you must come  
*aujourd'hui*  
back to-morrow.\*—You may go to London this  
*revenir* *pouvoir*  
morning, but remember that you must be back at  
*de retour*  
three o'clock.—You must get up to-morrow morning  
*heures* *se lever*  
at four o'clock.—Custom must not always prevail over  
*sur*  
reason.—Shall I be obliged to carry them there?—  
*falloir* *mener*  
Must I not show you my work?—If he wished to  
*montrer* *ouvrage, m.* *vouloit*  
pay his debts, he would be obliged to sell all his  
*dette, m.* *falloir*  
property.—If your brothers do not cease to quarrel,  
*bien, m.* *cesser de quereller,*  
it will be necessary for them to part.†—It is impossi-  
*se séparer*  
ble for you to succeed in that undertaking; all your  
*que* *réussir, subj.* *entreprise, f.*  
friends oppose it.  
*s'opposer y*

\* Read the observation page 327.

† Say, it will be necessary that they part; *il faudra qu'ils se séparent,*

**RULE 23.**—When the adjectives *necessary, needful, NÉCESSAIRE; good, BON; impossible, IMPOSSIBLE; difficult, DIFFICILE*, being joined to the verb *to be, ÊTRE*, conjugated impersonally, as well as these expressions, *to be expedient, to be proper, ÊTRE À PROPOS, to be better, VALOIR MIEUX*, are followed by the preposition *for*: this preposition is not to be translated, and the noun or pronoun it governs becomes the subject of the following verb, which must be put in the *subjunctive mood*. As to the tense in which it is to be put, consult, and follow the Rule 22, page 325. **Ex.**

*Il n'est pas bon que vous restiez seul,*

It is not good for you to be left alone.

*Il vaut mieux que vous ayez la compagnie de quelques amis,*

It is better for you to have the company of a few friends.

#### EXERCISE.

It is difficult for you to improve,\* if you do not  
*faire des progrès,*  
 apply better to study.——It is impossible for  
*s'appliquer davantage.*  
 you to succeed, unless you take more<sup>2</sup> convenient<sup>3</sup>  
*à moins que-ne, subj. convenable*  
 measures.<sup>1</sup>——It would be expedient\* for you to read  
*à propos que*  
 this book from the beginning to the end.——Be-  
*depuis jusqu'à fin, f.*  
 lieve me, it is better for you to go there to-mor-  
*valoir mieux*  
 row, for it will soon snow.——Will it not be better  
*car bientôt*  
 for me to be at school\* too soon than too late?——  
*tôt tard.*  
 Would it not be better for him to go and speak to them  
 himself than to send his servant?——It is good for us  
*de domestique, m. or f. que*  
 to help one another in our troubles.  
*s'aider peine, f.*

\* See Rule 22, page 325, as these modes of speaking *être à propos, être nécessaire, être impossible, que, &c.* follow the same rules as to the government of the following verb.

**RULE 24.**—If the verb *must* is used before the verb *to have*, and this is immediately followed by a *noun substantive*, **MUST** may be translated by *falloir*, without expressing the verb *to have*. But, then, the *noun* or *pronoun* which stands as *subject* to *must* becomes its *indirect object*. If that *subject* is a *noun*, it is to be placed after *falloir*, and be preceded by the preposition *à*; if it is a personal pronoun, it is to be rendered by *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, or *leur*, according to its number and person, and be placed before the verb *falloir*.—The verb *to want*, being immediately followed by a *substantive*, follows the same rule when translated by *falloir*. Ex.

<i>Il faut un chapeau neuf à</i>	Your brother <i>must have</i> , or
<i>votre frère,</i>	<i>wants</i> a new hat.
<i>Il vous faut des livres,</i>	You <i>must have</i> , or you
	<i>want</i> books.
<i>Il me faudra bientôt du</i>	I <i>must soon have</i> some
<i>papier,</i>	<i>paper.</i>

**Observation.**—Should the verb *to have* be expressed in French, it must be put in the subjunctive mood. Ex.

<i>Il faut que votre frère ait</i>	Your brother <i>must have</i> a
<i>un chapeau neuf,</i>	<i>new hat.</i>
<i>Il faut que vous ayez des</i>	You <i>must have</i> books.
<i>livres,</i>	

The former mode of speaking is more elegant than the latter.

EXERCISE.

I shall want paper, pens, and ink.—What do you  
*falloir*  
 want? I want nothing for the present, but I think I shall  
*à* *penser*  
 soon want a French grammar.—My brother has an  
 old hat, and he will soon want a new one.—If  
*vieux* *nouveau*  
 you like to speak much, you must have (a good deal) of  
*aimez à* *bien*  
 circumspection not to (speak ill) of others.—Since  
*retenue, f.* *pour ne pas médire* *Puisque*  
 I cannot find my book, I must have another.—We shall

want a (great deal) of patience to succeed in our under-  
*beaucoup*  
 taking.—My brothers have lost their buckles, they  
*boucle, f.*  
 must have others.

## ON THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

## ON,

when it is used in French to change into the *active voice* verbs used in the *passive voice* in English.

RULE 25.—When the action expressed in English by a *passive verb* is mentioned in a vague, indeterminate way with respect to those who do, have done, or will do it, the English *passive verb* is changed in French into an *active* one, and the pronoun indefinite *on*, one, is given to the verb for its subject; if the verb is not *impersonal* in English, the noun or pronoun which stands as its *subject* will become its *object* in French.—*On*, meaning *one*, governs the verb in the *third person singular*. Ex.

<i>On dit,</i>	It is said.
<i>On a rapporté,</i>	It has been reported.
<i>On m'a dit,</i>	I have been told.
<i>On m'a permis de chanter,</i>	I have been allowed to sing.
<i>On lui a défendu de sortir,</i>	He has been forbidden to go out.
<i>On a dit à votre frère,</i>	Your brother has been told.
<i>On dira à nos enfans,</i>	Our children will be told.

## EXERCISE.

In time of war peace is always spoken of.\*—Where  
*En*  
 is your brother? It is not known; for we have not heard  
*le savoir*  
 of him these two years.†—The death of the invincible  
*mort, f.*  
 admiral Lord Nelson is daily lamented, and will  
*tous les jours regretter*  
 be so a long time.‡—I was told yesterday that your  
*la son*

\* Say, *one speaks always of peace.*

† Say, *for we have not had of his news since two years.*

‡ Say, *one laments every day the death of, &c., and one will lament it long time.*



brother has been punished for his idleness ; had your father  
 been told of it, \* he would have been very angry with  
 him. As soon as your book be printed, people (will  
 be eager to) buy it, and it will be read with avidity.  
 —Learned men are found in vilages as well as in large  
 towns.——It is reported on all sides that we shall soon  
 have peace ; but the news has not yet been received, †  
 though it is ardently (wished for), ‡ however, it is thought  
 that the secret expedition will sail in a few days.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE IMPERSONAL  
 VERBS.

There is no going out to-day, it rains in torrents. §——  
 Do not make so much noise, there is no hearing one  
 another.——Is it cold this morning ? Yes, Sir, it is very  
 cold ; however, I have been told it is not so cold as it was  
 yesterday.——The weather is very inconstant in this  
 country : it was very hot yesterday, it is excessively cold  
 to-day ; it froze this morning, it hailed at noon, it rained  
 at four o'clock, and now it drizzles.——It sometimes  
 lightens when it does not thunder, but as often as it

\* Say, if one had told it to your father, &c.

† Say, but<sup>1</sup> one<sup>2</sup> has<sup>3</sup> not<sup>4</sup> yet<sup>5</sup> received<sup>6</sup> the<sup>7</sup> news<sup>10</sup> (of<sup>4</sup> it.)

‡ Say, though one wishes it ardently.

§ Say one cannot go out &c. On ne sauroit sortir, &c.

thunders it lightens.—If it be fine weather next week \* I shall go to London, but if it be bad weather I shall stay at home.

—It is (a pleasure) to see bees coming out of their hives when it is a sunny day.—Had I known you were returned from the continent, † I would have gone to see you long ago.—My father and mother were told you were in England ten years ago, but you neither saw nor wrote to them. ‡ —Every body agrees there are fine women in (Great Britain). —It greatly concerns children to avoid bad company. —If there were any real virtue in the world, should we (meet with) so many false friends! —If he behaved well, there would not be a man (in the world) that I should esteem more. —

No object is more pleasing to the eye than the sight of a man whom we have obliged, || (nor is any) music so agreeable to the ear as the voice of a man who owns us for his benefactors. —It is a sad thing to see unfortunate people, and be unable to relieve them.

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

—It is a sad thing to see unfortunate people, and be unable to relieve them.

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

—Those who support the conduct of idle and obsti-

\* Recollect that a future action expressed in English, with the assistance of the conjunction *if*, must be rendered into French by the present of the indicative mood.

† Say, *if I had known that.*

‡ Say, *but you did not see them, and did not write to them.*

|| Say, *no object that pleases more.* PAS D'OBJET QUI PLAISE PLUS.

nate scholars, make themselves contemptible.\*  
*se rendre en méprisable.*

They are not acquainted † with the human heart, who  
*connoître*

rely upon the promises of men. ‡ — You have  
*faire fond*

already been told that nobody in the world has prepos-  
*déjà*

sessed me against you ; how many times must I repeat it  
*contre*

to you ? — I was told yesterday that you were very ill ;

but I am truly glad to see you so well to-day. —  
*fort de bien portant*

There is no persuading you when you are resolved  
*avez*

not to believe ‖ what you are told. — More<sup>2</sup> vir-  
*de ne pas en*

tue<sup>3</sup> (is requisite<sup>1</sup>) to support prosperity than adversity.  
*il faut pour*

—— Much art and nicety are required to please  
*délicatesse, f. pour*

every body. — It little matters whether it be my servant  
*à en peu importe que ce soit*

or your's who carries the letter to the post. — You must  
*porter poste, f.*

honour your father and mother if you will live long and  
*vouloir*

happy. — It is more glorious to conquer our passions  
*de vaincre*

than to conquer the whole world. — Sir, I want a  
*de conquérir entier il me faut*

pair of boots ; have you any in your shop that (will  
*en boutique, f.*

suit) me ? — It is reported that the Russians have  
*conviennent Russe*

beaten the Turks ; it is said so, but it is not yet known  
*Turc ; le, encore*

\* See Rule 20, page 324, and read it attentively.

† The verb *acquainted* being translated into French by the present of the infinitive mood, both parts of the negation *ne pas* are to be placed before the verb. Say, then, *c'est ne pas connoître*.

‡ See Rule 20, p. 324.

‖ See the above note, †.

for certain. It is thought that Sweden has declared war  
 against France. It is true; but it is much feared that  
 the Swedes will be beaten, though they fight most  
 courageously.—Have the letters which were expected  
 yesterday been received? \* No; but the mail is arrived,  
 and they will be delivered this morning. †

## OF PARTICIPLES.

The *participle* is so called because it partakes of the nature of the verb and of the adjective: of the *verb* as it has its signification and object; of the adjective as it expresses a quality.

There are two *participles*, the *participle active* and the *participle past*.

*Of the PARTICIPLE ACTIVE and VERBAL ADJECTIVE.*

The *participle active* always ends in French with these letters, *ant*, and in English with *ing*. Ex. *Parlant*, speaking; *punissant*, punishing, &c.

RULE 26.—The *participle active* is always indeclinable; it admits of no variation as to gender or number. It generally expresses either an *action*, as *écrivaint*, writing, *marchant*, walking, or an operation of the mind, as *pensant*, thinking, &c. Ex.

<p><i>J'ai souvent vu cette bonne          mère CARESSANT son en-          fant, adresser ses prières          au ciel,          Nous nous promenions, SON-          GEANT à nos malheurs,</i></p>	<p>I have often seen that          good mother whilst caress-          ing her child, offer her          prayers to heaven.          We were walking, thinking          of our misfortunes.</p>
--	---

*Observation.*—The *verbal adjective*, which is nothing else but an adjective derived from the verb, the signi-

\* Say, *has one received the letters which one expected yesterday.*

† Say, *and one will deliver them, &c.*

fication of which it expresses, is to be carefully distinguished from the *participle active*, from which it only differs by being declinable, when, on the contrary, the *participle active* is invariable: they may, therefore, offer some difficulties. Yet let the learner pay attention to the following rule, and they will soon vanish.

**RULE 27.**—1st. The *verbal adjective* expresses either a *quality* belonging to the substantive it modifies, or an *aptitude* or *disposition* to act rather than an *action*. Always acting as an adjective, it takes the gender and number of the substantive it qualifies.

2dly. The *verbal adjective* never governs a *direct object*. Ex.

<i>L'enfant que vous voyez fait</i>	The child whom you see,
<i>le bonheur de cette mère</i>	constitutes the happiness
<i>'caressante et aimante,</i>	of that caressing and lov-
	ing mother.

3dly. The participles *ayant* and *étant* never can become *verbal adjectives*; they are therefore always invariable.

#### EXERCISE ON THE TWO LAST RULES 26 AND 27.

(All the verbal adjectives shall be marked thus, adj.)

The persons whom you saw with us are people <sup>fearing</sup> *gens, pl.*  
 God and loving virtue.—She met your father (as she <sup>en</sup>  
 was) coming here.—We were told (the day before yes-  
 terday) that your sister remembering the injuries received <sup>avant-hier</sup>  
 from your brother refused to see him.—Brutus saw his <sup>se ressouvenir</sup>  
 two sons expiring by his orders.—He hears the ser-  
 pents, and fancies <sup>s'imaginer</sup> he sees them creeping around him. <sup>ramper</sup>  
 —That reflection <sup>embarrasser</sup> perplexing the good man, he

said, &c.—He inherited all the property belonging to  
*hériter de* biens, pl. adj.

his uncle.—He heard that several of his officers be-  
*apprendre*

longing to families of the highest rank meditated treason.—  
 adj. *méditer une trahison*, f.

Geography and chronology being the two eyes of history,  
 —ie, f. —ie, f.

(we should,) (in order to) study well the latter, be  
*il faut pour celle-ci être*

guided by the former.—Will he desert that poor  
*celles-là*.

unfortunate woman when she is dying on these burning  
*malheureuse* adj. *brulant*, adj.

sands?—Your aunt having given the necessary<sup>2</sup> orders<sup>1</sup>  
*sable*, m.

to your cousins, set out immediately for London.—

Look at those lambs which are skipping in that  
*Regarder* agneau, m. *bondir*

meadow.—Do you see those animals languishing with  
*prairie*, f. adj. *de*

thirst, and drinking (on the) margin of that limpid<sup>2</sup>  
*au bord*, m.

brook<sup>1</sup>.

*ruisseau*, m.

*On the Participle Active governed in English by*  
 PREPOSITIONS, or the Article THE.

RULE 23.—All prepositions that govern in English the  
 verb in the *participle active* govern it in French in the *pre-*  
*sent of the infinitive*: the preposition *en* is the only one  
 excepted. It requires the verb to be put in French, as it  
 is in English, in the *participle active*. Ex.

Sortirai-je SANS lui PAR-  
 LER?

Il sera heureux APRÈS AVOIR  
 rempli ce devoir sacré,

Je vous le dirai EN vous  
 QUITTANT.

Shall I set off without speak-  
 ing to him?

He will be happy after hav-  
 ing fulfilled that sacred  
 duty.

I will tell it you on my leav-  
 ing you.

*Observation.*—The *participle active* is sometimes used in English as a substantive, and as such it is preceded by the article *the*. In that case, if the French language has a corresponding substantive, it takes the place of the verb; sometimes also the verb itself is used in the present of the infinitive, but the English article is to be suppressed. If there is not in the French language a substantive corresponding to the verb used substantively in English, that verb must be put in French in the present of the infinitive. Ex.

*La LECTURE de livres instructifs est un de ses amusemens favoris,*

*La DÉFENSE d'une mauvaise cause est pire que la cause elle-même,*

*Or, DÉFENDRE une mauvaise cause est pire que la cause elle-même,*

*The reading of instructive books is one of his favourite amusements.*

*The defending of a bad cause is worse than the cause itself.*

## EXERCISE.

I assure you there is a great deal of pleasure in teaching diligent scholars.——We are told there will <sup>à</sup> *enseigner*

not be so much danger in travelling as there was <sup>à voyager que en avoit</sup> before.——There is a real advantage in being <sup>à</sup> *auparavant*.

learned, but science must not create pride.——Louis the <sup>savant</sup> *inspîrer*

Great had especially the superior and rare talent of know- <sup>surtout</sup>

ing and choosing men of merit.——He left the house with-

out seeing his father, and even without speaking to his <sup>même</sup>

mother.——He was hanged for having robbed Mr. D.—— <sup>fut pendre</sup>

I should despise a man who would be capable of deceiv- <sup>mépriser</sup>

ing his friends.——After having (waited for) her a long <sup>attendre</sup>

while, she (sent me word) that she was not ready to go  
*m'envoya dire* *prêt à*  
 out.—She spends all her time in reading or writing.—  
*passer*

My mother takes an infinite pleasure in admiring the  
*à*  
 situation of your house.—The grace of God will  
*situation, f.*

always keep us from sinning.—I often admire the  
*empêcher* *pécher*

rising and setting of the sun.—The defending of  
*lever, m.* *coucher, m.* *soleil, m.* *défense*

a bad cause is worse than the cause itself.  
*mauvais*

#### ON THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

The participle past may be conjugated either with the verb *être*, to be, or the verb *avoir*, to have.

#### THE PARTICIPLE PAST CONJUGATED WITH THE VERB ÊTRE.

RULE 29.—The participles past of all *passive verbs*, as well as those of *neuter verbs*, which are conjugated with the verb *être*, to be, are declinable, and always take the *gender* and *number* of the nouns or pronouns that stand as their subjects. To this rule there is no exception. Ex.

<i>La timide vertu</i> EST TROP	Timid virtue is too often
<i>souvent OPPRIMÉE,</i>	oppressed.
<i>Tous les beaux arts</i> SONT	All the fine arts owe their
<i>NÉS à l'ombre des lois,</i>	birth to the protection of
	the laws.
<i>Elle</i> EST AIMÉE,	She is loved.
<i>Mes frères</i> SERONT PUNIS,	My brothers will be pu-
	nished.
<i>Mes sœurs</i> SONT PARTIES,	My sisters are gone.

#### EXERCISE.

I have been told \* your brother-in-law is gone to  
 the continent: have I been told the truth? \* *parti pour* —I have



not seen your mother since she arrived from France ;  
 does she appear satisfied with her journey ?—My bro-  
 thers are gone to Dover, and intend to pay you  
 a visit when they are (come back).—The  
 houses which are built (in the) winter are not so wholesome  
 as those which are begun (in the) spring and finished (in the)  
 middle of summer.—The wicked are always tormented,  
 and the righteous are comforted by their own conscience.  
 —Virtuous<sup>2</sup> people<sup>1</sup> are esteemed and respected by  
 those who are so, and even (by the) wicked.—I assure  
 you that Mr. Brown's wife is much afflicted at the death  
 of her husband, and her sons are as much affected (by it)  
 as she.—We are at last come to that great empire which  
 has swallowed all the empires of the universe, from which  
 have sprung the largest kingdoms of the world.

*Observation.*—All the *reflected* and *reciprocal verbs* are always conjugated in their compound tenses with the verb *être*, to be ; but as it is then used in the acceptation of the verb *avoir*, to have, their participles past are not always declinable : they follow the rules of the *active verbs* to which they belong.

*The PARTICIPLE PAST conjugated with the Verb AVOIR, to have ; or with the Verb ÊTRE, used in the Acceptation of the Verb AVOIR, to have.*

**RULE 30.**—The *participle past*, when conjugated with the verb *avoir*, as well as that of the *reflected* and *reci-*

*procal* verbs, which is always conjugated with the verb *être*, are *declinable*, and take the gender and number of their *direct object* whenever they are preceded by it.

*Observation 1.*—I beg of the learner to recollect that the *direct object*, when it precedes the participle, is always one of these pronouns *me, te, se, le, la, les, nous, vous*, or *que*, and sometimes a *noun* preceded by *quel, combien de*, or *que de*, meaning *combien de*, how much, how many. The learner must also recollect that *me, te, se, nous, vous*, may mean either *me, thee, himself, us, you*, and, if so, they are *direct objects*; or *to me, to thee, to himself, to us, to you*, and, in that case, they are *indirect objects*.

2. The clearest idea must be formed of the *direct* and *indirect objects*, or the difficulties offered by the participle past can never be conquered. In order to throw proper light upon the subject, I shall say, the answer to the question *whom* for the *person*, and *what* for the *thing*, will invariably give the *direct object*. Take, therefore, the *subject* of the *auxiliary verb*, the *auxiliary verb itself*, and the *participle*, and ask, if the sentence allows it, the question *whom?* where the *object* is expressive of a *person*, and *what?* when it represents a *thing*; the answer will point out the *direct object*. Observe, then, whether your answer is placed in French before, or after the participle. If it is placed before it, the participle is *declinable*, and must agree with it in gender and number; if it is placed after the participle, that participle is *indeclinable*.

Should it happen that you cannot ask the question *whom?* or *what?* or that you want the help of a preposition to ask it, conclude immediately that the participle is *indeclinable*. Ex.

Si Dieu nous à distingués  
des autres animaux, c'est  
surtout par le don de la  
parole,

Les meilleures harangues sont  
celles QUE le cœur a dic-  
TÉES,

QUE DE SOLDATS or COM-  
BIEN DE SOLDATS j'ai vus  
en venant ici,

If God has distinguished us  
from other animals, it is  
most particularly by the  
gift of speech.

The best orations are those  
which the heart has dic-  
tated..

How many soldiers I have  
seen in coming here.

<i>Le cœur a DICTÉ LES MEIL-</i>	The heart has dictated the
<i>LEURES HARANGUES,</i>	best orations.
<i>Combien de soldats ont PÉRI !</i>	How many soldiers have
	perished !
<i>Le roi NOUS a PARLÉ,</i>	The king has spoken to us.
<i>Ils se sont loués,</i>	They have praised them-
	selves.

Now let us ask the proper questions, and look for the direct objects in the above sentences.

Sentence 1. *God has distinguished*—WHOM? *nous*, us. *Nous*, which is the answer to the question, precedes the participle, therefore it is *declinable*.

2. *The heart has dictated*—WHAT? *les meilleures harangues*, that is to say, *que*, which, a pronoun relative that takes the place of *the best orations*: *que* precedes the participle, and makes it *declinable*.

3. *I have seen*—WHOM? *soldiers*. *Soldats* precedes the participle, therefore it is *declinable*.

4. *The heart has dictated*—WHAT? *les meilleures harangues*. Your answer to *what* comes after the participle, therefore it is *indeclinable*.

5. How many soldiers have perished. Can you ask this question, *have perished, whom?* or *what?* No: conclude that the participle *péri* is *indeclinable*. Besides the verb, *péri* is a *neuter verb*, and *neuter verbs* never govern a *direct object* except when they are *reflected*.

6. The king has spoken. Can you ask this question, *spoken, whom?* or *has spoken, what?* No: therefore the participle *parlé* is *indeclinable*. *Parler*, to speak, is a *neuter verb*, it cannot have a *direct object*. The question to be asked with the verb *parler* should be *to whom*, or *of what*, or *of whom*. In the above sentence it is *to whom?* and the answer must be *to us*, an *indirect object*.

7. They have praised—WHOM? *se*, themselves. *Se* precedes the participle, therefore *loués* is *declinable*.—See *Observation 3* on the *subject and object* of the verb, p. 71.

## EXERCISE.

(Read attentively the last Rule.)

I spoke to your brother this morning, and desired  
*Ai parlé*  
 him to come and dine with us to-morrow.—The reso-

lution which she has taken of going into the country  
 surprises me very much: I have spoken to her myself;  
*étonner*  
 but I have not been able *pouvoir* to learn the reasons which  
 have induced her (to it).—Miss Farren was an excellent  
*engager* *y*  
 actress; I have seen her perform several times.—I am  
*actrice, f.*  
 very sorry for the trouble that affair has given to your  
*fâché de* *peine, f.*  
 aunt.—If you can come with me, I will shew you the  
*tante, f.* *montrer*  
 lady whom I have heard sing.—What stuff have you  
*entendre*  
 chosen?—The letter which you have written to me in  
*choisi*  
 French was tolerably well written; I have shewn it to  
*passablement*  
 your aunt, who is much pleased (with it).—I have not yet  
*très content en*  
 received the goods which you sent me by the  
*marchandise, f.* *pret. ind.*  
 ship Goodwill.—Ladies, have you returned him  
*vaisseau, m.* *rendre*  
 the letters which he had desired you to read?—Where  
*prier*  
 did you buy those gloves? I bought them in France.  
*avez-vous acheter* *pret. ind.*  
 —Alexander conquered Asia with the troops which  
*troupe, f.*  
 his father Philip had disciplined.—The faults which he  
 had committed greatly increased his prudence.—He  
*beaucoup augmenter*  
 has spent all the treasures which his father had amassed  
*trésor, m.*  
 with so much care and labour.—I shall never forget the  
*fatigue* *oublier*  
 good services which you have done to my mother.—  
*service, m.* *rendre*  
 Of all the letters which my brother has received

to-day, there is not one (of them) for me.——The  
*aujourd'hui*  
 reasons which you have given us have satisfied us.——

What books have you lost? ——The fine actions your  
*satisfaire*  
*beau*

brothers have done in America, deserve great praises,  
*faire* *mériter* *louange, f.*  
 and ought to be transmitted to posterity.——The three  
*devoir*

country<sup>2</sup>-houses<sup>1</sup> which your father is said to have  
*maison de*  
 bought\* are extremely fine and well situated.——The

soldiers whom they obliged to set out, are (come<sup>2</sup> back)  
*soldat, m.* *revenir*

already<sup>1</sup>——My sisters have quarrelled the<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> day,<sup>3</sup>  
*se quereller*

but are now reconciled.

*Observation*—1. Whenever the participle past, being conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and preceded by a direct object, is immediatly followed by a verb in the infinitive, ask the questions specified in the 2d observation that follows rule 30; and the difficulty will soon vanish. You will immediately see whether the direct object is governed by the participle, or by the verb that follows it. If it is governed by the verb that follows the participle, that participle remains *indeclinable*.

2. If the participle is an active verb, and the verb in the infinitive a neuter one, there can be no difficulty; as a neuter verb, conjugated with *avoir*, can not have a direct object. The participle is then declinable.

3. If on the contrary the participle is a neuter verb, and the verb in the infinitive an active one, the direct object is necessarily governed by the latter, and the participle is *indeclinable*.

**RULE 31.**—When a *participle past*, conjugated with the verb *avoir*, is preceded by a *direct object*, and immediately followed by a verb in the *infinitive*, that participle is *declinable*, if it governs the *direct object*; and *indeclinable* if the *object* is governed by the *verb* which is in the *infinitive*;

\* Turn the sentence thus: *Which one says that your father has bought.*

which government is soon discovered by asking the question *whom*, or *what*? Ex.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Plusieurs personnes se sont présentées à la porte; la sentinelle LES A LAISSÉES passer,</i>   | Several persons came to the door; the sentinel let them pass.  |
| 2. <i>La guerre ne se faisoit pas autrefois comme nous l'avons vu FAIRE sous le règne de Louis quatorze,</i>  | War was not carried on formerly as we saw it done during the reign of Louis the fourteenth.  |
| 3. <i>Je vous envoie les livres QUE vous avez paru DÉSIRER,</i>   | I send you the books which you seemed to wish for.   |
| 4. <i>C'est une belle chanson; je l'ai entendu CHANTER, C'est une excellente chanteuse; je l'ai ENTENDUE chanter plusieurs fois, Mademoiselle D. QUE j'ai VUE peindre ce matin, &amp;c. Les paysages QUE j'ai vu peindre,</i> | It is a fine song; I have heard it sung. She is an excellent singer; I have heard her sing several times. Miss D. whom I saw paint this morning, &c. The landscapes which I have seen drawn. |

APPLICATION of the QUESTIONS *WHOM* and *WHAT* to the above examples.

EXAMPLES.—1. *La sentinelle a laissées*—WHOM? *les*, them; do—WHAT, *passer*. *Les* is the direct object of the participle, and precedes it; therefore it is *declinable*. Besides, *passer* being a *neuter* verb, it cannot have a *direct object*.

2. *Nous avons vu*—WHAT? *faire*. *Faire*—WHAT? *la guerre*; that is to say, *la*, it, which takes the place of war. The answer to *what*? is *faire*; therefore the direct object of the participle follows instead of preceding it. Conclude that the pronoun *la* is governed by the verb *faire*, and that the participle is *indeclinable*.

3. *Vous avez paru*—WHAT? *désirer*—WHAT? *les livres*; that is to say *que*, which. The answer to the first question, *what*?, is *désirer*; it comes after the participle; therefore it is *indeclinable*.

4. *J'ai entendu*—WHOM? *quelqu'un* (which is in ellipsis) do—WHAT? *chanter*—WHAT? *la*, it; that is to say, *la chan-*

son. The answer to *whom?* is *quelqu'un*; it is in ellipsis after the participle; *la*, it, is the object of *chanter*; therefore the participle is *indeclinable*.

5. *J'ai entendue*—WHOM? *la*, her. The answer to *whom?* is *la*, her, which is the *direct* object of *entendue*; therefore that participle is *declinable*.

6. *J'ai vue*—WHOM? *que*, that is to say, *Mademoiselle D.*, do—WHAT? *peindre*. The answer to *whom?* is *que*, that is to say, *Mademoiselle D.* It is the *direct* object of the participle *vue*; therefore it is *declinable*.

7th. *J'ai vu*—WHOM? *quelqu'un* (this pronoun is in ellipsis) do—WHAT? *peindre*—WHAT? *que*; that is to say *les paysages*. The answer to the question *whom?* is *quelqu'un*, which is understood *after* the participle; *quelqu'un* is its *direct* object; *que* is governed by *peindre* and not by the *participle*; therefore *vu* is *indeclinable*.

#### EXERCISE on the 31st Rule.

I cannot forget the good actions which I have seen you do—The goods which you ordered me to send, are arrived; permit me to show you the letters which we have received from Germany.—The fable which I gave you to translate is not difficult.—Have you already read the books which I saw you buying? not yet, for I have sent them to my sister who is in the country.—I have bought the clothes for which you saw me bargaining.—The history which I have begun to read, is not entertaining.—She has written more books than you have ever read.—The lady whom I saw singing is handsome and young; and the song which I have heard sung is the best, as to words and music, that your

brother ever wrote—Miss B. has spent two or three  
 pret. ind. *passer*  
 days with your sisters, and saw<sup>2</sup> their<sup>1</sup> (picture drawn);  
*a vu les peindre*  
 their cousins were in the next<sup>2</sup> room<sup>1</sup>, and my sister saw  
 —e f. *voisin* *a vu*  
 them painting in miniature.  
*en*

RULE. 32.—The *participle past* whether it be conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have, or with *être*, used in the acceptance of *avoir*, is *indeclinable* if it is preceded only by its *indirect object*. Ex.

*J'ai vu votre sœur, et je LUI* I have seen your sister, and  
*ai donné votre lettre,* have given her your  
 letter.

*Elle s'est cassé le bras,* She broke her arm.  
*Cette dame s'est donné un* That lady treated herself  
*superbe collier.* with a beautiful necklace.

EXAMPLES—1. I have seen—WHOM? *votre sœur*. The answer comes after the participle *vu*; therefore it is *indeclinable*. And I have given—WHAT? *votre lettre*. This is the *direct object*; it comes after the *participle*; therefore the participle is *indeclinable*. *Lui*, to her, is of course the *indirect object*, the preposition *to* proves it. Besides two objects; one of which represents the person, and the other the thing, cannot be direct; one of them is necessarily indirect. And when you have found out the direct object coming after the participle, let it suffice, and conclude that the participle is *indeclinable*.

2. In this second example the verb *être* is used in the acceptance of *avoir*; let us then ask this question:—She has broken—WHAT? *le bras*. The answer comes after the participle *cassé*; therefore it is *indeclinable*. *Se* is put for *to herself*, which is the *indirect object*.

3. *Cette dame a donné*, that lady has given—WHAT? *a necklace*; the answer comes after the participle; therefore *donné* is *indeclinable*. *Se* is put for *to herself*; it is the *indirect object* of the verb.

## EXERCISE.

Your sister met my mother this morning, and  
 pret. def.



gave her very bad news——Your sister has rendered  
pret. ind.

herself celebrated by her wit and beauty.——My  
*célèbre esprit, m.*

mother has bought herself a fine gown; my sister had  
*acheter*

made herself a good cloak; and my brothers had built  
*faire mantelet, m. bâtir*

themselves an elegant house.——They found themselves  
pret. ind.

surrounded by soldiers, who carried them to prison,  
*conduire, pr. ind.*

where they have been detained for eight days; but  
*retenir pendant*

they have been found innocent of the crime with which

they were accused, and are at last (acquitted.)——The  
*renvoyer absous*

city of Liverpool has rendered itself flourishing by its  
*florissant*

trade.

*commerce, m.*

RULE 33.—When the *auxiliary* verb and the *participle* past form an *impersonal* verb;\* that is to say, when they are used *impersonally*, the *participle* is indeclinable; for, not being active verbs, they can have no direct objects; therefore cannot be preceded by any. Ex.

*La grande inondation qu'il a fait. (Marmontel.)*  
*y a eu.*

*L'excessive sécheresse qu'il hiver.*  
*La disette qu'il y a eu ce*

## EXERCISE.

The rain which (we have had) has done a great deal  
*pluie f. y avoir*

of harm.——The storm which (we had) lately  
*mal, m. tempête, f. y avoir dernièrement*

has done much damage to our ships.——The heavy  
*mal, m.*

\* Let the learner recollect that a verb is known to be impersonal when the pronoun *il*, which precedes it, does not relate to any person or thing expressed before; that is to say, when we cannot substitute for that pronoun the name of a person or thing already mentioned.

showers which (we have had) this week, have prevented  
*pluie, f. y avoir empêcher*  
 me from going into the country.—The high wind  
*à campagne grand*  
 which (they have had) in the county of Kent, has  
*y avoir comté*  
 unrooted many trees.  
*déraciner*

RULE 34.—Whenever the infinitive of a verb expressed before the participle past of the verbs *devoir*, *pouvoir* and *vouloir*, is understood after the participle, this participle is indeclinable; for the verb that is in ellipsis is the direct object of the participle, and comes after it. Ex.

<i>Je vous ai montré la reconnaissance que j'ai dû,</i>	I have shown you the gratitude I ought.
<i>J'ai fait à cet enfant toutes les caresses que j'ai pu,</i>	I have given that child all the caresses I could.
<i>Ma sœur a obtenu tous les secours qu'elle a voulu,</i>	My sister has obtained all the assistance she wished.

Sentence—1. The gratitude which I ought, *que j'ai dû*—WHAT? *montrer.*

2. All the caresses I could, *que j'ai pu*—WHAT? *faire.*

3. The assistance she wished, *qu'elle a voulu*—WHAT? *obtenir.*

In all the above examples, the answers to *what?* come after the participles *dû*, *pu*, and *voulu*; they are, therefore, *indeclinable*.

#### EXERCISE.

He has obtained from the minister all the favours he wished.—You have loved your neighbour if *vouloir, pret. indef. prochain, sing.*  
 you have done him all the services you could.—  
*rendre lui pouvoir, pret. ind.*  
 I have not paid all the attention which I ought  
*faire devoir, cond. comp.*  
 to the advice your father gave me.—My son  
*avis, m. pret indef.*

(might have) improved more;\* but he has not made all  
*aurait pu profiter davantage*  
 the efforts he could.  
 cond. comp.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE PARTICIPLES  
 PAST.

I know your sisters; I have seen them and spoken to  
 them several times. I know they are excellent musi-  
 cians.——Have you ever heard them sing? Yes;  
 several duets; and the first which I heard them sing,  
*pret. ind.*  
 were Italian.——What were the first that you heard  
*pret. ind.*  
 them sing? They were taken from the operas of  
 Metastasio.——Is not your mother in the country?  
*Metastase à*  
 Yes, Sir; she has been there these six months.†——Does  
*y*  
 she often write to you? Very often; I received a  
 letter from her last week; and I have received two this  
*j'en*  
 week.——Have you read the letters of which I spoke to  
 you this morning? Yes; I have read them, and have  
 heard them read.——Have you heard that Mrs. B. has  
*ouï dire*  
 destroyed herself?——No; has she really destroyed  
*donner la mort se*  
 herself?——Let us always endeavour to imitate the good  
 actions which we have seen done.——Is Miss D. at  
 Clifton? Yes; I saw her go out of church this morn-

\* A verb governed by another verb is always to be put in the present  
 of the infinitive; therefore *improved* must be rendered by *profiter*.

† See the Rule 15, page 321. .

ing; she then walked <sup>on the crescent.</sup>——We  
<sup>se promener, pret. ind.</sup>  
 have given ourselves a great deal of trouble to serve him.  
 ——Have you had the happiness to succeed? Yes  
 we have; and we rejoice (at it)——Do you know, said I  
<sup>en</sup>  
 the other day to my little Louisa, who has created you?  
 Yes, papa, replied she; it is he, who from my birth,  
<sup>répondre</sup>  
 has given me health, and has preserved me for your hap-  
 piness—it is God.——The heads which you have learnt  
 to draw are very beautiful——The fable which you have  
 begun to learn has always been considered as one of the  
 most beautiful of La Fontaine's.——The intense cold  
 we have had during the winter, has been severely felt  
 by the poor.——The continual rain which we have had  
 for <sup>six weeks,</sup> has done much injury to the harvest.  
<sup>pendant</sup>  
 ——Tell me, my friend, do you think I exaggerated the  
<sup>pret. ind.</sup>  
 misfortunes which I predicted you would experience?——  
<sup>pret. ind.</sup>  
 No; you (did not exaggerate) them at all; you judged  
<sup>pret. ind.</sup> <sup>pret. ind.</sup>  
 them rightly. The two men after having fought for a long  
<sup>bien</sup> <sup>se dire des injures</sup> <sup>se dire des injures</sup>  
 time, and having abused each other, are recon-  
 ciled; and have promised to be always friends.——I  
 know it (I am not ignorant) of the dispute; my father  
<sup>savoir</sup> <sup>je n'ignore pas</sup>  
 has told me of it; he has recounted it to me in detail.  
<sup>parler</sup>

## CHAP VI.—OF ADVERBS.

*Adverbs* have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place, time, quality, quantity, number, order, affirmation, negation, doubt, interrogation, comparison, collection, separation, &c.* But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact: it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.

## TABLE OF ADVERBS.

*Abondamment*, abundantly, plentifully.

*À l'abandon*, at random, in confusion, in disorder.

*D'abord*, at first, immediately.

*Absolument*, absolutely.

*D'accord*, granted, done.

*Agréablement*, pleasantly, comfortably.

*Ainsi* (de même), so, thus, in the same manner.

*Aisément, Facilement*, easily.

*Mal aisement, Difficilement*, with difficulty.

*Dans un an d'ici*, a year hence.

*L'année qui vient*, the next year.

*Anciennement*, } formerly, anciently.

*Autrefois*, }

*En ami*, friendly, in a friendly manner.

*À l'amiable*, amicably.

*En arrière, Tomber en arrière*, to fall backward.

*À reculons, Marcher à reculons*, to walk backward.

*Assez*, enough.

*Assurément, Sûrement, Certainement*, certainly.

*Aujourd'hui*, to-day.

Time to { *D'aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'night.

come. { *D'aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight.

Time { *Il y a aujourd'hui huit, jours*, this day week,  
past. { this day se'n-  
night.

{ *Il y a aujourd'hui, quinze jours*, this day fort-  
night.

{ *Il y a aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve  
months.

*Autant*, as much, as many.

*D'autant plus*, so much the more.

*D'autant moins*, so much the less.

*Tout autant*, } just as much, just as.

*Tout aussi*, }

*Dorénavant*, in future.

*À l'avenir*, for the future, hereafter.

*À l'Angloise*, after the English manner, fashion, or way.

*À l'Italienne*, after the Italian, &c.

*À la Française*, after the French, &c.

*À la Turque*, after the Turkish, &c.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Our garden produces all kinds of fruits *plentifully*.  
*sorte, f.*

—Your sister left *it all in disorder*.—You did  
*laisser, v.*

not know me *at first*—He would *absolutely* do it.—  
*vouloir, v.*

If you please, I will go to London with you. *Done.*  
*vouloir, v.*

—I hope we shall spend the day *pleasantly*.—Have  
*passer, v.*

we not spent this *so*?—My brother learns his lessons  
*easily*, and I *with difficulty*.—*A year hence* you will (be

able) to speak French tolerably well.—My father says

I shall go to France *next year*.—It was thought so  
formerly.—I have had the honour of seeing you

*formerly*, but I do not recollect where, I believe it  
*autrefois* *se rappeler, v.*

was at Mr. P.'s who received us in a *friendly* manner—

Your brother and mine have settled their affairs *amicably*.  
*régler, v.*

—Make two steps *backward*—He cannot see his way  
*pas, m.*

who walks *backward*\*—Have you played enough?—

\* Say, *He who walks backward cannot*, &c.

*Certainly* you must be tired——We do not expect him  
*devoir, v.*  
*to day*——If it be fine weather I shall be back  
*de retour*  
*this day se'nnight*.——I shall see you *this day fortnight*  
 if I be well.——*This day week* I was (at your house).——  
*chez vous*  
*This day month* I met your brother.——I came here  
*ici, adv.*  
*this day twelve months*.——He has *as much* money and *as*  
*many* friends as you.——I was *so much the more* persuaded  
 of what you told me, that I dismissed him *this day three*  
*renvoyer, v.*  
*weeks*.——I will do it *so much the less*, as I promised him  
 not to meddle with that affair.——My sister has  
*de se mêler, v. de, p.*  
*just as much* wit, and is *just as amiable* as yours.——  
 Your son has given you some trouble, but I hope he  
*mais, c.*  
 will give you pleasure *hereafter*.——She dresses *after*  
*s'habiller, v.*  
*the English fashion*, but she lives *after the French way*.  
 ——She plays *after the Italian manner*.——Your sister  
 has a cap *after the Turkish fashion*.  
*bonnet, m.*

## ADVERBS.

*Bas,*  
*A or en bas,* } off, down, down with, below  
*En badinant,* for fun.  
*Beaucoup,* } much, many, a great deal.  
*Bien,* }  
*A beaucoup près,* nothing near.  
*De beaucoup,* by much, greatly, much.  
*Bien,* well, very.  
*De bon cœur,* heartily, with a good will.  
*De bonne foi,* } sincerely.  
*Sincèrement,* }

*De bonne heure*, betimes.

*De bon jeu*, fairly.

*De bon matin*, early.

*De bouche*, by word of mouth.

*À la bonne heure*, in good time, luckily, well and good.

*À bon droit*, deservedly.

*À bon marché*, cheap.

*À bride abattue*, full speed.

*Cà et là*, to and fro.

*À cause de quoi, pourquoi?* on what account?

*À cela près*, that excepted.

*Cependant*, in the mean while, nevertheless, yet.

*À cheval*, on horseback.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Hats off, gentlemen, and *si t* down.—The whole army surrendered, and laid down their arms upon the ram-  
*mettre, v. les*  
 parts of the citadel.—There is a man below, whom you  
*en bas*  
 will see with pleasure.—We said it for fun, yet  
*cependant*  
 he was very angry with us.—There were many  
*contre, p.*  
 ladies, and we had a great deal of pleasure.—You  
 may say what you please, but she is nothing  
*pouvoir, v. il vous plaira, v.*  
 near so handsome as her sister.—He has much increased  
 his fortune.—Whatever you do, do it well.—If you  
 do not do it with a good will, I will do it myself.—He  
 has acted very sincerely in that business.—Do you speak  
 sincerely?—We will get up betimes.—Have I not  
*se lever, v.*  
 won fairly?—We will set out early, that we may  
*gagner, v.*  
 arrive before the heat of the day.—It (is  
*chaleur, f. valoir*



better) to tell it him *by word of mouth*, than to write to  
*mieux*, v. *de*

him.—Sir, I have done my exercise.—*Well and*

*good*.—He has obtained it *deservedly*.—My father  
*obtenir*, v.

has bought a horse *very cheap*.—Do you see those two

horsemen, who come to us *full speed*? They wandered  
*cavalier*, m. *errer*

to and fro without knowing whither to go.—On what

account is he angry with me?—That excepted, I have

nothing to reproach him with.—I should speak;  
*à reprocher*, v. *lui* *devoir*, v.

yet I (hold my tongue.)—Miss White is very handsome,  
*se taire*, v.

nevertheless I do not love her.—Some went to London

in a coach, others on horseback.

en, p. *en*

## ADVERBS.

*Combien*, how much, how many, how?

*Combien y a-t-il que,*

*Combien de tems y a-t-il que,*

*Combien y avoit-il que,*

*Depuis quand,*

*Combien de tems,*

*Pendant combien de tems,*

} how long?

Observation.—1. *How much, how many, how*, are rendered in French by *que* before an admiration. Ex.

*Que vous-êtes jolie !*

How pretty you are !

2. We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased; and then the verb, which (in English) is in the preterite indefinite, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood. Ex.

*Combien y a-t-il que vous  
 êtes, or, depuis quand  
 êtes-vous à Londres ?*

How long have you been in  
 London?

3. If the verb (in English) be in the preterpluperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative. Ex.

*Combien y avoit-il que vous étiez, or, depuis quand étiez-vous à Londres quand il mourut?* How long had you been in London when he died?

4. If the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de tems*, with the following verb in the preterite indefinite. Ex.

*Pendant combien de tems avez-vous été à Londres?* How long were you in London?

5. *How long*, in the sense of *for what time*, is also rendered by *pendant combien de tems*, with the verb in the same tense as it is in English. Ex.

*Pendant combien de tems vous proposez-vous de rester in Italie?* How long do you intend to stay in Italy?

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

*Read attentively the Rules.*

*How much* do you owe him?—You see to *how many* dangers and *how many* reproaches we are liable.—  
*How many* times shall I be obliged to bid <sup>exposé, p. p.</sup> you to  
 (be silent?)—*How* troublesome you are!—*How* <sup>dire, v.</sup> <sup>de</sup>  
*se taire, v.* <sup>importun, adj.</sup>  
 sorry I am for having displeased you!—*How much* I  
<sup>de</sup> should be obliged to you, if you would grant me that  
<sup>accorder, v.</sup>  
 favour!—*How long* have you been learning French?—  
*How long* have they been in Paris!—*How long* had you  
 been in London when you married?—*How long* had

you been learning Italian when you wrote to me?——

*How long* have your parents been in England?——*How*

*long* had your brother been in Germany when we left

it?——*How long* were you in Holland?——*How long*  
*en* *restâtes*

did your cousin learn the mathematics?——*How long*

have that gentleman and lady been waiting for me?——

*How long* has your relation been dead?——*How long*

had he been in his regiment when he died?——*How long*

was he ill?——*How long* does your uncle intend to leave  
*fut.*

his son on the continent?——*How long* had your father

and mother proposed to stay in America when they went  
*de*

thither?

## ADVERBS.

*Combien y a-t-il d'ici?* How far is it hence?

*Dans combien de tems?* How long will it be before?

*Comme*, as, like, how.

*Comme il faut*, soundly, as it should be.

*Comment*, how.

*À contre-cœur*, against our will.

*À contre-sens*, the contrary or wrong way, in a wrong  
 sense.

*À contre-tems*, unseasonably.

*À corps perdu*, hand over head, desperately.

*De côté,*

*À l'écart,*

*À part,*

*À quartier,*

} aside.

*À côté l'un de l'autre*, abreast.

*De ce côté-ci*, on this side.

*De ce côté-là*, on that side.

*De côté et d'autre, çà et là*, about.

*De tous côtés*, on all sides, on every side.

*Coup sur coup*, one after another.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

*How far is it hence to Dover?—How long will it be before you send me back the books I lent you?—They are punished as the deserve\*—My father's house is like yours, it is very badly built.—See how it rains.—mal, adv.*  
*Have they not been beaten soundly?—This exercise is done as it should be.—How can you speak thus?—We went to the play against our will.—You hold your book the wrong way.—Your brother took in a wrong sense all that I said to him.—Our master arrived very unseasonably.—The French rushed on the Austrians desperately.—Put that aside.—I perceive two ships sailing abreast.—Let us walk on this side, and our companions will go on that side.—They run about all day, and do nothing but play.—How dare you run about while your mother is waiting for you?—ne que pendant que, c.*  
*The enemies were victorious on all sides.—We hear on every side, that peace will very soon take place.—They drank three bottles of Burgundy avoir lieu, v. one after another.*

## ADVERBS.

*Davantage, more.*

<i>Dedans,</i>	}	within, inwardly.
<i>En dedans,</i>		
<i>Dehors,</i>	}	without.
<i>En dehors,</i>		

*Déjà*, already.

*Demain*, to-morrow.

*Le lendemain*, the day after.

*Après demain*, the day after to-morrow.

*Dernièrement*, lately.

*Ci-dessus*, here above.

*Par dessus*, above, over and above.

*Dessous*,  
*Au dessous*, } underneath.

*À découvert*, openly.

*À demi*,  
*À moitié*, } half, by halves.

*À dessein*, on purpose, designedly.

*À droite*, to the right.

*À double entente*, with a double meaning.

*Encore*, again, yet, as yet.

*Enfin*, at last.

*Ensuite*, afterward, then.

*Entièrement*, entirely.

*Exprès*, on purpose.

*À l'écart*, out of the way.

*À l'envers*, the wrong side outwards.

*À l'envi*, in emulation.

*Aux environs*, thereabouts.

*En nulle manière*, in no wise

*En plein jour*,  
*En plein midi*, } at noon; at mid-day.

*En tems et lieu*, in a proper time and place.

*En tous cas*, at any rate.

*En un clin d'œil*, in the twinkling of an eye.

*En sursaut*, suddenly.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

I know how that happened, talk *no more* of it.—Look *within* and you will see it.—She was *within*, and I was *without*.—Have you *already* done your exercise?—

I will call upon you *to-morrow*, and *the day after* we *passer*, v. *chez*, p.  
 will go and see my uncle.—We will pay you *the day*

*after to-morrow* if we can.—I was *lately* (at your house).  
*chez vous*  
 —You will find it *here above*.—I like *your garden*  
*Aimer, v.*  
 and walks *above all*.—Look *underneath* this stone.—  
*Underneath* you will find something curious.—Speak  
 and show yourself *openly*.—We were *half* dead.—I  
 never do things *by halves*.—They killed him *designedly*.  
 They did say so *on purpose*.—Go *to the right*.—My  
 brother always speaks *with a double meaning*.—*At last*  
 the rebels retired into the woods with a great  
*se retirer, v. dans, p. bois, m.*  
 loss.—Do *first* what you have to do, *afterwards*  
*Faire, v. d'abord*  
 you shall go out.—He did it *entirely* to please you.  
*pour, p-*  
 —I came *on purpose* to see you.—Take all these  
 papers, and put them *out of the way*.—You have  
 (put on) your waistcoat *the wrong side outwards*.—My  
*mettre, v. veste, f.*  
 brother and yours work *in emulation* of one another.\*—  
*de*  
 He lives in London or *thereabouts*.—I will in *no wise*  
 do it.—I was stopped *at noon*.—We will tell him what  
 we think *in a proper time and place*.—*At any rate*  
 (I do not care) for it.—He did it *in the twinkling of an*  
*se soucier, v.*  
 eye.—This morning I awoke *suddenly*; but I soon  
*s'éveiller, v.*  
 fell asleep again, and did not awake *till seven*  
*se réveiller, v. avant*  
 o'clock.

\* See Rule 5, page 126.

## ADVERBS.

*Aisément,* } easily.  
*Facilement,* }

*Fidèlement,* faithfully.

*À la file,* } in a file.  
*De file,* }

*À la fois,* together.

*Combien de fois?* how many times?

*Une fois,* once.

*Deux fois,* twice.

*Trois fois,* thrice, three times.

*Tant de fois,* so many times.

*Par fois,* now and then.

*Fortement,* strongly.

*Fort,* very.

*Fort et ferme,* stoutly.

*À fond,* thoroughly.

*De fond en comble,* from top to bottom, to all intents and purposes.

*De front,* abreast.

*Galamment,* genteelly, gallantly.

*Goutte à goutte,* by drops.

*Guère ou Guères,* little, but little.\*

*À la hâte,* in haste.

*En haut,* } up stairs, above stairs.  
*Là haut,* }

*D'heure en heure,* hourly, every hour.

*Hier,* yesterday.

*Hier-au-soir,* last night.

*Avant-hier,* the day before yesterday.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Your brother learns *easily*, but he forgets *almost as easily* as he learns.——In the last battle our troops

fought with the French, all the soldiers and officers did *livrer*, v. *aux* their duty *faithfully*; the enemy surrendered at discretion,

\* The particle *ne* is to be placed before the verb that is qualified by *guère*.

and were obliged to (march out) of the country *in a file*.  
sortir, v.                      pays, m.

—Let every one speak in his turn, for if you speak all  
à  
*together*, how can I hear what you say?—How many

*times* did I tell you to write to your parents?—I  
pret. ind.                      de

spoke to him only *once*, but I saw him *twice*.\*—My  
pret. ind.                      pret. ind.

father generally goes to Germany *thrice* a year.—I

told it you *three times*.—I saw him *so many*  
pret. ind.                      pret. ind.

*times*.—Do you go *often* to London? I go *now and*

*then*.—The king *strongly* opposed the enemy in the

action, where he fought *gallantly*.—Your little  
mêlée, f.                      combattre, v.

sister is *very* pretty.—In all that they undertake they

always act *stoutly*.—My brother knows French *tho-*

*roughly*.—They demolished the house *from top to bottom*.

I travelled in a (post-chaise) drawn by three horses  
chaise de poste, f. attelée de

*abreast*.—Always behave *genteelly*.—Your brothers

came to see us, and we received them *politely*.—The

wine runs from the hogshead *by drops*.—Give him *but*

*little wine*.—<sup>1</sup>Never<sup>3</sup> do<sup>2</sup> things *in haste*.—Is  
Ne jamais, adv.

Mr. D. *above stairs*?—Go *up stairs*, you will find what

you (look for) in the drawer behind the door.  
chercher, v.                      tiroir, m.                      derrière, p.

After having (waited for) him *hourly*, he arrived at last.  
attendre, v.

\* Je ne lui ai parlé qu'une fois.



—We see the army increasing *every hour*.—I went *grossir*, v.  
*yesterday* to London.—It rained very much *last night*,  
 and it has frozen very hard this morning.—*The day be-*  
*fore yesterday* I met your brother, who was riding  
*se promener*, v.  
 on horseback,  
*à cheval*

## ADVERBS.

*Ici*, here.

*Ici autour*, hereabouts.

*Ici près*, hard by.

*D'ici*, hence.

*Dans l'espace de quinze jours*, within a fortnight.

*Dans quinze jours*, in a fortnight.

*Par ici*, this way.

*Par ici par là*, here and there.

*À l'instant*, immediately, instantly.

*Jamais*, ever.

*Ne-jamais*, never.\*

*A jamais*, for ever.

*Justement*, just, precisely.

*Jusqu'à quand?* how long?

*Jusqu'ici*, hitherto, as far as this.

*Jusque-là*, so far, as far as that.

*Jusqu'où?* how far?

*De jour*, in the day time.

*De jour à autre*, } from day to-day.

*De jour en jour*, }

*Chaque jour*, daily.

*De deux en deux jours*, } every other day.

*De deux jours l'un*, }

*Tous les deux jours*, }

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

(Did I not tell you to) stay *here*?—How many miles  
*Ne vous avois-je pas dit de*  
 is it *hence* to Hampton-Court?—There must be a  
*Il doit*, v.

\* *Jamais* being a *negative* adverb, requires the negation *ne* to be placed before the verb it qualifies.

great deal of game *hereabouts*.—How long has he  
 lived *hard by*?—<sup>*gibier, m.*</sup>—How far is it *hence* to Canterbury?—  
<sup>*Cantorbéry*</sup>  
 I will call upon your brother *within a fortnight*.—Come  
<sup>*passer chez*</sup>  
*this way*.—Come back *immediately*.—They invited  
 him *instantly* to dine with them.—I do not believe that  
 he *ever* will <sup>*à*</sup> follow your advice.—My father *never*  
 will see him again.—Great men will *for ever* be celebrated  
 in history.—(This is) *just* what I say.—*How*  
<sup>*dans*</sup> <sup>*Voilà, adv.*</sup>  
*long*, O Catiline, will you abuse our patience?—  
<sup>*abuser, v. de*</sup>  
*Hitherto* the enemy has done nothing considerable.—  
 Learn this piece of poetry *as far as that*.—*How far*  
<sup>*poésie, f.*</sup>  
 will you go?—You always come to see me *by night* ;  
<sup>*de*</sup>  
 why do not you come *in the day-time*?—We expect  
*from day to-day* to receive news from the Continent.—  
<sup>*de*</sup>  
 We are *daily* exposed to great dangers.—My master  
 comes here *every other day*.—I shall go to France and  
 Italy in a *fortnight*.

## ADVERBS.

*Là*, there, thither.  
*Là autour*, thereabouts.  
*Là bas*, yonder.  
*De là*,  
*En de là*, } thence.  
*Par là*, that way.  
*Loin*, far.  
*De loin*, afar off, at a distance.  
*Long-tems*, a long while, long time.  
*Lors*, then, at the time.

- Alors,* } then.  
*Pour lors,* }  
*Dès lors,* from that time.  
*Mal,* ill, wrong.  
*Maintenant,* now.  
*Médiocrement,* indifferently.  
*Même,* even, yet.  
*De même,* so, in the same manner.  
*Mieux,* better.  
*De mieux en mieux,* better and better.  
*Moins,* less.  
*Moins—Moins,* the less—the less.  
*A moins,* for less.  
*Au moins, Du moins,* } at least, at the least.  
*Tout au moins,* }  
*En moins de rien,* in a trice.  
*Naïvement,* plainly, ingenuously.  
*Naturellement,* naturally, by nature.  
*Au naturel,* to the life.  
*Ne, ni, ni,* neither—nor.  
*De nuit,* by night, in the night-time.  
*Obligamment,* kindly, obligingly.  
*Où,* where.  
*Non; non pas; ne; ne-pas; ne-point; point; no; not.*

## OBSERVATION ON THE ADVERB OÙ.

The adverb of place, *où*, where, is most commonly and more elegantly turned into French by *que* after the two other adverbs, *ici*, here, *là*, there, to prevent the hiatus caused by the meeting of the two vowels; and sometimes after nouns expressing the place where something has happened, been done or committed, especially when the sentence begins with the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* Ex.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>C'est ici que nous l'attendons,</i>                              | It is here (where) we are waiting for him.                              |
| <i>Ce fut là que je le vis pour la première fois,</i>               | It was there (where) I saw him for the first time.                      |
| <i>Ce fut en plein sénat que César fut inhumainement assassiné,</i> | It was in full senate (where or in which) Cæsar was inhumanly murdered. |

OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADVERBS *non*; *non pas*; *ne*; *ne pas*; *ne-point*; *point*; *no*; *not*.

NON; NON PAS.

1. *NON* is directly opposite to *OUI*, yes; it never accompanies a verb. If the sentence be continued, containing a verb used negatively, it must be attended by another negation. Ex.

<i>L'avez-vous fait?</i>	<i>NON,</i>	Have you done it?	<i>No.</i>
<i>Le ferez-vous?</i>	<i>NON, je NE</i>	Will you do it?	<i>No, I</i>
<i>le ferai jamais,</i>			<i>never will.</i>
<i>Dites oui ou NON,</i>		Say either yes or no.	

2. *NON* is sometimes repeated to give a greater force to the negation. Ex.

<i>NON, NON je n'y consentirai</i>	<i>No, no, I never will con-</i>
<i>jamais,</i>	<i>sent to it.</i>

3. *NON* is sometimes used without any direct opposition to *oui*. Ex.

<i>Il en est fâché, NON sans</i>	<i>He is sorry for it, not with-</i>
<i>cause,</i>	<i>out cause.</i>

4. *NON* may be joined to an adjective in order to give it a contrary meaning. Ex.

<i>Des gens NON intéressés agi-</i>	<i>Disinterested people would</i>
<i>roient autrement,</i>	<i>act differently.</i>

5. *NON* is sometimes used as a *substantive*. Ex.

<i>Il ne répond presque jamais</i>	<i>He hardly ever answers but</i>
<i>que par un oui ou un NON,</i>	<i>by yes or no.</i>

6. *NON* and *PAS* are often used together, particularly in familiar conversation. Ex.

<i>Me permettrez-vous de pren-</i>	<i>Will you give me leave to</i>
<i>dre cet œillet?</i>	<i>take this carnation?</i>
<i>NON PAS je vous en prie,</i>	<i>I would rather be excused.</i>

## OBSERVATIONS ON NE.

NE may be used without either *pas* or *point*.

1. Before the verbs *cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; *savoir*, to know; and *pouvoir*, to be able; particularly when this last verb is used in the conditional with the meaning of *pouvoir*. Ex.

<i>Il NE CESSE de parler,</i>	He talks incessantly.
<i>Je N'OSE la contredire,</i>	I dare not contradict her.
<i>Je NE PUIS me commander,</i>	I cannot command myself.
<i>Je NE PUIS, or je NE SAU-</i>	I cannot be silent.
<i>ROIS me taire,</i>	
<i>Je NE SAIS où il est.</i>	I do not know where he is.

2. In interrogations of this kind,

<i>Est-il rien qui m'appartienne</i>	Is there any thing of mine
<i>dont vous NE puissiez dis-</i>	which is not at your dis-
<i>poser ?</i>	posal ?
<i>Ai-je un protecteur, un ami</i>	Have I a protector, a friend
<i>que ne soit aussi le vôtre ?</i>	that is not also your's.

3. Before a verb that is attended by either a *negative pronoun* or a *negative adverb*. Ex.

<i>Il N'est PERSONNE que j'es-</i>	There is no one I esteem
<i>time plus que Monsieur</i>	more than your father ?
<i>votre père.</i>	
<i>NE lisez JAMAIS des livres</i>	Never read immoral books.
<i>immoraux,</i>	

4. After *prendre garde*, meaning *to take care*, when followed by the conjunction *que*, which conjunction governs the following verb in the subjunctive. Ex.

<i>PRENEZ-GARDE que votre</i>	Take care that your friend
<i>ami ne commette cette im-</i>	commit not this impru-
<i>prudence,</i>	dence.

5. Before the verbs that follow the conjunction *que* commanded by *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *meilleur*, *mieux*, better; or *pire*, worse, in sentences expressing a comparison. Ex.

<i>Votre sœur est beaucoup PLUS</i>	Your sister is much better
<i>instruite QU'on NE pense,</i>	informed than it is
	thought.

*Vous êtes MOINS prudent* You are not so prudent as I  
*QUE je NE croyois,* thought.

6. When these English words *nothing but* are translated by *ne-que*; for in that case the *negative* indefinite pronoun *RIEN* is understood in French before the conjunction *que*. Ex.

*Il NE fait QUE lire du matin* He does nothing but read  
*au soir,* from morning to night.

That is to say, *il ne fait RIEN que lire,* &c.

*Je NE veux QUE votre bien,* I have nothing but your  
 good at heart.

7. After the interrogative particle *que*, used at the beginning of a sentence, in the acceptation of *pourquoi*? Why? Ex.

*QUE n'êtes-vous venu plutôt?* Why did you not come  
 sooner?

8. After *depuis que*, since, or *il y a-que*, it is—since, when the verb following *que* is in the *preterite indefinite* or *preterpluperfect*, and the sentence expresses the time since which an action has not taken place. Ex.

*DEPUIS QUE nous n'avons* Since we have not been  
*été en France,* in France.

*IL Y A deux ans QUE je NE* I have not seen him these  
*Pai vu,* two years.

*IL Y AVOIT trois mois QUE* I had not seen your sister  
*je n'avois vu votre sœur,* for three months.

9. When two negatives are joined by the conjunction *ni*, or when this conjunction *ni* comes before two nouns substantive or adjective, two pronouns, or two adverbs. Ex.

*Je n'aime NI n'estime Mon-* I neither love nor esteem  
*sieur B.* Mr. B.

*Ni le pauvre NI le riche NE* Neither the poor nor the  
*sont exempts de la mort,* rich are exempt from  
 death.

10. Before the verb that follows the conjunction *que*, when this is preceded by the verb *douter*, to doubt, or *nier*,

to deny, whenever they are used negatively. Also before the verb that follows the conjunction *que*, when this is preceded by the verb *craindre*, or by one of these expressions, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, for fear that, if we do not wish that the action expressed by the following verb should take place. Ex.

<i>Je NE doute PAS, je ne nie</i>	I do not doubt, I do not
<i>PAS qu'il NE soit arrivé,</i>	deny that he is arrived.
<i>Nous craignons, ou de crainte</i>	We fear he is ill, or for
<i>qu'il NE soit malade,</i>	fear he should be ill.

*Observation.*—If we wish for the action expressed after the conjunction that follows *craindre*, or *de crainte*, *de peur* should take place, then *pas* or *point* must be expressed. Ex.

<i>Nous craignons qu'il NE soit</i>	We fear he is not arrived.
<i>PAS arrivé,</i>	

#### NE-PAS ; NE-POINT.

1. Whenever the verb is in the present of the infinitive, either both parts of the negation *ne pas* or *ne point* may be placed before the verb, or the verb may be placed between them. Ex.

<i>Afin de N'êTRE PAS, or de NE</i>	In order not to be impor-
<i>PAS êTRE importun,</i>	tunate.
<i>Pour NE PAS souffrir, ou</i>	Not to suffer his insults.
<i>NE souffrir PAS ses in-</i>	
<i>sultes,</i>	

2. If the verb is in any of the simple tenses *ne* must precede the verb, and *pas* or *point* comes after it. Ex.

<i>Je NE parle PAS,</i>	I do not speak.
-------------------------	-----------------

3. When the verb is in a compound tense, *ne* is to be placed before the auxiliary verb, and *pas* comes after it. Ex.

<i>Je N'ai PAS parlé,</i>	I have not spoken.
---------------------------	--------------------

*PAS* and *POINT* are not to be used indiscriminately.

It is very proper to observe that *point* denies more strongly, and is more exclusive than *pas*. For example, if I say *ce jeune homme ne parle point*, it may be understood that he is dumb; but if I say *ce jeune homme NE*

PARLE PAS, I mean, and it is understood, that *at this moment he is not speaking*. If I say of such a person, *il ne dort PAS*, it will be understood that *he is not at present asleep*; but if I say, *il ne dort point*, every body will understand that he cannot get any sleep. I shall therefore say—

1. PAS is to be preferred to *point* before nouns which denote a *degree of quality or quantity*, such as *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *beaucoup*, much, many, &c. Ex.

*Il n'a PAS BEAUCOUP d'amis*, He has not many friends.

2. PAS is to be preferred to POINT when applied to any *accidental or transient* action. Ex.

<i>Mon fils n'étudie pas,</i>	My son is not studying.
<i>Mon fils n'étudie point,</i>	Would imply that he never studies.

#### OBSERVATION ON POINT.

POINT is sometimes used instead of *non*, but *pas* never. Ex.

<i>Je le croyois mon ami; mais,</i>	I thought him my friend;
POINT,	but, no.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

It was *there* or *thereabouts* that I met him.—Do you see that tree *yonder*?—*Thence* I went to France, and soon after to Germany.—If you go *that way*, you may *après, p.* (call at) Mr. H.'s.—We are yet *far* *pouvoir, v. passer chez* from our house.—I saw him yesterday, but it was at a distance.—You made me wait *a long while*.—The fight lasted a *long time*.—He was ill *at the time of* combat, m.  
my arrival.—Now I believe you.—*From that time* I began to speak to him.—Does your son behave *commencer, v.*



ill *now*?—When I do wrong, I repent *immediately*.  
 They are *now* in England.—The tree that I planted  
 grows *indifferently*.—Virtue is amiable *even* in an enemy.  
 You blame him, and nevertheless you act *in the same*  
*manner*.—You work *better* than your sister.—She  
 reads French *better and better*.—My cousin has *less*  
 money and merit.—The *less* you work, *the less*  
 you will improve. (by the fut.)  
 He will not do it *for less*.  
*faire des progrès.*  
 There are now in America 30,000 men *at least*.—If you  
 cannot come, *at least* write to us.—He replied *plainly*  
 to all my questions, and I am much pleased with him.—  
 What he does, he does (it) *naturally*.—Miss Nichol's  
 picture is drawn *to the life*.—I will *neither* see  
 portrait, m. *fait, p. p.* *Je ne veux ni*  
 him *nor* speak to him.—My mother and sisters were to  
 go next week to France; but my father says, that he  
*neither* can (*nor* will) expose them to the caprice of the  
*ne ni ne veut*  
 fashion which now reigns in that country.—I (asked for)  
*mode, f.* *demandeur, v.*  
 a glass of wine, and *not* a glass of water.—Will you  
 come with me? *No*, for you always travel *by night*.—  
 Always speak *kindly*.—Where did you meet them?—  
 It was here *that* I saw your brother for the last time.—  
*que*

It was at Caernarvon *where* Edward the Second was born, the first who bore the title of Prince of Wales.——  
*naître, v. Galles, f.*  
 It was near the walls of Corunna in Spain, *where* (or *that*) the brave Sir John Moore was wounded, and died a few hours after; England will long regret the loss of that great general.——Have you executed my orders? No, Sir.——Will your brother go and see his uncle? No, he will not go.——Do you know if our friend will go to France this year? No; I have asked him; but he neither said yes nor no.——Do you intend to continue (your visits to) Mr. D.? No, no; be easy about it.——You are a strange being; I never can get from you either yes or no.\*——My mother is always angry with me; I know not what to do to please her.——What has happened to your brother? I cannot tell it you; it would make you miserable. I dare not mention it to anybody.——Is there a French emigrant that does not feel the liveliest gratitude for the English nation?†——I have seen nobody this day——Will you never go to France?——Take care that your mother be not informed of your father's death.‡

\* See Observation 5, on NON; NON PAS.

† See Observation 2, on NE.

‡ See Observation 4, on NE.

The effect would be more dangerous than you think.\*——

That poor man has eaten nothing these two days but a crust of bread.†——He looks strong. Yes; he is

strong.——Well then; why does he not work?‡——

*Hè bien donc*

Neither you nor I can boast of being without defect.——

My mother (was afraid) you were ill.——Tell me, Ma-

*craindre*

dam, have you not read Shakespeare? Yes; I have,

not only once; but three or four times——The

*non pas une fois*

army was on foot the<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> night<sup>3</sup> (in order) not to be

*fut sur*

*afin de*

(taken by surprise)——I (am afraid) they will be beaten.

*surprise*

*crains qu'*

——Mr. O. will never succeed, he has no friends.——

How is your brother? He is still very ill; he gets

*encore*

no sleep;§ he does not eat; he is in great danger.——

*en*

The physician told us, last week, that in a day or two he

would be out of danger; but, no.||

*hors*

## ADVERBS.

*D'où?* whence?

*Par où?* through what place? which way? through which?

*Oui*, yes.

*D'outre en outre*, through.

*Pas à pas*, step by step.

*De part et d'autre*, on both sides.

\* See Observation 5, on NZ.

† See Observation 6, on NE.

‡ See Observation 7, on NE.

§ To get sleep; *dormir*.

|| See the Observation on *point*, page 372.

*Nulle part*, nowhere, not anywhere.

*À peine*, hardly, scarcely.

*Pêle mêle*, helter-skelter.

*Peut-être*, may be, perhaps.

*Peu*, little.

*Peu à peu*, by little and little, by degrees.

*À peu près*,

*À peu de chose près*, } almost, very near, thereabouts.

*Dans peu*, in a short time.

*Depuis peu*, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.

*À pied*, on foot.

*À pieds nuds*, barefoot, barefooted.

*Au pis aller*, let the worst come to the worst.

*De pis en pis*, worse and worse.

*De plein gré*, with a good will, freely.

*De plein pied*, on the same floor.

*À pleines mains*, largely.

*Plus*, more, above.

*Plus—plus*, the more—the more.

*Plus qu'il n'en faut*, more than enough.

*Au plus, tout au plus*, at the most.

*De plus en plus*, more and more.

*À plus forte raison*, much rather, much more so.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Did my brothers tell you *whence* they came?—*Which*  
imper.

*way* are they gone?—The hole *through which* they

(made their escape) was so small, that I do not know how  
*s'échapper*. v.

they could get out.—Do you know your lesson? Yes,  
pret. def.

Sir.—The barrel is pierced *through*.—I will follow  
*baril*, m.

you *step by step*.—The battle was cruel and  
*combat*, m. pret. def.

bloody, and kept up a long time with an  
*sanglant*, adj. *se maintenir*, v.

equal advantage *on both sides*.—I can find my book

*no-where*.—There is no going *any-where* in winter.—

He speaks so low, that I can *hardly* hear what he says.

——The Spaniards pursued them so closely that  
*Espagnol, m. de si près, adv.*  
 they entered the town *helter-skelter*.——I shall see you  
*perhaps* to-morrow——He has *little* money.——If you  
 give me a verb, I will learn it *by little and little*.——She is  
 as tall as you, or *thereabouts*.——I heard that your sister  
 will be married *in a short time*.——Have you heard from  
 your mother *lately*?——I received a letter from her *not*  
*long ago*.——I was *on foot*, and he was in a coach.——  
 I often pity the poor little chimney sweepers,  
*plaindre cheminée, f. ramoneur de m.*  
 who walk *barefooted* in winter.——*Let the worst come to*  
*the worst*, I will (get rid) of it.——Your brother writes  
*se défaire, v.*  
*worse and worse*.——He submitted to it *with a good will*.  
 ——All our rooms are *on the same floor*.——He is so  
 charitable, that he gives alms *largely*.——I shall  
*aumône, f.*  
 never more complain of the rude reception  
*malhonnête, adj. accueil, m.*  
 which your uncle has given to my father.——I have  
*fait, p. p.*  
 written three letters, neither *more* nor *less*.——You are  
*above twenty years old\**——*The more* we are above  
*au dessus de, p.*  
 others, *the more* it becomes us to be modest and humble.†  
 ——You give me *more than enough*.——You study *more*  
 than ever.——How many coats have you? I have six?  
*J'en ai*

\* Say, You have more than twenty years, VOUS AVEZ PLUS DE....

† See Rule 11, page 45.

(*at the most.*<sup>1</sup>)——I shall endeavour to deserve your kindness *more and more*.——If I have done that to oblige my friend, I would *much more so* do it for my relations. <sup>*pour, p.*</sup>

## ADVERBS.

*Plutôt*, sooner.

*Point du tout*, not all.

*À point nommé*, seasonably.

*Tout à point*, in the nick of time.

*À propos*, to the purpose, *à propos*.

*Pourquoi?* or *que ne?* why? if the sentence be negative.

*De près*, near, nearly, narrowly.

*Premièrement*, } first, in the first place.  
*En premier lieu*, }

*Dès à présent*, from this moment.

*Presque*, almost.

*Presque jamais*, hardly ever.

*Presque toujours*, most commonly.

*De propos délibéré*, on purpose, purposely, deliberately, intentionally, designedly.

*Par cas fortuit*, by chance, accidentally.

*Par derrière*, behind.

*Par dessus le marché*, into the bargain.

*Par en bas*, downward.

*Par en haut*, upward.

*Par malice*, through ill-nature, out of ill-nature.

*Par mégarde*, unawares.

*Par terre*, upon the ground, down.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

My father arrived yesterday *sooner* than we expected him.——How do you like that book? <sup>*ne*</sup> *Not at all*.——

You come very *seasonably*, and your brother came *in the nick of time*.——He speaks *little*, but he speaks *to the purpose*.——*Why* do you not learn your lessons better? ——*Why* do you not come yourself?——He *narrowly*

escaped being killed.—*In the first place*, I must tell  
                   *d'être, v.*  
 you, that I shall punish you, if you do not behave  
   *se comporter, v.*  
 better.—*From this moment* I begin to believe that you  
   *à*  
 are altered.—You are *almost* as tall as I am.—  
                   *changé, p. p.*  
 He is *hardly ever* at home.—We dine *most commonly*  
 between three and four o'clock.—They killed him  
*entre, p.*  
*designedly*.—I met him *by chance*.—That has  
 happened *accidentally*.—He struck his enemy *behind*.  
   *frapper, v.*  
 —He gave me three yards of muslin *into the bargain*.  
   *mousseline, f.*  
 —Shall I begin *downward* or *upward*? Begin *down-*  
*ward*.—He has torn my book *through ill-nature*.  
   *déchirer, v.*  
 —If I have done him any harm, certainly I did it *un-*  
*awares*.—I always find your books and hat *upon the*  
*ground*.—It was Peter who threw me *down*.  
   *jeter, v.*

## ADVERBS.

*Quand?* when?  
*Depuis quand?* how long is it since?  
*Que?* why? how?  
*Quelque fois*, sometimes.  
*À quoi bon?* to what purpose?  
*Rarement*, seldom.  
*Au reste*, } as to the rest.  
*Du reste*, }  
*À rebours*, the wrong way.  
*À la renverse*, backward, upon one's back.  
*À reculons*, backward.  
*À rez de chaussée*, even with the ground.  
*Sens dessus dessous*, topsy-turvy.  
*Séparément*, separately.

*Seulement*, only.\*

*De sang froid*, in cold blood.

*De suite*, together, one after another.

*Dans la suite*,  
*Par la suite*, } afterward.

*Sur le champ*, directly, upon the spot.

*Sûrement*, safely.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

*When* shall I have the pleasure of seeing you?——

*How long is it since* you lived in London?——Why do  
 you not come to see us *sometimes*?——*To what purpose*

shall I write to him?——He writes to me very *seldom*.——

*As to the rest*, do as you please.——You do every thing  
*the wrong way*.——You hold your book *the wrong way*.

——He fell *upon his back*.——If you walk *backward*, you  
 will fall *backward*.——Our eating-room is *even with the*

*ground*.——She has left (every thing) *topsy-turvy*.——

He defeated them *separately*.——I only saw him *once*.

——He committed the murder *in cold blood*.——They  
*meurtre, m.*

go *together*.——He will give you much pleasure *afterward*.

——Do *directly* what I bid you.——We arrived *safely*.  
*dire, v.*

#### ADVERBS.

*Tant*, so much, so many.

*Tant mieux*, so much the better.

*Tant pis*, so much the worse.

*Tantôt*, by and by, sometimes.

\* *Only* is also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it, when it can be turned into not, but. Ex. I have only two children; that is to say, I have *not but* two children; *je n'ai que deux enfans*.



*Tantôt—tantôt*, sometimes—sometimes.

*Tôt,*  
*Bientôt,* } soon.

*Tôt ou tard*, one time or other, sooner or later, soon or late.

*Tant soit peu*, very little, ever so little.

*Tard*, late.

*À tems*, time enough, in proper time.

*De long-tems*, for a long time, this long while.

*De tems en tems,*  
*De tems à autre,* } now and then, from time to time.

*À tort*, wrongfully.

*À tort ou à droit*, right or wrong.

*À tort et à travers*, at random.

*Trop*, too much.

*Toujours*, always, ever.

*Pour toujours*, for ever.

*Tous les jours*, every day.

*Tour à tour*, by turns.

*Tout*, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.\*

*Tout à coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

*Tout bas*, softly, with a low voice.

*Tout d'un coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

## EXERCISE.

He has *so much* money, and *so many* goods, that  
*marchandise, f.*

he does not know what to do (with them.)——(It is) so  
*ne sait qu' en, pro. c'est, v.*

*much the better* for me; but it will be *so much the worse*  
*ce*

for you.——My father will come back *by and by*.——  
*revenir, v.*

*Sometimes* you write well, *sometimes* you write very badly.

——My father says I shall *soon* go to France.——Have

patience, you will succeed *one time or other*.——The sun

\* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant. Ex.

*Ces femmes paroissent tout effrayées et toutes consternées,* These women seemed quite frightened and quite dismayed.

is the emblem of truth, which dispels, *sooner or later,*  
*dissiper, v.*

the vapours *nauvaises influences* of slander.—Did he give you any

meat? He gave me *very little.\**——You arrived *late,*

but I came *in proper time.*——I have not heard from my

brother *for a long time.*——Come and see us *now and then.*

——You accuse him *wrongfully.*——*Right or wrong,* he

will speak, and always speaks *at random.*——Give  
*vouloir, v.*

him *a little* money, but never give him *too much.†*——

You *always* contradict me when I speak.——O my chil-

dren! be *ever* good, and you will be *ever* happy.——I

bid you adieu *for ever.*——I go *every day* to town.——  
*dire, v.*

We will dance *by turns.*——I am *quite* tired with repeat-  
*de*

ing the same things.——My sisters were *quite* transported

with joy when they heard the happy news of the  
*apprendre*

victory.——Misfortunes come sometimes *suddenly* upon

us.——Speak *softly.*——A storm arose *suddenly,* and  
*s'élever, v.*

all the sailors were *quite* frightened.——The ladies I saw

at the play were *quite* young and agreeable.

à

#### ADVERBS.

*Tout à fait,* quite.

*Tout à l'heure,* this minute, presently.

*Tout droit,* straight along.

*Tout de bon,* in good earnest.

*Tout haut,* aloud.

\* Translate this sentence as if there were, *he gave me very little of it.*

† Of it is understood and must be expressed in French.

*D'outre en outre*, through and through.

*À tous égards*, in all respects.

*De toutes ses forces*, with all his or her might.

*Par tout*, every-where.

*Par tout où*, wherever.

*Vite*, } quickly.

*Vitement*, }

*Vivement*, } to the quick.

*Au vif*, }

*À vide*, empty.

*Au plus vite*, with all speed.

*Voici*, here is, behold.

*Voilà*, there is, behold.

*À vue d'œil*, perceptibly.

*Y*, there, therein, within, thither.

## EXERCISE.

You are quite altered.——I will do it *presently*.——If you

do not come *this minute*, I shall go and fetch you.——  
*chercher, v.*

Go straight along.——Do you believe it in good earnest?

——He ran him through and through.——She is  
*percer, v.*

better than her sister in all respects.——He struck me  
*frapper, v.*

with all his might.——I have (looked for) you every-where.  
*chercher, v.*

——I will follow you wherever you go.——Set out  
(by the fut.)

quickly.——Her misfortunes touch me to the quick.——  
*malheur, m.*

The coach was returning empty.——Go with all speed

to Mrs. Lucas, and tell her to come directly.——Here  
*chez, p.*

is my room, and there is yours.——These children

grow perceptibly.——Go thither instantly.  
*grandir, v.*

## CHAP VII.—OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that are followed by the preposition *de*; secondly, those that are followed by the preposition *à*; and, lastly, the *simple uncompound*ed prepositions.

## PREPOSITIONS

That govern the *genitive* or *ablative*.

*Autour de*, about, round.

*À cause de*, because of, on account of.

*À cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c.* on your, his, her, our, &c. account.

*À côté de*, by, by the side of.

*À fleur de*, close to, even with.

*À force de,\** by dint of.

*À moins de*, under.

*À raison de*, at the rate of.

*À l'abri de*, sheltered from, free from.

*À l'égal de*, to, in comparison of.

*À l'égard de*, with regard to, with respect to, as to, concerning.

*À la faveur de*, by means of.

*À l'insçu de*, without the knowledge of, unknown.

*À la manière de,* } in or after the manner or fashion of.

*À la mode de,*

*Vis-à-vis de*, opposite.

*Au deçà de,* } on this side.

*En deçà de,*

*Au delà de*, on that side, on the other side.

*Hors de*, out, without.

*Au dessus de*, above, over, upon.

*Au dessous de*, under, below, beneath.

*Aller au devant de*, to go to meet.

*Au lieu de*, instead of.

*Au milieu de*, in the middle of.

*Au prix de, en comparaison de*, in comparison to.

*Faute de*, for want of.

*À la hauteur de*, (sea term,) off.

*Hors de*, out of.

\* This preposition is sometimes Englished by *with*. Ex. *Il pleure à force de rire*, He cries *with* laughing.

*Le long de*, along.

*Loin de*, far from.

*Près*, or *proche de*, } near or nigh, by.

*Auprès de*,

*Pour l'amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous*, &c. for my sake, for his, her, your sake, &c.

*Tout auprès de*, close, hard by.

*À l'épreuve de*, proof, (able to resist.)

## EXERCISE.

Come this way ; we shall walk round the meadow.——  
 I have sent nothing to your brother because of his idleness; but I forgive him on your account.——Sit down by that lady's sister.——Endeavour to be free from blame.——We are not yet secure from all danger.——Cut that sorrel even with the ground.——He is become a very good master by dint of study and practice.——He will not sell it under twelve guineas.——My brother bought yesterday twenty pair of silk stockings, at the rate of fourteen shillings and sixpence a pair.——Under that tree we shall be sheltered from the rain.——Your horse (is worth) very little in comparison of his.——With regard to what you say, I do not mind it.——All the prisoners (made their escape) by means of the darkness of the night.——Your brother is gone to London without the knowledge of your mother.——He left off Latin unknown to his father.——Now the English ladies

dress *after the French fashion.*——Mrs. Tart  
s'*habiller*, v.

lives in the Strand *over-against* Catharine-street.  
demeurer, v.

——We now live *on this side of the river.*——Do not you  
say that you met my father *on the other side* of the bridge?

——Why did you stay *out* of the house?——Mrs. A. is  
very proud, she thinks herself *above* every body, and  
consequently she (looks upon) every body as *beneath* her.  
*regarder*, v.

——Did you observe the elegant lady who was in  
*remarquer*, v.

the box *below* you?——There is a large tree *before* the  
loge, f.

house.——I am *going to meet* my aunt, will you accom-  
pany me?——There is a fine statue *within* the garden.——

He took my hat *instead of* his.——Let us go *in the middle*  
of the meadow.——My house (is good) for nothing *in*  
*valoir*, v. *comparaison* of hers.——I can do nothing *for want* of money.

——They were *off* the Cape of Good Hope when they

were taken.——Do not push me *out of* the room.——  
*pousser*, v.

He is gone *along* the river.——We are still *far from* our  
house.——I met your friend Mr. A. *near* the church.

——He passed *by* me without knowing me.——I do it  
*sans*, p.

*for your sake* as well as *for theirs.*——My best friend lives  
*close* to the Royal Exchange, and he lived formerly *close*

to St. James's palace.——The officers and soldiers were

lodged in barracks cannon and bomb-proof.—My  
*caserne, f. canon, m. bombe, f.*  
 shoemaker very much wanted\* to make me a pair of boots  
*désirer, v.*  
 water-proof, but I had not money enough to pay him.  
*pour, p.*

## PREPOSITIONS

that are followed by the preposition *à*.

*Conformément*, according, pursuant.

*Jusqu'à, } till, until, even to, as far as, so far as, to.*  
*Jusques à, }*

*Par rapport à*, with respect, on account.

*Pour, quant à*, as for, as to.

## EXERCISE.

He has been punished *pursuant* to an act of parlia-  
*ment, m.*  
 ment.—Yesterday we waited for him *till* five o'clock  
*ment, m.*  
 in the morning.—They fought with obstinacy on both  
*du*  
 sides *until* the beginning of the night.—If I had not  
*entrée, f.*  
 stopped him, he would have gone even *to* Dover.—We  
 accompanied them *as far as* Rochester, and they pur-  
 sued their way *to* Canterbury.—I will do it for *your*  
*sake*, but never *on account* of them.—*As for* me, I  
 will not give him a penny.—*As for* us, we were very  
 much dissatisfied, I assure you.—*As to* what people  
*mécontent on*  
 may say, I do not care for it.  
*pouvoir, v. se soucier, v.*

## SIMPLE UNCOMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.

*Après*, after.

*D'après*, after.\*

\* We make use of this preposition in the following sense only:—*Il peint d'après un bon maître*, He paints after a good master.

*Avant*, before.

*Avec*, with.

*À travers*, cross, through.

*Chez*, in, to, at, among.

*Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c.* at or to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. house.

*Contre*, against.

*Dans*, in, into, within.

*De*, about, through.

*Depuis*, since, from.

*Derrière*, behind.

*Dès*, from.

*Devant*, before.

*De dessus*, from the top.

*De dessous*, from under, from beneath.

*Durant*, during.

*En*, in, into, like, as, at.

*Entre*, between.

*Envers*, towards.

*Environ*, about.

*Excepté*

*Hors*, }

*Hormis*, } except, but, save.

*Moyennant*, for, provided.

*Nonobstant*, }

*Malgré*, } notwithstanding, in spite of.

*Outre*, beside.

*Par*, by, through.

*Par deçà*, on this side.

*Par delà*, on that side.

*Par derrière*, behind.

*Par dessus*, above, over.

*Par dessous*, under, below.

*Parmi*, among.

*Pendant*, during, for.

*Pour*, for.

*Sans*, without.

*Sauf*, saving, but with.

*Selon*, }

*Suivant*, } according to.

*Sous*, under.

*Sur*, upon, about.

*Touchant*, concerning, about.

*Vers*, towards, to.



## EXERCISE.

He arrived here an hour *after* you.—Miss A. paints *after* nature.—Let me drink *before* you.—Did you not see her walk *with* her father?—It was the ancient Britons, who cut a road *through* this mountain.—Such was the custom *among* the Romans.—I was going *to* your house, but as I have met you, we will go *to* mine, where we shall dine.—Do not lean *against* that wall.—Go and take a walk *in* the garden.—I am going *into* my room.—Keep yourself *within* the limits of decency.—I spoke to your father *about* your affairs.—His father died *through* grief.—I have not heard from her *since* her departure.—Go into my room; you will find a letter *behind* the looking-glass; (be so kind as) to bring it to me.—Do not put yourself *before* me.—He behaved well *during* your absence.—My sister is *in* England.—He behaved *like* an honest man in that affair.—He acts *as* a tender father who loves you.—Tell nobody what passed *between* you and me.—Be not unjust *towards* your neighbours.—It was *about* four o'clock when we set out.—Take all that you please, *except* my sword.—I give you all

my books, *but* the History of France.—They were all drowned *save* my friend.—He will do it *for* two guineas.  
*noyer, v.*  
 I walk every day *notwithstanding* the bad weather.—  
 I hope you will succeed in your undertaking *in spite of* slander.—*Beside* his own money, he spends all his sister's.—It is said that Gibraltar is blocked up *by* land and *by* sea.—I have passed *through* France and Italy.  
*bloquer, v.*  
 He is a coward who attacks his enemy *behind*.—Let us see whether you can jump *over* the table.—Look *si, c.* *sauter, v.*  
*under* the door, and you will see it.—Envy, jealousy, and slander, *always* reign *among* authors.—What *médiance, f.*  
 have you done *during* my absence?—I have been expecting you *for* a long time.—Your aunt has sent me some books *for* you.—*Without* him what could I have done?—A woman may please *without* beauty, but she cannot succeed *without* virtue.—He always goes out *without* me.—The army marched three days and three nights *without* stopping.—He carried away all my furniture, *saving* my bed.—I found your buckle *meubles, m. pl.* *boucle, f.*  
*under* the chair; you said you had left *it upon* the table.—*chaise, f.* *laisser, v.*  
 Did not my brother write to you *concerning* that affair?

## OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

## ABOVE.

This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing *time or number*, so as to signify *more than* or *longer than*, is to be rendered in French by *plus de*. Ex.

*Le combat dura plus de deux heures,*      The fight lasted *above* two hours.

## EXERCISE.

My brother was not *above* twenty years old,\* when he was married.—He made us wait *above* a week.—My father's country-house is very handsome, but it cost him *above* six thousand pounds.—In the last <sup>pret. def.</sup> sea-fight <sup>combat naval</sup> which took place between the French and the English, *above* twelve hundred men perished in the action on the side of the French, and the English took *above* fifteen ships of the line.—It is *above* a year since my cousin set off for Jamaica.

*Jamaïque, f.*

## AT.

1st. *At* is most commonly rendered by *à*, or by one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following, when that noun takes the article. Ex.

<i>Nous étions à dîner,</i>	We were at dinner.
<i>Elle est à la maison,</i>	She is at home.
<i>Il joue bien aux cartes,</i>	He plays well at cards.

## EXERCISE.

If you be *at* Rome, live as they do *at* Rome.—We *on vit*

\* Say, *My brother had not MORE THAN*, &c.

will get up next week *at* six o'clock.——When I called upon Mr. B. he was *at* breakfast.——Every thing I have <sup>*passer*</sup> *chez* *is at* your service.——My brother *is at* Mr. H.'s academy.——Were you *at* Mrs. C.'s ball last week?——You always travel by night *at* the peril of your life.——I will pay you *at* the end of the year.——My mother is *at* the height of happiness.——He plays very well *at* chess, <sup>*comble, m.*</sup> and his companion begins to play a little *at* draughts.——He <sup>*échecs, m. pl.*</sup> *did it at* the instigation of his friend. <sup>*dames, f. pl.*</sup>

2dly. After *nouns* or *verbs* denoting *anger, derision, joy, provocation, resentment, sorrow, surprise, or concern*, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *du, de la, de l', des*; or by the preposition *de*. Ex.

<i>Il se moque de vous,</i>	He laughs <i>at</i> you.
<i>Je me réjouis de votre bonheur,</i>	I rejoice <i>at</i> your good luck.
<i>Nous sommes surpris de ce que vous dites,</i>	We are surprised <i>at</i> what you say.

## EXERCISE.

Exasperated *at* his conduct, he told him never to laugh *Irrité, adj.*  
*at* (poor people).——We always ought to rejoice *at* the *malheureux.* *condit.*  
 (good fortune) which befalls *bonheur* our neighbours.——I am *arriver, v.*  
*vexed at* the news which we received last week.——A *désolé*  
 good Christian never shows any resentment *at* the injuries  
 which are offered to him.——A patient<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup> never *faire*  
 grieves *at* his misfortunes.—I cannot help *s'attrister, v.* *s'empêcher, v.*

being surprised *at* her manner of answering.——I am concerned *at* the loss which you sustained.——He *essuyer*, v. pret. def. was mortified *at* the disobedience of his sons. *fut.*

3dly. *At* is rendered by *chez*, when, in English, it precedes the word *house*, either expressed or understood. The same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to*; and when *at* or *to* is followed by the word *home*, the learner is to look for the possessive pronoun that is understood, and substitute for *home* the personal pronoun corresponding with the possessive pronoun that is in ellipsis. Ex.

*J'étois chez votre frère,*  
*Je vais chez Madame Lucas,*  
*Nous serons CHEZ NOUS,*

*Il est CHEZ LUI,*

I was *at* your brother's.  
I am going *to* Mrs. Lucas's.  
We shall be at home; *that is to say*, at our house.  
He is at home; *that is to say*, at his home or house.

## EXERCISE.

I called upon Miss Brown this morning, as I had promised your mother; but she was not *at* home. Where was she then? She was *at* her aunt's.——I thought my friend was *at* her father's; but I mistook, for he was *at* his uncle's.——How long have you been *at* Mr. H.'s?——We lodge *at* my friend's; but we board at the pastry-cook's.——If you go *to* my brother, tell him to come *to* my cousin's, where I am to spend *de* the day, and we will go together *to* his friend's. *passer*, v.



## EXERCISE.

Always buy tea *by* the pound, and never *by* the ounce, you will get it cheaper.——I never buy my cloth *by* the ell, but *by* the piece.——How do you sell your brandy? We sell it *by* the gallon, and not *by* the bottle.——He sells his wine *by* the dozen.——I sell eggs *by* the hundred.——How do you measure your cambric? *by* the ell, or *batiste*, m. *by* the yard?——Does your father work *by* the week or *by* the month? He works *by* the year.

3dly. *By*, immediately following the verbs *to kill*, *to wound*, *to knock down*, and the like, is made into French by *d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c., provided the blows have not been repeated: if the blows have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by *with*. Ex.

<i>Il fut blessé d'un coup de</i>	He was wounded <i>by</i> an
<i>flèche,</i>	arrow.
<i>Ils l'assommèrent à coups de</i>	They knocked him down
<i>bâton,</i>	<i>with</i> a stick.

## EXERCISE.

Achilles was killed at the siege of Troy *by* an arrow,  
 which Paris, king Priam's son, (let fly) (at his)  
 heel. At last the king, having broken his battle-  
*talón*, m. *Enfin*, adv. *lui décocher*, v. *au*  
 axe and sword, was knocked down *by* a stone, and  
*d'armes*, f. *renversé*, p. p.  
 taken prisoner.——William the Second was killed *by*  
*fait*, p. p.

an arrow in the New Forest.—My brother was wounded  
*by* a gun, and my cousin was killed *by* a cannon-ball.  
*fusil, m.* *canon, m.*  
 —Edward the First was wounded in Palestine *with* a  
 poisoned dagger. He is so strong, that *with* his  
*poignard, m.*  
 fist he could knock down an ox. He threw my brother  
*poing*  
 down, and almost killed him *with* his feet. They  
*par terre,*  
 killed him not *with* stones, but *with* arrows.

## FOR.

*For*, after *reflected verbs*, and those which denote  
*thanksgiving, &c.*, is rendered by one of the following  
 articles, *du, de la, de l', des*; or by the preposition  
*de*. Ex.

*Nous sommes désolés, de ce* We are sorry for what has  
*qui vous est arrivé,* happened to you.

## EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

I am very grateful *for* all your kindness.—  
*reconnoissant, adj.* *bonté, f.*

He is very sorry *for* the grief he has caused you.—

When we have reached the age of reason, we are often  
*atteindre, v.*

sorry, but too late, *for* the time we lost when we  
*pret. def.*

were young.—My brother desired me to thank you *for*  
*de*

the part you took in his troubles.—Every one  
*pret. def. à* *peine, f.*

leaped *for* joy, when the happy news of peace arrived.—  
*sing.*

A child who cares little *for* those who gave  
*se soucier, v.* *peu* *pret. ind.*

him life, is an unnatural being.—An ungrateful son  
*dénaturé, adj.*

will be punished (one time or other) *for* his ingratitude.  
*tôt ou tard*



## FROM.

*From*, preceding the name of a man or woman, or one of the personal, possessive, relative, or interrogative pronouns, after the verbs *to go*, *to come*, *to send*, &c. is generally rendered in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma*, *de sa*, *de notre part*, *de votre part*, &c. Ex.

*Allez de ma part chez* Go from me to Mr. D.

Mons. D.

*Je viens de sa part,*

I come from him or her.

## EXERCISE.

Go from me to Miss Dunkin's and tell her I shall be glad to see her. *From* whom do you come? said she to me. Madam, replied I to her, I come from my parents, who sent me.—Send from me to Mr. Lucas's, and let him know that I am very much vexed at the letter he has written to me.

## IN.

1st. *In* requires some attention from the learner, who is to observe, that *dans* always conveys a limited idea, and is followed by the article when the following word admits of it; on the contrary, *en* conveys a very indeterminate idea, and seldom admits of the article, whether expressed in English or not. Ex.

*Il est dans la maison,*

He is in the house.

*Elle est en Angleterre,*

She is in England.

## EXERCISE.

He always keeps himself shut up in his room.—Take all the linen which I shall want in our journey, and put it into my box.—Walk into the parlour.—We live in the county of Surrey.—Is there a good fire in the

room?—Ovid, one of the finest poets of the Augustan age, expired <sup>Auguste, m.</sup> in the seventeenth year of our Lord, at <sup>siècle, m.</sup>

Tomi, near Varna, on the western coast of the Black Sea, whither he had been banished by the emperor <sup>sur, p. occidental, adj. côte, f.</sup>

Augustus.—Is your sister in France? No, madam, she

is in Spain.—How long do you intend to stay in town?

Sir, do you keep a house? No, we live in (ready-furnished<sup>2</sup>) lodgings<sup>1</sup>.—Your eldest son behaved <sup>garni, adj.</sup> like a

hero.—If my son behave <sup>chambre, f.</sup> like an honest man, I shall <sup>en</sup>

act towards him <sup>en</sup> as a father.—In what does human<sup>3</sup> <sup>en</sup>

happiness<sup>2</sup> consist?<sup>1</sup>—If you wish to be happy and

esteemed in this world, live <sup>en</sup> like a man of honour and <sup>de</sup> probity.

2d. *In*, after words denoting *pain, hurting, or wounding*, and preceding one of the possessive pronouns in conjunction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one of the following articles, *au, à la, à l', aux*, or by the preposition *à*, and the possessive pronoun is left out; and when *in* precedes a noun denoting a part of time, it is not to be expressed in French. Ex.

<i>Il étoit blessé au bras, et non</i>	He was wounded in his arm,
<i>à la jambe,</i>	and not in his leg.
<i>Vous les trouverez toujours</i>	You will always find him at
<i>chez lui le matin,</i>	home in the morning.

## EXERCISE.

My brother has constantly a pain in his head, and I have very often a pain in my teeth.—Never eat any

fruit which is not ripe, for there is nothing more apt to give you a pain *in* your stomach.——My companion, by jumping over a form, (fell down,) and was much hurt *banc, m. tomber, v.* *in* the shoulder.——Your brother was wounded *in* the arm, but not\* dangerously, and my cousin was mortally wounded *in* the head.——My master comes generally *in* the morning.——I will call upon you *in* the afternoon, and *in* the evening I will go to the play.

## ON OR UPON.

These prepositions are rendered by *de* after the verbs *to depend*, *to live*, *to subsist*, and the like; and by one of the following articles, *du, de, la, de l', des*, or by the preposition *de* after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument: before the days of the week, and the names of the months, preceded by a numeral adjective, the preposition *on* must not be expressed. Ex.

<i>Il vit de pain et d'eau,</i>	He lives <i>on</i> bread and water.
<i>Vous jouez du violon, et il</i>	You play <i>on</i> the violin, and
<i>joue de la flûte</i>	he plays <i>on</i> the flute.
<i>Cela arriva le dix-huit du</i>	That happened <i>on</i> the eight-
<i>mois dernier,</i>	teenth of last month.

## EXERCISE.

We all<sup>2</sup> depend<sup>1</sup> *upon* the divine mercy.——A *compter* good end generally depends *on* a good *miséricorde, f.* beginning.——

What do you live *upon*, you who never eat any meat?

In winter I live *on* milk and vegetables; and in summer I live *upon* bread and butter, cheese, and all sorts of fruits.——*Upon* what instrument does your sister play?

\* See the observation on *non*, *pas*, and *point*, page 363, No. 1.

She plays very well *on* the harpsichord, and she is now learning to play *on* the harp.—Come *on* Friday early, and I will go to see you *on* the Saturday following.—Why did you not play *on* the violin on Wednesday last.—*On* the third of June, 1664, the English obtained a great victory over the Dutch <sup>off</sup> Harwich, took <sup>Hollandois, m.</sup> eighteen ships, and destroyed fourteen.

## OVER.

This preposition is commonly rendered in French by *sur*; but it must be rendered by the participle past of the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*, when it denotes an action ended. Ex.

<i>Il a l'avantage sur vous,</i>	He has the advantage <i>over</i> you.
<i>Votre frère partit dès que la pluie fut passée,</i>	Your brother set out as soon as the rain was <i>over</i> .
<i>Le dîner est-il fini?</i>	Is dinner <i>over</i> ?

## EXERCISE.

A coach passed *over* his body and killed him.\*—

Tullia, Tarquinius' wife, the unnatural daughter of <sup>dénaturé, adj.</sup>

Servius, king of Rome, ordered her coachman to drive <sup>passer, v.</sup> *over* the dead body of her father.—In going to London,

did you go *over* Westminster<sup>2</sup> bridge<sup>1</sup>? Yes, but <sup>passer</sup> <sup>le pont de</sup> in coming back, I passed *over* Blackfriars<sup>2</sup> bridge.<sup>1</sup>—

They dissolved the army as soon as it was resolved that <sup>disperser, v.</sup> the campaign was *over*.—In France they drink coffee

\* Say, *lui passa sur le corps, &c.*

as soon as dinner is over.——You may go and  
 walk when the rain is over.——They  
*se promener* (by the fut.)  
 fought well, and the battle was soon over.  
 pret. def.

## WITH.

1st. *With* is rendered by *dans*, when it is used before nouns denoting the *purpose, design, or motive* of the agent.  
 Ex.

*Il le fit dans l'attente d'être bien récompensé,* He did it *with* an expectation of being well rewarded.

## EXERCISE.

He poisoned his brother in the hope of inheriting his estates.——My brother is gone to your house *with* the design of scolding you well.——He who beats another *with* the intention of killing him, is a murderer at the bottom of his heart.——He did it *with* the intention of pleasing you, and not *with* any design of hurting you.——I went last week to Mr. Olympus, in the expectation of receiving the money which I lent him a month ago; but he was not at home.——I live in the hope of receiving it one time or another.——He said so *with* a design of deceiving you.

2d. *With* must be rendered by *de* after the following verbs, *to starve, to die, to do, to dispense, to meddle, to encompass, to load, to cover, to strike*, and those denoting *fulness*: likewise after the following adjectives, *charmed, pleased, displeased, endowed, &c.* Ex.

*Elle meurt de froid et de faim,* She starves *with* cold and hunger.

*Je suis content de ce que j'ai,* I am pleased with what I have.

## EXERCISE.

Lazy people ought to starve *with* hunger and  
*devoir, v. condit.*  
 cold.—The winter was so severe, that I was starving  
*pret. def.*  
*with* cold.—They are so rich, that they do not know  
 what to do *with* their money.—I hope you will dispense  
*que*  
 me *with* that disagreeable work.—Do not meddle *with*  
*besogne, f. se mêler*  
 my affairs, meddle *with* your own.—It is reported on all  
*de*  
 sides that Paris is to be\* encompassed *with* walls.—Do  
*entouré*  
 you see that waggon? It is loaded *with* goods.—He  
*chariot, m.*  
 was overwhelmed *with* grief.—The enemy, struck  
*accablé, adj.*  
*with* terror and astonishment, ran, away.—Honour  
 me *with* your commands.—I have filled my cellar  
*with* good beer and excellent wine.—Narcissus,  
 seeing himself in a clear fountain, (fell in) love  
*devenir v. amoureux, adj.*  
*with* his own person.—I am delighted *with* the  
*charmé*  
 agreeable company of your sister.—As to us, little  
 satisfied *with* his answers, we took other measures.  
 —Are you not pleased *with* the behaviour of  
 your son Thomas.—You would be wrong to be  
*avoir tort, de*  
 dissatisfied *with* him; for he behaved like an honest  
*mécontent, adj. se conduire, v.*

\* See the note at the bottom of the page 196.

man in that affair; and he is endowed *with* many good qualities.——The man who meddles *with* nobody's affairs, but quietly follows his own, seldom makes himself enemies.

3dly. *With* is rendered by *contre* after words denoting anger or passion: and before nouns denoting the matter, instruments, tools, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, it is rendered by one of the following articles, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, or by the preposition *à*, according to the gender and number of the following noun. Ex.

<i>Madame votre mère est très-fâchée contre vous,</i>	Your mother is very angry <i>with</i> you.
<i>Une table à tiroirs,</i>	A table <i>with</i> drawers.
<i>Dessiner au crayon, à la craie,</i>	To draw <i>with</i> a pencil, <i>with</i> chalk.
<i>Se battre à l'épée, au pistolet,</i>	To fight <i>with</i> swords, <i>with</i> pistols.

## EXERCISE.

My brother was in<sup>2</sup> such<sup>1</sup> a passion<sup>3</sup> *with* me, that I thought he would have beaten me.——I believe what you say; but I was very angry *with* her when she told me she would not do it.——I live near the river, and if you come to see me, we will fish *with* a net or a line.——Your brother and my cousin fought *with* sabres and not *with* pistols; the former was wounded (in his thigh,) and the latter (in his) side.——My house has been built *with* lime and sand.——Did Miss Arnold show you the picture she has drawn *with* Indian ink? No; but she showed

*Chine, f.*

me her mother's picture done *with* chalk ; I assure you it is

very like her.—I bought a penknife *with* two blades.  
*ressemblant*, adj. *∞* *lame*, f.

4th. *With* is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with*, *to trust with*, *to supply with*, *to reproach with*, &c. It is likewise to be suppressed where it expresses the *situation*, *position*, &c. of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having*, *holding*, &c. Ex.

<i>Il a essuyé bien des cha-</i>	He has met <i>with</i> many
<i>grins,</i>	troubles.
<i>Nous lui fournirons tout ce</i>	We will supply him <i>with</i>
<i>dont il aura besoin,</i>	every thing he wants.
<i>Il se promène toujours un</i>	He always walks <i>with</i> a book
<i>livre à la main,</i>	in his hand, that is, <i>having</i>
	or <i>holding</i> a book, &c.

## EXERCISE.

He met *with* so many mortifications from  
*essuyer*, v. *de la part de*  
 his sons, that<sup>1</sup> through<sup>5</sup> grief<sup>6</sup> he<sup>2</sup> fell<sup>3</sup> ill<sup>4</sup> and died.  
*de* *tomber*, v.  
 —When you meet a (poor man) never reproach  
*rencontrer*, v. *malheureux*  
 him *with* his poverty ; but endeavour to furnish him *with*  
*lui* *lui*  
 the means of emerging from his misery.—I have  
*moyen*, m. *de sortir*  
 trusted Mr. N. *with* my son's education, in the firm  
*confier à*  
 confidence that he will answer my expectation.—The  
*confiance* *à* *attente*, f.  
 New River supplies London *with* all the water which  
*fournir à* *dont*  
 the inhabitants stand in need of.—I reproached her  
*avoir besoin*, v. *∞* *lui*  
*with* her ingratitude towards her benefactors.—He often  
 walks round the garden *with* a stick in his hand.—  
*bâton*, m.  
 Never speak to any body *with* your hat on your head.—  
*le* *la*



He is represented on horseback, with a sword in his  
*à cheval,* *dans la*  
 right-hand, a horse<sup>2</sup>-pistol<sup>1</sup> in his left.  
*d'arçon, m. pistolet, m. la gauche, adj.*

SANS, *without.*

The preposition *sans* is sometimes expressed (in English) by the imperfect of the subjunctive or the preterpluperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the conjunction *if*; and sometimes by *but for*. Ex.

Sans vous, je ne sais ce que  
je deviendrais,      If it were not for you, I do  
not know what would  
become of me.

Sans lui, mon frère auroit été puni,      Had it not been for him  
my brother would have  
been punished.

Sans elle, je serois mort de faim, But for her, I should have starved.

**EXERCISE.**

*Without the assistance of divine Providence, what  
secours, m.*

are we?—According to what you tell me, and what I  
*D'après*

have heard <sup>before</sup> before, she has a great deal of wit and merit ;  
*avois ouï dire,*

and, *but for* that large scar which she has in  
grand, adj. cicatrice, f.

her forehead, she would be very handsome.—*Had it not*

*been for the help of good and honest people, what could you have done?—If it had not been for me, he never*

would have paid you.—*Were it not for rich and charita-*

ble persons, what would become of the poor and needy?  
*êtres*

Our neighbour fell into the river ; and *but for* my father,  
*voisin*, m.

who was passing that way, he would have been drowned.  
par là, se noyer, v.

— *Were it not for emulation, (every thing) would languish*  
*tout*  
 in the world.  
*dans*

---

## CHAP. VIII.—OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de*, or *que*. They have been divided into *copulative*, *comparative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *casual*, *dubitative*, *exceptive*, *conditional*, *continulative*, *conclusive*, &c. Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand, that different conjunctions govern the following verb in different moods. Some govern it in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others in the *subjunctive*.

### CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE VERB IN THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Afin de*, in order to.  
*À moins de*, or  
*À moins que de*, } unless.  
*Avant de*, better } before.  
*Avant que de*, }  
*Au lieu de*, instead of.  
*De crainte de*, or } for fear of.  
*De peur de*, }  
*Excepté de*, except to.  
*Faute de*, for want of.  
*Jusqu'à*, to that degree that, till, so far as.  
*Loin de*, far from.  
*Plutôt que de*, rather than.

### EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

*In order to learn<sup>2</sup> well<sup>1</sup>, we must study with a great*  
*on devoir, v.*  
*deal of attention.——It will be impossible for you to*  
*learn French unless you be diligent.——Let us breakfast*  
*before we begin (any thing).——A prudent man ought to*  
*rien*  
*think several times, before he acts.——He is gone to*  
*agir, v.*

church, *instead of* coming with us.—I would not do it  
*for fear of* displeasing you.—He is capable of  
 (every thing), *except of* doing good.—*For want of*  
*tout*  
 sending for a surgeon in time, he lost his  
*envoyer chercher, v. chirurgien, m. à*  
 arm.—He carried his insolence *to that degree*, that he  
*pousser, v.*  
 spoke injurious<sup>2</sup> words<sup>1</sup> to him.—*Far from* exciting  
*dire, v.*  
 them to fight, I did all that I could in order to prevent  
*à*  
 them.—She would do (any thing) (in the) world *rather*  
*les en tout au*  
*than* speak to him. *Instead of* studying, he loses his time.

CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE VERB IN THE  
 INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Ainsi que,\* comme,* as.

*Tout ainsi que,\** just as.

*Après que,\** after that, after.

*A cause que,* } because.  
*Parce que,* }

*À ce que,* according as, or to.

*A condition que,* on or upon condition that.

*À mesure que,\** in proportion as, as.

*Au lieu que,* whereas.

*Dès le moment que,\** the moment that.

*Aussi long-tems que,\** as long as.

*Aussi loin que,\** as far as.

*Aussitôt que,* }  
*D'abord que,* } \* as soon as,  
*Dès que,* }  
*Sitôt que,* }

*Attendu que,* considering that, seeing that.

*Comme, or* } \* as.  
*En tant que,* }

*De façon que,* }  
*De manière que,* } in such manner that, so that.  
*De sorte que,* }  
*Si bien que,* }  
*Tellement que,* }

*Depuis que*, ever since, since.

*Puisque*, since.

*D'où vient que*, how comes it to pass that, why.

*Lorsque*, } \* when.

*Quand*, }

*Mais*, but.†

*Outre que*, beside that.

*A peine que*, hardly, scarcely,—but, or when.

*Pendant que*, } \* while.

*Tandis que*, }

*Peut-être que*, perhaps.

*Quand*, } though.

*Quand même*, }

*Selon que*, } \* according as.

*Suivant que*, }

*Tant que*, \* as long as.

*Autant que*, \* as much as.

*D'autant que*, whereas, for as much as, since.

*D'autant plus—que*, as much more, the more,—as.

*Toutefois*, yet, nevertheless.

*Toutes les fois que*, every time, as often as, whenever.

*Sinon que*, except that.

*Si*, if, in case, whether.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I called at your sister's, *as* you had desired me.—

*passer*, v.

*m'en*

I punish you (just *as*) you deserve (it.)—*After* you

*comme*

were gone, I began writing.—I love you *because* you

behave better than your brother.—He will write to you,

*on condition that* he shall speedily receive your

*promptement*, adv.

answer.—*In proportion as* we study, we become learned.

—A skilful gardener pulls up weeds *as*

*arracher*, v. *mauvaise herbe*, f.

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it. Ex.

*Je n'ai parlé à votre frère que deux fois,*

I have spoken to your brother *but* twice.

they grow.——*The moment that* I saw you, I knew you again.——I followed him (with my) eyes as far as I could.——*As soon as* they had taken the general, the army surrendered.——You (look at) me, as if I had taken your book.——Your mother is quite altered, since<sup>1</sup> I<sup>3</sup> saw<sup>5</sup> her<sup>4</sup> last<sup>2</sup>.————You must stay at home, since<sup>vis</sup> you are not well.——*How comes it to pass* that I have not seen your friend till now?——*Why*, in proportion as we grow older, do we not grow wiser?——*When* she had done speaking, she (fell asleep).——Did you not see Mr. Brown this morning? Yes, but *N'avez-vous pas vu* (I could not) speak to him.——Though you would give me but half of the money you owe me, I should be very much obliged to you.——*Beside that* he does not apply as he should, he (is often absent) from school.——We were hardly arrived, when it began to rain.——*While* you lose your time, your brother improves fast.——Play (on the) harpsichord, while I shall write my exercise.——*Perhaps* the master will forgive me.——*Though* you should cheapen for two hours, I could not abate sixpence.——Our father punishes and rewards us according as we deserve.——*Speak as long as* you please, I will not

grant you what you ask me.—I avoid slanderers, as  
*éviter, v. médisant, m.*  
*much as* I fear them.—This proceeding was *the more*  
 extraordinary, as it was contrary to the laws of the king-  
 dom.—Virtue reigns *so much the more* sovereignly, as it  
 does not reign by force and fear.—All men (seek after)  
*rechercher, v.*  
 riches, and *yet* we see few rich men happy.—I see the  
 king and queen *every time* I go to Windsor.—He inter-  
 rupts me *as often as* I speak.—Whenever I go to Lon-  
 don, I meet him.—She said nothing to me, *except* that  
 it was impossible for her to do what you required of  
 her.—(In case) Mr. S. calls *lui de* here, tell him I am not at  
*Si* home, and ask him when he will come again to see me.—  
*passer, v.*  
*If* you do it, you will be punished.—Tell me sincerely  
*whether* he did it or not.—We should spare *our-*  
*épargner, v.*  
 selves many troubles, *were* we more prudent.†

*Observations.*—1. The conjunctions that have this mark \*  
 affixed, as it appears in the preceding ones, require the  
 verb they govern to be put in the future, whenever this verb  
 is connected with another expressing a future action. Ex.

*Nous partirons quand vous* We shall set off when you  
*voudrez;* please.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

You will be rewarded *just as* you deserve.—*After* you  
 have done your exercises, you shall go out.—I will explain  
*thèmes, m.*

† Say, if we were, &c.

these rules to you <sup>as</sup> we read them.—*The moment* <sup>*à mesure que*</sup> *that* you burn this letter, the danger will be over.—  
 We will follow you <sup>*fini*</sup> *as far as* you go.—*As long as* you  
 (keep company with) those people, never come to my  
<sup>*fréquenter, v.*</sup> house.—<sup>*gens*</sup> We will set out *as soon as* we have dined.—  
 Send me Miss White, *when* she has done writing.—  
*As long as* you behave <sup>*fini, p. p. de*</sup> well, you will be dear to  
<sup>*se comporter, v.*</sup> me.—In short, said this good king, I shall only think  
 myself happy in *as much as* I cause the happiness of my  
 people.

2. It has been remarked on the degrees of comparison, that every comparative must be attended by the conjunction *que*, than; it must now be observed, that, if *que* precede a verb in the infinitive, it is to be followed by *de*. But if the verb be neither in, nor can be turned into the infinitive, the conjunction must then be attended by *ne*; that is, *que* before the noun or pronoun, and *ne* before the verb. Ex.

<i>Il vaut mieux être malheureux que d'être coupable,</i>	It is better to be unfortunate than criminal.
<i>Mon père est revenu plutôt que nous ne l'attendions,</i>	My father came back sooner than we expected him.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is more pleasing <sup>*agréable, adj.*</sup> to enjoy good health *than* to possess a large fortune.—It is harder (to be revenged) <sup>*se venger, v.*</sup> of an enemy, *than* to forgive him.—It is better to make a sacrifice of a limb, said the surgeon, *than* to lose your

life.—When the thunder roars, <sup>gronder, v.</sup> it is less dangerous to be in an open field, *than* to take shelter under a tree.—<sup>se mettre, v.</sup> Should you not apply more *than* you do; you, especially, who are to be useful to your country?—That would <sup>devez</sup> give me more pleasure *than* you imagine.—Did you not <sup>le</sup> receive your goods *before* war was declared?—How many people can say to themselves, had I employed my time better *than* I did when I was young, I should be (in good circumstances) now.—Diseases come faster <sup>à mon aise,</sup> than they go away. <sup>s'en aller, v.</sup>

CONJUNCTIONS WHICH GOVERN THE VERB IN THE  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Afin que,* } that; in order that.  
*Pour que,* }

*Avant que,* before.

*Au or en cas que,* in case that; if; suppose that.

*A moins que,†* } unless, till.  
*Excepté que,* }  
*Si ce n'est que,* }

*Que—ne,* }  
*Bien que,* } though, although, for all that, as.  
*Encore que,* }  
*Quoique,* }  
*Tout ‡ que,* }

*Bien entendu que,* with a proviso that, upon condition that, provided that.

† The conjunctions *thus marked* (†) require the negation *ne* before the following verbs. See the observations on *ne* and *ne-pas*, p. 370, No. 10.

*A moins qu'il ne le fasse,* Unless he does it.  
*De crainte, or de peur qu'ils ne viennent,* For fear, or lest they come.

‡ See Rule 11, page 136.



*De crainte que, †* } lest, for fear.  
*De peur que, †* }  
*Dieu veuille que,* God grant.  
*Plaise, or plut à Dieu que,* please God, or would to God.  
*À Dieu ne plaise,* God forbid.  
*Hormis que,* } save that, unless, except.  
*Hors que,* }  
*Jusqu'à ce que,* till, until.  
*Loin que,* far from.  
*Moyennant que,* } save that, provided that.  
*Pourvu que,* }  
*Nonobstant que,* notwithstanding that.  
*Pour peu que,* how little soever, however little.  
*Sans que,* without that.  
*Soit que,* whether, or.  
*Supposons que,* suppose, let us suppose that.  
*Tant s'en faut que je,* I am so far from.  
*Tant s'en faut qu'il or qu'elle,* he or she is so far from.  
*Tant s'en faut que nous, or vous,* we, or you are so far from.

## EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I will explain to you every difficulty, *that* you may not be disheartened in your undertaking.—Carry that money *décourager, v.* to Mrs. Nolle, *in order that* she may pay the writing-master when he come.—A wise and prudent man lives with *fut.* economy when young, *in order that* he may enjoy the fruit of his labour when old.\*———*Before* you begin an action, consider well, and see whether you can (bring *réfléchir* it about), *for* it is the end that crowns the work.—*In* *nir à bout* *œuvre, m.* case you want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you.—*If* I do not call upon you this afternoon, I will write to

\* Say, *when he will be old.*

you.—*Suppose* you lose your friends, what will become of you?——You will never be respected, *unless* you forsake the bad company you keep.——You *abandonner*, v. cannot finish (to-night), *unless* I help you.—I will not *fréquenter* lend it you, *unless* you promise me to return it to her as *ce soir*, soon as you can.—I shall not cease to importune you, *de rendre*, v. *fut.* till you have forgiven me.—They are not happy, *de* though they are rich.—The general arrived yesterday morning at the camp, weary and tired, but very seasonably; *las*, adj. immediately he gave his orders to begin the action, *pour*, p. *commencer* though he had not yet all his troops.—*For all attaque* that she has no fortune, I do not love her the less for it.—*As*<sup>1</sup> zealous<sup>3</sup> a friend<sup>2</sup> *as*<sup>4</sup> he appears to be, I do not trust him.—My mother will come to see you, *provided* you promise me to go to the play with her.—I will go to London to-morrow, *provided* you accompany me.—I will write again to your brother to-morrow, lest he should not have received my last letter.—  
(present of the subj.)  
We avoided an engagement *for fear* (of being defeated), *que nous ne* their force being superior to ours.—  
*fussions battus*  
God grant you may not be disappointed in your hopes!—  
*Would to God* I had been there! I would have conquered  
*vaincu*

or perished.—*God forbid* I should <sup>blame</sup> your  
conduct.—Your business never will be done properly, <sup>pres. of the subj.</sup> *unless*  
<sup>bien</sup> you do it yourself.—I shall not go out to-day, *except* you  
go with me.—They fought <sup>with fury</sup>  
<sup>venir</sup> <sup>se battre, v.</sup> <sup>acharnement, m.</sup>  
(on both sides), *till* night came.—I shall not set out,  
<sup>de part et d'autre</sup>  
*till* I have dined.—I will write *till* we go out.—*Far*  
<sup>avant que</sup>  
from from hating him, I wish him prosperity.—I  
<sup>pres. subj.</sup> <sup>du bonheur.</sup>  
forgive you this time, *provided* you promise me not to be  
<sup>de</sup>  
lazy any longer, and pay <sup>more attention</sup> to what you  
<sup>faire, v.</sup>  
are told.—I will give you leave to dance, *provided* you  
promise not to overheat yourself.—Why did you  
<sup>de s'échauffer, v.</sup>  
tell me my father was arrived, *though* you knew  
<sup>pret. ind.</sup>  
the contrary?—He is so quick, that *how little soever* he  
<sup>vif, adj.</sup>  
is contradicted, he (flies into a passion) in an instant.—  
<sup>contrarié,</sup> <sup>s'emporter, v.</sup>  
*However little* you give her, she is of so<sup>3</sup> good<sup>3</sup> a<sup>3</sup>  
<sup>lui</sup>  
temper<sup>4</sup>, that she is always pleased.—Can you touch  
<sup>naturel, m.</sup> <sup>content, adj.</sup>  
it *without* my brother perceiving it?—*Suppose* we dine  
<sup>s'appercevoir en</sup>  
here to-day, and to-morrow at our house.—I am *so far*  
from blaming you for having assisted him, that, on the  
contrary, I very much admire your conduct.—He is *so*  
*far from* despising her, that, on the contrary, he respects  
and honours her.—It is *so far from* raining, that, on the

contrary, I think we shall have dry and hot weather during all this week.

*Observations.*—1. The conjunction *si*, if, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the subjunctive mood, as, instead of saying,

<i>Si vous venez chez moi, et</i>	If you call upon me, and
<i>si vous ne me trouvez pas,</i>	do not find me at home,

It is more elegant to say,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et  
que vous ne me trouviez  
pas, &c.*

2.—*Que* must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding. Ex.

<i>Dès que je l'aurai vu et que je lui aurai parlé, je vous le ferai savoir,</i>	As soon as I have seen him and spoken to him, I will let you know it.
<i>Quoiqu'il soit plus riche que vous, et qu'il ait de meil- leurs amis,</i>	Though he is richer than you, and has better friends.

#### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

•(Read the two preceding Observations.

*If* your father do not arrive to-day, and *if* you want money, I will lend you some.—*If* you *avoir besoin de* should see your sister, and speak to her, &c.—*If* you study and take pains, I assure you that you will learn the French language in a very short time.—*Whether* you eat

or drink, sing, dance, or play,\* do every thing with grace and attention.—*If* you love me and be willing to oblige me, do not go to France with her.—*If* men were wise, and would follow the dictates of reason, they would save themselves many sorrows.—*If* you meet my brother, and he speak to you, do not answer.—*Though* you have good relations, *though* your merit be known, and you do not want friends, your projects will not succeed without your brother's assistance.—*As soon as* I have dressed myself, and breakfasted,† I will go to see him.—*While* you play and lose your money, your sister is learning her lesson.—We must pity him who has no talent.—Play on the organ, *while* I read my brother's letter and answer him.—*Beside* that he never studies, and is always in the country, he has not so much wit as his sister.—I will explain to you every difficulty, (*in order that*) you may take courage and learn well.—*Though* you should have the best master in England, and *Quand* learn all the rules of the grammar, if you do not put them in practice, you will never speak good French.—God

\* *Que* must be repeated before every one of those verbs; say, then, or that you drink, that you sing, that you dance, or that you play, &c.

† Say, and that I shall have breakfasted.

grant you may succeed in your pursuits, and obtain the  
*entreprise, f.*  
 favour you solicit so ardently!—Whether God raise  
*grâce, f.* *élever, v.*  
 up thrones, or pull them down; whether he com-  
*abaisser, v.*  
 municate his power to princes, or withdraw it  
*puissance, f.* *retirer, v.*  
 (from them), and only leave them their own weakness;  
*leur*  
 he teaches them their duty in a sovereign manner.—  
*de, p.*  
 Whether you speak or hold your tongue, you will  
*se taire, v.*  
 obtain nothing from me; but whatever you may say, speak  
 (so that) you may never offend any one.—Your bro-  
*de manière à* *infi.*  
 ther told me he was young, and was but twenty years old  
 when he was made a captain; I think he was better in-  
 formed, and had more experience than you have.—I  
 can assure you, that both our officers and soldiers have  
 behaved nobly, and performed prodigies of valour.

**RULE 1.**—All verbs denoting *wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, entreaty, persuasion, pretension, surprise, &c.*, when followed by the conjunction *que*, govern the following verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb must be put in the subjunctive mood. The verb *croire*, to think, to believe, when used negatively or interrogatively, and followed by the conjunction *que*, governs the following verb in the subjunctive mood. **Ex.**

*Croyez-vous qu'il soit hon-  
 nête?*

Do you believe him to be  
 honest?

*Je doute que vous le fassiez,*

I doubt of your doing it.

*Je ne crois pas qu'elle vienne,* I do not believe she will come.

That is to say, *do you believe THAT he, &c. I doubt THAT you will do it.*

See FALLOIR, and the rules after it.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You wish him to pay you: he has no money, I am obliged to lend him some every day.—I do not think <sup>de</sup> that true philosophy may be less useful to women than men; but I remark, <sup>remarquer, v.</sup> that the most part of those who meddle <sup>(with it)</sup> are but very bad philosophers, and do <sup>se mêler, v.</sup> <sup>en</sup> not become better wives for it.—I do not believe that <sup>en</sup> your mother will arrive to-day.—She wishes you may succeed in all your undertakings.—I fear \* she <sup>pres. subj.</sup> <sup>craindre v.</sup> (will go away) without speaking to me.—I much fear <sup>s'en aller, v.</sup> <sup>infi.</sup> he will come sooner than you expect him.†—Do <sup>attendre, v.</sup> you not say you are surprised that William has not spoken to you (ever since) last week?—For my part, I am not <sup>depuis</sup> <sup>Quant à moi</sup> surprised at it, for he is always pouting.—Do you think <sup>bouder, v.</sup> he will succeed, and obtain the place ‡ he aims at?—<sup>pres. subj.</sup> <sup>aspirer, v.</sup> You have had much trouble, and we all fear lest hereafter she should give you || much more.—If you believe him

\* See p. 370, No. 10.

† See p. 369, No. 5.

‡ Say, *and that he will obtain the place to which, &c.*

|| Say, *elle ne vous en donne, &c.*

to be your friend,\* why then do you not follow his advice?—It is necessary for you to go thither, and assure him, that I am very thankful <sup>que</sup> for all his kindness.—  
 I wonder that Mr. R. has not yet <sup>reconnoissant de</sup> asked your sister in marriage.—If you see her, and she speak to you, do <sup>encore</sup> not answer her.—Order <sup>qu'elle</sup> her to do it.—Do you <sup>lui</sup> imagine <sup>Ordonner</sup> we are sure they will come to-night?—Do <sup>s'imaginer, v.</sup> you think <sup>ce soir</sup> it is possible for you to (bring it about)?—  
<sup>croire, v.</sup> It is just <sup>que</sup> we should suffer, since we deserve it.—He <sup>en venir à bout, v.</sup> (was afraid) lest you (should come) while he was <sup>craindre, v.</sup> <sup>que</sup> <sup>imperf. subj.</sup> (gone out).—Our master has ordered, that we should get <sup>sortir, v.</sup> up to-morrow morning early.—You did not think <sup>vions</sup> that she wanted to deceive you, when she told you that. <sup>vouloir, v.</sup>—I wonder <sup>être surpris, v.</sup> you should doubt, that it is your daughter who told it me.—Do you think my mother will let us go to the ball next week?—Were Mr. S. <sup>permettre</sup> discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would communicate it to him immediately.—It will be better for <sup>que</sup> you to go and speak to him yourself, while he is in town, <sup>en</sup> because I do not doubt of his undertaking it.†—I am cer-

\* Here the verb *croire* being used affirmatively, governs the verb *être* in the indicative mood; say, then, *si vous croyez qu'il est*, &c.

† Say, *I do not doubt THAT he WILL UNDERTAKE it.* (Pres. subj.)



tain that he will satisfy you.——Your uncle is very glad  
 fut.  
 you have written to your father.——I will give you no  
 rest, unless you are reconciled with your mother.——I  
*que ne*  
 do not believe it is she who has done it.——My brother  
 is not well, and I doubt very much of his coming to see  
 us before next spring.——Do you think he is on the  
*que*  
 road?——I doubt whether he will come before next  
*en, p. ∞*  
*suivant, adj.*  
 week or not.

RULE 2.—1st. After the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* governing another verb, is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*.

2d. When the sign of the future tense, *shall*, refers to the will of a person, and means *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose, &c.* it must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person of its subject with the following verb in the subjunctive mood. Ex.

<i>Je veux qu'il fasse cela,</i>	I will have him do that.
<i>Je veux que vous me mon-</i>	You shall show me that letter,
<i>triez cette lettre,</i>	that is to say, I choose you
	to show, &c.
<i>Voulez-vous que je danse?</i>	Shall I dance? that is to say,
	do you choose that, &c.

## EXERCISE.

You would have your daughter return to-mor-  
*Vouloir, v.* *revenir, v.*  
 row, but that is impossible.——I will have your father  
 know what you have done: you must stay here till he  
*rester, v.*  
 come——Your mother would have you come directly;  
 why do not you come then?——I absolutely intend  
*vouloir, v.*

that she shall go thither directly, and tell him that,  
*aille à l'instant*  
 whether he be ill or well, I will have him set out as soon  
 as he has received my letter.—I will have you see my  
 house, and tell me what you think of it.—She shall not  
 go into the country, unless I go with her.—My father  
 would have me and my brother walk all the way.  
*faire à pied, v.*  
 —Your sister shall go with me to Croydon, and not you.  
 —Your father will have you go to France in a month;  
 I am very glad of it; however I would not have you act  
*agir*  
 too precipitately.—Shall my brother show you  
*avec trop de précipitation*  
 his translation?—Your brother asked me whether he  
*pret. ind.*  
 might go home to-morrow; I told him he might  
*pret. ind. pouvoir, imperf.*  
 go whenever he thought proper: but you shall remain  
*le jugerait à propos*  
 here till you have learned all your lessons.—I know a  
 gentleman who is going to Paris: shall I tell him to  
*de*  
 call upon you?—I would not have you go to Germany  
*passer chez*  
 without understanding French well, as that language  
*car*  
 will enable you to learn German much sooner than  
*mettra à même*  
 you imagine.—Your brother shall not go out to-day.  
*penser*  
 —Will you (be so good as to) go and carry that letter  
*avoir la bonté de*  
 to the post? I tell you, that you shall go; I would have  
 you pay more attention to what you are told.\*

**RULE 3d.** *Qui, que, or dont*, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood; and when *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood. Ex.

*C'est la plus belle femme* She is the handsomest woman  
*qu'on puisse voir,* man that can be seen.  
*C'est le plus méchant garçon* He is the most wicked boy  
*que je connoisse,* that I know.  
*Je veux une femme qui soit* I will have a wife who is  
*belle,* handsome; that is to say,  
 I will not have any woman for a wife, but *on condition* she  
 be handsome.

**Observation.**—*He is, she is, it is, they are*, being followed by a substantive or a pronoun, must be rendered by *c'est lui, c'est elle, c'est eux*.

## EXERCISE.

Do you say you are surprised, that he has not yet  
*encore*  
 written to you? I assure you (it is not to be wondered at),  
*cela n'est pas surprenant*  
 for he is the most negligent man I know.—It is neces-  
 sary for you to go thither, and assure him\* that he has  
*que*  
 done nothing that should (make me angry).—  
*devoir, v. pres. sub. fâcher, v.*  
 He is the most charitable man we have in this neighbour-  
 hood.—Did you not tell me you sought a master  
*chercher, v.*  
 who had a good pronunciation, and a great deal of  
 patience?—When a father is capable of teaching his  
 children, he is the best master that they can have.—  
 I know nobody that improves more than Miss C.†  
*faire des progrès,*  
 and when she was learning French, had she learned it

\* Say, and that you, &c.

† Say, who makes more progress than, &c.

by rules, she would speak, write, and translate now, much better than Miss S., though she was two years in France.

—Has not your brother some friends whom he can trust? —Your father has bought the finest horse that I *se fier, v.*

have ever seen. —Is there any lady that appears more reasonable than she does —It will be better for you to go and speak to him yourself, instead of writing to him. He

is the most diligent and the most careful man we have in this country. —Before you begin any thing of importance, consult somebody on whom you can rely. —

Do you know any body who goes to France? —If you do not follow my advice, believe me, it will be the greatest misfortune that can happen to you. —Babylon was the finest city that ever was built. —If you lend me a horse, lend me one that goes well. —The God who has created us, and who created the universe, is the only one to whom we owe adoration, and the only one whom we ought to fear.

## CHAP. IX.—OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections; as before observed, serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, calling, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

*Courage ! Allons !* come, be cheerful !

*Ça, courage !* come, come on !

*Bon !* good !

*Ah, mon Dieu !* oh, my God !

*Ah ! ay !*

*Ha, quelle joie !* O, joy !

*O ciel !* O heaven !

*Fi ! fi !* fy upon ! fy !

*Hola, ho !* ho, there !

*Hélas !* alas !

*Malheur à !* wo to !

*Miséricorde !* bless me !

*Prenez garde !* gare ! have a care !

*Paix, chut, st, st !* hist, hush !

*Silence !* silence !

## EXERCISE.

Come, friends, let us rejoice——Come ! here are news  
*se réjouir, v.*

for you, brother.——Fy, fy ! Robert, you do not think

of what you say.——Why do you not endeavour <sup>*penser, v.*</sup> to  
*à* acquire it?——Alas ! who can express the torments I  
*s'efforcer, v. de*

suffer here?——A man without religion, never having his

heart or mind at peace, can, alas ! be but a very  
*esprit, m. en, p.*

unfortunate creature.——Wo to you ! usurers, misers,  
*usurier, m. avare, m.*

unjust possessors of (other people's) goods ; hearken  
*autrui, pro. bien, m. écouter, v.*

to these words :——The treasures of iniquity (will be of no  
*parole, f. ne servir de*

service) to you.——O ! (lazy people), go to the ant ;  
*rien*

consider what she does, and learn from her wisdom and  
*fourmi, f.*

industry.——Bless me ! I am undone!——Hush there !

silence!——O ! the dismal <sup>*perdu, p. p.*</sup> effects which laziness pro-  
*funeste, adj.*

duces!—How<sup>1</sup> tremendous<sup>7</sup> an<sup>2</sup> office<sup>3</sup> is<sup>6</sup> that of<sup>4</sup> a  
*terrible, adj. le* *science, f.*  
 judge<sup>5</sup>! What wisdom, what integrity, what knowledge,  
 what sagacity of mind, what experience (are required!)  
*ne faut-il pas avoir, v.*

---

RULES on the PREPOSITIONS *de*, *à* and *pour* with respect to verbs that either command or reject them.

RULE 1.—1st. No verb, standing as subject to another verb, is to be preceded by any preposition. Ex.

*Nourrir des sentimens de vengeance est indigne d'un bon chrétien,* To entertain sentiments of revenge is unworthy of a good christian.

2d. No preposition is to be placed before any verb preceded by one of the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, falloir, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, pouvoir, oser, vouloir* and *penser*, this last, meaning *être sur le point*, to be near.

#### EXERCISE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every body has not.—To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, are the two great sciences of life.

—I had rather do it now than later.—Why  
*aimer mieux, v.*

dare you not undertake it? I think you might succeed.  
*pouvoir, v. réussir, v.*

—He says he will lend you his gun with all his  
*fusil, m. de*  
 heart, because you know how to make use of it.—  
*se servir, v.*

Aristotle, though so great a philosopher, was never able  
*très*  
 to penetrate the cause of that prodigy.—Tell him, that

he may set out when (he pleases).—You never  
*il lui plaira, v. ne-pas*  
 could come more seasonably.—We are going to  
*pouvoir, v. à propos*

Vauxhall to-morrow.——I am going to see your brother.

——(Is it not better) to set out now, than wait  
*valoir mieux, v.* *de attendre, v.*

any longer?——If you think to oblige her, you mistake.

*plus long temps.* *se tromper, v.*

——We intended to have a ball yesterday, but my sister

was not well.——I had like to have fallen twenty

times coming hither.——To instruct, please, and move  
*Ai pensé* *en* *tomber*

the passions, are the three principal qualifications requisite

in an orator.——If you would read this book, I  
*en* *talent, m.*

could lend it to you for four or five days.

*dans* *vouloir, v.*

*pouvoir, v.*

RULE 2.—1st. The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood, when any of the following words, *of*, *from*, or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb. (See rule 28, on the participle active, page 334.

2dly. After a noun substantive joined immediately to a verb, either with or without the following articles, *le*, *la*, or *les*.

3dly. After the following adjectives, *decent*, *glad*, *impossible*, *necessary*, *sorry*, *worthy*, *vexed*, and the like.

4thly. After the following verbs: *to advise*, *to apprehend*, *to bid*, *to cease*, *to command*, *to conjure*, *to counsel*, *to defend*, *to defer*, *to deserve*, *to desire*, *to endeavour*, *to intreat*, *to fear*, *to hasten*, *to long*, *to order*, *to permit*, *to persuade*, *to pray*, *to pretend*, *to promise*, *to propose*, *to refuse*, *to remember*, *to threaten*, *to tell*, *to warn*, *to undertake*, &c.

5thly. After the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

EXERCISE.

I have desired your brother to lend me some money.

*prier, v.*

——My mother ordered me to tell you, to go and

*ordonner, v.*

speak to her directly.——Did you not permit him to

*à l'instant*

*lui*

go out this morning?—I am surprised to find you so ill.  
*sortir, v.*

—I have not desired you to play.—Bid *dire, v. à* your  
sister to send me my book.—We were afraid of dis-

pleasing you.—What do you advise *conseiller, v.* me to do in

such<sup>2</sup> a<sup>1</sup> case?—My sister and I intend to (call  
upon) you on Friday next.—I am very glad to  
*passer, v.*  
*chez, p.*

hear you are better.—She does not pretend  
*apprendre, v.* *se piquer, v.*  
to speak French as well as you.—We are tired of

repeating to you the same things so often.—If you  
finish your exercise soon, you will have the pleasure of  
taking a walk, while the others will have the trouble of  
studying.—It is necessary to tell her not to go thither

*lui*  
(any more;)\* for she would be in danger of losing her  
*plus, adv.*

life.—Endeavour to please your masters by your appli-  
*à*  
cation to study.—Do not you remember having said

you would take me to the camp?—Do not they  
*mener, v.*

deserve to be encouraged, who undertake to serve the  
*mériter, v.*

public?—We are all glad to hear you have overcome  
your enemies; we should have been sorry to have heard

the contrary.—How foolish you are to grieve so,  
*s'affliger, v.*  
when you have so much reason to rejoice!—Never

expect to speak French well, unless you practise it very  
*espérer* *parler*

\* *De n'y plus aller.* *Plus* takes the place of *pas*, meaning *no more*.



much.—I shall never refuse to do you a service, as  
*rendre, v.*

long as it will be in my power.—Have you a mind to

do what you have promised me?—I *envie, f.* desired

you to bring your sister with you; why did you not? \*—  
*preter pluperfect*

I forbid you to speak or write to him (any more).—

*défendre, v.* *davantage, adv.*

Would you not be very glad to read and speak Italian?

—Condemn the opinion of (no one) hastily; but

*personne*

endeavour to regulate your own by the line of truth.—

*s'efforcer, v.* *vérité, f.*

Who can hinder me from speaking or writing to

her?—*empêcher, v.*

(Give me leave) to tell you, that you do very

wrong to disoblige your aunt.—He (was not con-

*mal, adv.* *se conten-*

tented) to demolish the temple and pull down the statues,

*ter, v.* *abattre, v.*

but, &c.—(Is there any thing) more glorious, than to

*Est-il rien de*

change enmity into friendship?—(I long) to see

*Il me tarde, v.*

your mother, and tell her all that I think (about it.)

*lui en, pro.*

RULE 3d.—The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood.

1st. After the auxiliary verb, *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action. Ex.

*J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire,* I have many letters to write.

2dly. After nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be addicted, apt, bent, diligent, disposed, dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.

\* *Do it*, is understood, and must be expressed in French. The verb *faire* must be put in the preterite indef.

3dly. After the following adjectives, *admirable, good, dexterous, handsome, scarce, the last, the first, the second, &c.*

4thly. After the following verbs, *to amuse, to aspire or aim at, to begin, to condemn, to continue or go on, to compel or force, to design or destine, to dispose, to employ or spend, to encourage, to engage, to excite, to exhort, to help, to induce, to invite, to learn, to please, to serve, to take a pleasure or delight into, or to teach, to think, &c.*

## EXERCISE.

Come hither, Paul, I have something to communicate to you.—We have much to fear in our present situation, and a great many hazards to run.—I cannot go to the play to-night; for, I have five or six visits to pay.—  
*rendre, v.*  
 Is there any thing pleasanter to behold than the flux and reflux of the sea?—We ought to learn how to subdue <sup>à</sup> our passions, conquer our desires, and suffer *subjuguer, v.* patiently the most cruel misfortunes.—She is always *disgrace, f.* the first to (find fault) with what I do.—Do not *trouver à redire à* gather that apple, it is not yet good to eat.—Mr. N. told me you had a country-house to let.—Mr. F. is a *louer, v.* very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends, but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming.—We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered.—The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do.—It is very hard *difficile, adj.* to believe what you

say of her.—Tell him, I have no complaint to make  
*d'elle*  
of his conduct.—Why do you oblige her to ask my  
*de*  
pardon, since she is not inclined to do so herself?—I  
*disposée*  
believe she takes a delight in tormenting me.—Life is  
*plaisir*  
so short, that we should employ all our days in preparing  
ourselves for the other world.—There is no more danger  
to fear.—Use yourself, said a father to his son, to  
*S'accoutumer, v.*  
practise virtue. Virtue alone helps us to bear with  
*supporter, v.*  
patience all the vicissitudes of fortune.—Never amuse  
yourself in reading bad books.—You can never spend  
*passer, v.*  
your time better than in reading and studying the history  
of your own country.—Learn to speak well ; but, above  
all, to speak truth.—That science which teaches us to  
*dire, v.*  
see things as they are, is highly worthy of being cultivated.  
An affectionate man always takes pleasure in obliging his  
friends.—Does your master teach you how to translate  
English into French?—Do you begin to translate  
French well?—Why did you not oblige him to pay  
you what he owes you?—Why do you not (get ready)  
*s'appréter, v.*  
to set out with us?—I love to discourse with polite<sup>2</sup>  
*s'entretenir, v.*  
and<sup>3</sup> sensible<sup>4</sup> people<sup>1</sup>.  
*éclairés gens*

*Observations.*—1st. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to*

*exhort, to compel, or force, to endeavour, to oblige*, may be followed by *de* or *à*, as most convenient.

2d. The preposition *pour* is often used to translate *to* after the adverbs *enough, on purpose, too, too much, or less*; and before an infinitive in the beginning of a period.

3d. Whenever *in order to* can be substituted for the English preposition *to*, that preposition must be rendered by *pour*.

## EXERCISE.

I will do (every thing) in my power to please him.—  
*tout*

Good rules are useless, if the attention, industry, and  
*assiduité, f.*  
patience of the scholar be not put into practice to learn

them.—Mrs. B. has too much pride to confess she

(is in the wrong.)—To understand geography well, we  
*avoir tort* *on*

must, &c.—I assure you that I came on purpose to see  
*tout exprès*

you.—The wicked live to die, but the righteous die to

live.—She has vanity enough to believe all you tell her.

—What makes the misfortunes of kings, is not to have

friends bold enough to tell them the truth.—I wrote to

you some time ago to let you know, that your brothers  
*faire, v.*

were arrived.—He promised me, that he would do

every thing to deserve the honour of your protection.—

I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's to desire her to

send me back again the book I lent her a month ago ;

but she was not at home.—We did all that we could

to pass the river, but could not (*accomplish it*).—Why  
*faire, v.*  
*venir à bout de, v.*

did you not punish her for having done what you forbade her to do?—A man should live a century at least to know the world, and many other centuries (to know how to) make a proper use of that knowledge.

*devoit siècle*  
*connoître encore*  
*apprendre à bon connoissance*

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PREPOSITIONS *en*, *dans*, and *à*,  
 IN OR AT.

*EN* expresses a vague and indeterminate sense. Ex.

*EN tous temps, ÉN tous lieux le public est injuste. J'ai vécu en pays étranger.*

*DANS* expresses a precise and determinate sense, and conveys to the mind the idea of *within*; it means that the object spoken of is contained within such another. Ex.

*Ma sœur est dans sa chambre, My sister is in her room.*  
*Ce livre est dans la bibliothèque, That book is in the library.*

The preposition *à* expresses also a precise sense, and points out the situation of the object spoken of. Ex.

*Ils sont à la promenade, They are out walking.*  
*Mes enfans sont au spectacle, My children are at the theatre.*

*Observations.*—1st. It often happens that the mind of him who speaks embraces at once the idea attached to *within*, as well as that of the *situation* of the object spoken of; and in such cases *dans* and *à* may be indifferently used. Ex.

*Il est dans le jardin, or il est au jardin, He is in the garden.*  
*Le cheval est dans l'écurie, or à l'écurie, The horse is in the stable.*

2d. *EN* points out the *duration*, the length of time; as *in an hour*; *in a short time*, and answers this question: *in what time? in what length of time?* Ex.

*Il arrivera en trois jours, He will arrive in three days; that is to say, he will take three days to come.*

DANS points out the time when an event will take place; it answers this question—*When?* Ex.

*Il arrivera dans trois jours,* He will arrive three days hence.

3d. The three following modes of speaking claim some attention.

ÊTRE EN VILLE; ÊTRE DANS LA VILLE; ÊTRE À LA VILLE.

To say of Mrs. B. who lives in town, *elle est en ville*, is equivalent to this: *elle n'est pas chez elle*, she is not at home.

To say Mrs. B. *est dans la ville*, merely means that she is somewhere *within* the town.

To say that she is *à la ville* implies only that she is residing in town.

ÊTRE EN CAMPAGNE; ÊTRE À LA CAMPAGNE.

*Etre en campagne* means (speaking of troops) that *they* have taken the field.

*Être en campagne* means also that *we* are travelling.

*Être à la campagne* implies that *we* live in the country. Ex.

*Les troupes sont en campagne,* The troops have taken the field.

*Mon père est en campagne pour affaire,* My father is travelling on business.

*Nous demeurons, or nous sommes à la campagne,* We live in the country.

IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS ON THE VERB *avoir*, to have, &c.

*Avoir mal à la tête,* to have the head-ache, or a pain in the head.

*Avoir mal aux oreilles,* to have sore ears, or a pain in the ears.

*Avoir mal aux yeux,* to have sore eyes, or a pain in the eyes.

*Avoir mal au nez,* to have a sore nose, or a pain in the nose.

*Avoir mal à la bouche,* to have a sore mouth, or a pain in the mouth.

*Avoir mal aux dents, &c.* to have the tooth-ache.

We say, after the same manner,

*Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c.* Ex.

*J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds,* My head, my hands, and my feet are cold.

*Avoir beau,* to be in vain. Ex.

*Vous avez beau parler,* It is in vain for you to talk.

*Avoir de la peine à.* *Avoir peine à.* Ex.

*J'ai peine à vous croire,* I can hardly believe you.

*Avoir besoin de,* to want to have occasion for.

*Avoir la bonté de (daigner),* to be so kind as.

*Avoir connoissance, avis de,* to have notice of.

*Avoir cours,* to take, to be in vogue.

*Avoir honte, rougir,* to be ashamed.

*Avoir la mine de,* to be like, to look like. Ex.

*Vous avez la mine d'être intelligent,* You look like a man of understanding.

*Avoir pitié de,* to pity.

*Avoir part au gâteau,* to share in the booty.

*Avoir bonne mine.* Ex.

*Vous avez très-bonne mine aujourd'hui,* } You look very well to-day.

*Avoir plus de peur que de mal,* to be more afraid than hurt.

*Avoir raison,* to be in the right.

*Avoir soin,* to take care.

*Avoir tort,* to be in the wrong.

*N'avoir que faire de,* to have no occasion or business of or for.

*N'avoir garde de,* or } are ex- { to be sure not, or by  
*Se garder bien de,* } pressed by { no means.

*Aller son train,* to go one's own way.

*Aller trouver quelqu'un,* to go to somebody.

*Venir trouver,* to come to.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had pret. ind.

A PAIN IN MY head.—My brother would have come with me, but he has A SORE LEG, and is obliged to keep his bed.—I heard your mother had the TOOTH-ACHE: is it true? No, madam, but she has A PAIN IN HER side,

which prevents her from going out.—I have not yet finished my exercise ; for MY HANDS WERE SO COLD, that I could not write another word. IT WILL BE IN VAIN FOR YOU to write to me ; I never will answer you.—I CAN HARDLY believe what you tell me.—IT IS IN VAIN FOR ME to speak to her, she still GOES HER OWN WAY.—*toujours* Miss N. cried very much ; but I think she was MORE AFRAID THAN HURT.—IT HAS BEEN IN VAIN FOR HIM to torment your sister ; she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr. P's.—Go to him, and tell him that, unless he returns me my books in a very short time, I will desire his father to send them to me : when you have told him that, do not wait for his answer ; COME TO me immediately ; I shall be at your mother's, where I am to dine, and thence go to the play with the whole family.—IN VAIN I give myself trouble ; I am not the richer for it.—Your sister does not LOOK SO WELL to-day as she did yesterday.—AM I NOT IN THE RIGHT to go there no more ?—I WILL TAKE CARE to prevent them from coming hither.—Believe me, I have long suspected them, and now I am very certain that both your cousins and they HAVE HAD A SHARE IN THE BOOTY.—We SHOULD often BE ASHAMED of our finest actions, if



the world knew all the motives which cause them. You ARE IN THE WRONG not to ask for his horse; he would lend it to you. Why should I borrow his horse, when I have one of my own? I HAVE NO OCCASION FOR his—*moi-même* BE SO KIND as to carry that letter to Mr. H's.; but BE SURE NOT to tell him who *lui* sent you.—I hope you will BY NO MEANS go there again, after what has happened to you.—Somebody having advised Philip, Alexander's father, to banish from his states a man who had spoken ill of him; I SHALL BY NO MEANS DO IT, answered he; he would go every where and speak ill of me.

On ÊTRE, to be.

Être { *à son aise,*  
*en bonne passe,*  
*bien dans ses affaires,* } to be in good circumstances.

Être bien auprès de quelqu'un, to be in great favour with some one.

Être mal avec quelqu'un, to be out of favour with some one.

Être à charge à quelqu'un, to be chargeable, troublesome, or a burden to some one.

Être but à but, to be equal.

Être de moitié, to go halves.

Être à la portée du fusil, du canon, to be within musket-shot, gun-shot.

Être à la portée de la voix, to be within call.

Être { *à la veille de,*  
*sur le point de,* } to be upon the brink, or very near to.

Être en état de,  
Avoir le moyen de, } to afford, to be able.

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother is in good circumstances now.—  
 Somebody told me he was in great favour with the king. Yes, it is true; but he is out of favour with my father, because he is troublesome to the family.—  
 Well, Mr. R. and he are equals.—I thought Mr. A. and Mrs. D. went halves in that affair; but I heard the contrary.—Suffer me to tell you, you do very wrong to treat her as you do; you undoubtedly have forgotten she is in the queen's favour. Well, if she is in the queen's favour, do you imagine I am not to tell her what I think of her conduct?—The two fleets were within gun-shot, and very near beginning the engagement, when we lost sight of them.—We will be *les perdîmes de vue* within call.—Why do not you take a coach now and then? said she to me. I would willingly take one sometimes, replied I to her, but I cannot afford it.

## On FAIRE, to make, or do.

*Faire cas de*, to value, to esteem.

*Faire un tour de promenade*, to take a walk.

*Faire le malade*, to sham sickness.

*Faire l'école buissonnière*, to play truant.

*Faire beaucoup de chemin*, to go a great way.

*Faire le bel esprit*, to set up for a wit.

*Faire fond sur quelqu'un*, to rely upon one.

*Faire savoir*, (*envoyer dire*), to let one know, to inform,  
to send word.

*Faire voile*, or }  
*Mettre à la voile*, } to set sail.

*Faire faire*, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.

*Faire de son mieux*, to do our best.

*Faire semblant*, to pretend.

*Faire de son pis*, to do our worst.

*Ne faire que de*, to be just, or

*Venir de*, to have but just. Ex.

*Il ne fait que d'arriver*, He is but just arrived.

*Ne faire que*, to do nothing but.

*Se faire des amis, des ennemis*, to get friends, enemies.

*Se faire des affaires*, to bring one's self into trouble.

*S'en faire accroire*, to be conceited, to have a good opi-  
nion of one's self.

*C'en est fait de moi*, I am undone, it is over with me.

*C'en étoit fait de lui*, he was undone, it was over with him.

*C'en sera fait d'elle*, she will be undone, it will be over  
with her.

*C'en seroit fait de nous*, we should be undone, it would be  
over with us.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle past, is rendered in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle past is turned into the infinitive mood. Ex.

*Il lui fit couper la tête*, He caused his head to be  
cut off.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring for I VALUE it much ; it is a particular friend of your's who gave it me.—I would go and TAKE A WALK, if I were well.—Do you not SHAM SICKNES snow and then?—Did not your brother PLAY TRUANT last week?—That man GOES A GREAT WAY for

a trifle.—Mr. P. SETS UP FOR A WIT wherever he goes.

—You may RELY UPON what I tell you.—He succeeds better IN BEING CONCEITED, than in giving others a good opinion of himself.—I begin to be very much satisfied with his brother, who now DOES HIS BEST, and will soon be able to write a French letter to his father.—

LET ME KNOW whether he will pay you or not.—We SHALL SET SAIL about the fifteenth of the next month.—

Why did not you BESPEAK three or four pair of shoes more?—SEND WORD TO your brother, or LET him *de plus*.

KNOW, that there is a<sup>2</sup> letter<sup>3</sup> for<sup>4</sup> him<sup>5</sup> here<sup>1</sup>.—I will give him an exercise, and OBLIGE HIM TO DO it in my *thème*, m.

presence.—She told me that, if she WERE OBLIGED TO do it, she WOULD DO HER WORST.—She PRETENDS not to listen; but I assure you she does not lose a word of of what you say.—We were BUT JUST come in when it began to rain.—It WOULD HAVE BEEN OVER WITH US, had the enemy known what passed in our camp.—You DO NOTHING BUT play from morning till night.—That *du* *au soir* young lady WILL GET FRIENDS every where.—If you do not take care, you WILL BRING YOURSELF INTO TROUBLE.—Permit me to tell you, that they ARE TOO CON-

**CITED.**—Your brother is **UNDONE**, if his master come to know it.—In 1606, King James caused the oath of allegiance (to be drawn up;) and, in 1621, summoned a parliament, in which (were formed) the two parties, called *Whigs and Tories*.

ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Aimer mieux*, to have rather, to choose rather.  
*Se donner bien des airs*, to take a great deal upon one's self.  
*Il ne faut pas s'étonner*, it is no wonder.  
*Il me tarde de*, I long to, &c.  
*Penser*, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)  
*S'en prendre à*, to lay the fault or blame upon one, to look to one for.  
*S'y bien prendre*, or } to go the right way to  
*S'y prendre de la bonne façon*, } work.  
*S'y prendre mal*, to go the wrong way to work.  
*S'y prendre tout autrement*, to go quite a different, or another, way to work.  
*Prendre en mauvaise part*, to take amiss.  
*Venir à bout de*, to bring about, to accomplish.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

**I CHOOSE RATHER** to set out now than later.—She told me she **HAD RATHER** do any thing, than speak to Mr. L.—They **HAD RATHER** have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer.—Do not you think **MRS. H. TAKES A GREAT DEAL UPON HERSELF?**—It is no wonder that I do not speak French so well as you; you have been several years in France, and I never was there.—I hope your brother will succeed in his under-

taking ; for he GOES THE RIGHT WAY TO WORK, and I am certain that he WILL BRING IT ABOUT.—Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor ; for he GOES THE WRONG WAY TO WORK in every thing he undertakes.—She LONGS TO see your father, and tell him how well you have behaved all the time of his absence.—I HAD LIKE to have been killed in coming here.—If he lose, he WILL LAY THE BLAME UPON you.—Why do you LAY THE BLAME UPON her ? she was not even in the room when that happened.—Should not your sister succeed, whom WOULD SHE LAY THE FAULT UPON ?—I LONG TO tell you something ; yet I do not know how to communicate it to you, for fear of disoblighing you.—When you have a mind to tell me something disagreeable, you should GO QUITE A DIFFERENT WAY TO WORK —I beg of you not TO TAKE AMISS what I tell you. Do not begin a thing, unless you are sure TO BRING IT ABOUT.

## ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Se passer de*, to do without, or to be easy without.

*Savoir bon gré*, to take kindly of as a favour.

*Trouver mauvais que*, to take ill if.\*

*Trouver à redire à*, to find fault with.

*Tenir maison*, to be a housekeeper.

*Tenir boutique*, to be a shopkeeper.

*Tenir parole*, to keep our word.

\* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

*Ne tenir qu'à*, { to be in a person's power,  
                  { to lie in a person's power. Ex.

*Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c.* It is in my, your, his, her, power, &c.

*Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, &c., que,* It is not my, your, fault, &c., if.\*

*S'en tenir à*, to stand to.

*Vouloir du bien à*, to wish one well.

*En vouloir à*, to have a spite against.

*Je souhaiterois pouvoir*, I wish I could.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie*, your life is, was, at stake.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur*, my honour is, was, concerned in it.

*Je ne laisse pas de*, I nevertheless, or for all that.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some; but when I have none, I AM EASY WITHOUT.—If you will BE SO KIND AS TO write to my father, to let him know my situation, I SHALL TAKE IT AS A FAVOUR, and I promise you never to FIND FAULT WITH what you may command me.—I WISH I COULD do you that service, I would do it with all my heart.—I hope you WILL NOT TAKE IT ILL IF I write to your uncle (at the) same time.—I SHALL STAND <sup>en</sup> TO what you say.—HE HAS BEEN A HOUSEKEEPER these five-and-twenty years.—He might have succeeded much better than he has done, had he followed his uncle's advice and mine; but he never was satisfied, and was continually FINDING FAULT WITH what we were telling him.

\* With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

However little you send him at present, he will TAKE IT  
*Quelque peu que*

KINDLY OF you.—IT IS IN HER POWER to live in the  
 country, and be very happy there. IT WILL SOON LIE IN

YOUR POWER to make us happy.—I assure you it SHALL  
*de*

NOT BE MY FAULT IF you do not succeed; for I WISH

YOU WELL.—Since it LIES IN YOUR POWER to recom-

*Puisque* mend Mr. P. to your friend, why do you not do it?—  
*de*

When you see him, you may assure him, that, since it is

IN MY POWER to do it, I will not forget him.—You

HAVE A SPITE AGAINST my brother; because IT WAS

IN HIS POWER two or three times to oblige you, and he  
*pret. ind.*

never would.—I WISH I COULD persuade you how sorry

*ne l'a jamais fait*

he was for it; but his honour WAS CONCERNED in not  
*pret. ind.*

doing it: and, though you are very angry with him, he

would, NEVERTHELESS, (or, FOR ALL THAT,) do you

a service if IT WERE IN HIS POWER.—Had I thought he

would have refused me that favour, I never would have

asked it of him; I might very well HAVE DONE WITHOUT

IT.—You ought to have thanked him for that attention,

instead of being angry with him; but when your sisters  
*de*

heard that you could not obtain his leave, THEY TOOK IT

AMISS, and have (ever since) HAD A SPITE AGAINST HIM.

*depuis lors*



—When they told me of it, I would most willingly  
 have represented to them how much they <sup>bien</sup> WERE IN THE  
 WRONG; but (I could by NO MEANS) do it; for I know  
 IT IS IN THEIR POWER to do me a great deal of harm,  
 and I do not wish to GET ENEMIES.\*—Every body ad-  
 mires her humanity; for, though he has behaved in<sup>1</sup> so<sup>4</sup>  
 ungrateful<sup>5</sup> a<sup>2</sup> manner<sup>3</sup> towards her, she would, <sup>se comporter d'</sup> NEVER-  
 THELESS, have done him a service, if he had lived.

#### GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.

##### Of the UNDERSTANDING OF LANGUAGES.

The understanding of languages serves (for an) intro-  
 duction to all the sciences. By it we come <sup>intelligence, f.</sup> <sup>de</sup> with very  
 little trouble at the knowledge of a great many fine things,  
 which have cost those who invented them a great deal of  
 pains. By it all times and countries lie open to  
 us. By it we become, in some measure, contem-  
 porary to all ages, and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It  
 (enables) us to converse with<sup>1</sup> the<sup>3</sup> most<sup>4</sup> learned<sup>5</sup>  
 men<sup>2</sup> of all antiquity, who seemed to have lived and  
 laboured for us. We find in them masters, whom (we are  
 allowed) to consult at leisure; friends who are always  
<sup>est permis</sup> <sup>en</sup> <sup>il nous</sup> <sup>que nous avons</sup>

\* See at page 439 for the translation of to get friends, to get enemies.

at hand, and whose useful and agreeable conversation  
*à nos ordres*  
 improves the mind. It informs us of a thousand curious  
*enrichir, v.*  
 subjects, and teaches us equally (how to profit) by the  
*à profiter, v. des*  
 virtues and vices of mankind. Without the assistance of  
 languages, all these oracles are dumb to us, and all  
 these treasures (locked up); and, (for want of having)  
*nous sont fermés au défaut de*  
 the key which alone can open us the door (to them), we  
*en, p.*  
 remain poor in the midst of so much riches, and ignorant  
 in the midst of all the sciences.

## OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud of  
*naître, v. d'un*  
 ignorance, which is increased by the false prejudices of a  
 bad education. By study, (the former) is dispersed, and  
*celui-là dissiper*  
 (the latter) corrected. It gives proportion and exactness  
*celle-ci justesse, f.*  
 to our thoughts and reasonings; instructs us how to  
 range in due order whatever we have to speak or write;  
*donner de l'ordre à à dire, v. à*  
 and (presents to us) the brightest sages of anti-  
*nous met sous les yeux éclairés*  
 quity as patterns (for our) conduct, whom, (in this  
*comme modèle, m. de sous ce*  
 sense) we may call, with Seneca, the teachers of man-  
*rapport précepteur*  
 kind. But the usefulness of study is not confined to what  
*limiter*  
 we call science; it renders us also more fit for business;  
*aussi propre aux affaires*  
 besides, though this study (were of no other use  
*en outre, adv. quand, c. ne servirait*

but the) acquiring a habit of labour, the softening the  
*qu'à* pains of it, the procuring a steadiness of mind, and  
*qu'à donner* *stabilité*  
 (conquering) our aversions to application or a seden-  
*qu'à vaincre* *pour*  
 tary life, it would still be of very great advantage. In  
*en*  
 reality, it draws us off from idleness, play, and de-  
*effet, v.* *retirer, v.* *en*  
 bauchery. It usefully fills up the vacant hours of the day,  
 and renders very agreeable that leisure, which, without  
 the assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and,  
 (in a manner,) the grave of a man (while he is alive.)  
*en quelque sorte* *plein de vie*  
 It enables us to pass a right judgment upon other men's  
*mettre en état* *former sain* *des*  
 labours, to (enter into society) with men of understanding,  
*s'associer* *éclairé*  
 to keep the best company, (to have a share in the)  
*fréquenter, v.* *prendre part aux*  
 discourses of the most learned, to (furnish out) matter  
*des êtres les plus instruits* *fournir*  
 for conversation, without which we must be silent,  
*à* *quoi serions condamnés au silence*  
 to render it more agreeable and more useful, by inter-  
*en*  
 mixing facts with reflections, and setting the one by the  
*relever, v.*  
 other.

## INDOLENCE CHARACTERIZED.

Indolence deprives men of all that activity, which  
 should call forth their virtues and make them illus-  
*devroit faire ressortir*  
 trious. An indolent man is scarcely a man; he is half  
*à moitié*  
 a woman. He wills and unwills in a breath. He  
*en* *ne veut pas au même instant*  
 may have good intentions to discharge a duty, while  
*peut* *sing.* *accomplir* *obligation, f.*

that duty is at a distance; let it but approach, let him  
 view the time <sup>éloigné</sup> of action near, his hands immediately<sup>se présenter</sup>  
<sup>voir</sup> <sup>moment</sup> <sup>d'agir</sup> (drop down<sup>1</sup>) in languor. What (can be done) with such  
<sup>tomber, v.</sup> a man? He is absolutely good for nothing. Business  
 tires him, reading <sup>lecture, f.</sup> fatigues him, the service of his country  
 interferes too much with his pleasures, and even<sup>2</sup> atten-  
<sup>nuire</sup> <sup>à</sup> <sup>même sa pré-</sup>  
 dance<sup>1</sup> at court, though for the time of advancement, is  
<sup>sence à la</sup> <sup>son</sup>  
 too great a restraint upon him. His life should be passed  
<sup>pour</sup>  
 on a bed of down. If he is employed, moments (are as)  
<sup>duvet.</sup> <sup>sembler, v.</sup>  
 hours to him; if he is amused, hours are as moments.  
<sup>s'amuser, v.</sup> <sup>pour lui minute</sup>  
 In general, his whole time eludes him; he lets it glide  
<sup>échappe lui</sup> <sup>s'écouler</sup>  
 unheeded like water under a bridge. Ask him  
<sup>insensiblement, adv. comme</sup>  
 what he has done with his morning, he knows nothing  
<sup>de</sup> <sup>matinée, f.</sup>  
 about it; for he has lived without one reflection upon his  
 existence. He has slept as long as it was possible for him  
 to sleep, dressed slowly, amused himself in chat with the  
 first person that called upon him, and taken several  
<sup>faire, v.</sup>  
 turns in his room till dinner. Dinner is served up, and  
 the evening will be spent as unprofitably as the morning,  
 and his whole life as this day. (Once more), such  
<sup>Encore une fois, adv.</sup>  
 a man is good for nothing.

FINIS.



UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
**A 000 132 825 1**

**University of California  
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
305 De Neve Drive - Parking Lot 17 • Box 951388  
LOS ANGELES, CALIFORNIA 90095-1388**

**Return this material to the library from which it was borrowed.**

---

